

INDEX

| | |
|----------------------------|---------|
| Parts of speech | 3-22 |
| Voice | 23-49 |
| Question Tag | 49-58 |
| Verbs | 59-65 |
| Tenses | 66-97 |
| Direct and Indirect Speech | 98-123 |
| Conditional Clauses | 124-130 |
| Concord | 131-139 |
| Articles | 140-159 |
| Prepositions | 163-192 |
| Degrees of Comparision | 193-204 |
| Clauses Phrases Sentences | 205-222 |
| Types of Sentences | 223-230 |
| Simple Complex Compound | 230-247 |
| Letter Writing | 248-256 |
| Comprehension Passage | 257-274 |
| Composition | 275-279 |
| Vocabulary | 280-315 |
| Key | 316-325 |



100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

PARTS OF SPEECH

STRUCTURE

Objectives : After going through this lesson/unit, you will be able to :

- (1) know the functions of words in a sentence.
- (2) classify the words according to the function.
- (3) make use of words according to the functions in different situations/contexts.

Introduction : Words are the constituents of the sentence elements. They are classified into eight forms of speech or parts of speech. They are sub-classified as : (1) open-class items and (2) closed system items.

(1) The Open-Class items : The members are (a) noun, (b) adjectives, (c) adverb, (d) main verbs/verbs. They are called open-class because new items are constantly being created and also the items of a class have the same grammatical properties, i.e., a noun has the same properties as other nouns. They carry meaning and so are called lexical/dictionary words or content words or full words. Eg : Anantapur (N), beautiful (Adj), quickly (Adv), and Sing (V)

(2) The closed-system items : The members are (a) pronoun, (b) prepositions, (c) conjunctions, (d) interjections, (e) determiners (i.e., articles (an, an, the) and demonstratives (this, these, that, those) etc., and (f) auxiliary (helping) verbs. The closed system items are limited in number, new ones can not be created. Their meaning depends on the whole system. They are useful in grammar, and so they are also called grammar words or structural words.

Parts of Speech : Words are divided into eight kinds according to their usage or function. They are called parts of speech. They are : (1) Noun, (2) Pronoun, (3) Adjective, (4) Verb, (5) Adverb, (6) Preposition, (7) Conjunction, (8) Interjection.

(1) Noun : A noun is the name of a person, place or thing.

Eg : Rama was the king of Ayodhya.

Hyderabad is the capital of Andhra Pradesh.

Gold is a costly metal.

□ Note : Words in Italics are all nouns.

There are five kinds of nouns.

(a) A proper noun : It denotes one particular person, place or thing.

Eg : Satyam, Anantapur, The Godavari.

(b) A common noun : It is the name given commonly to a person, animal, place or things.

Eg : boy, town, animal, bird, tree etc.

(c) A collective noun : It denotes a group or collection of persons or things taken as one.

Eg : Crowd, army, family, nation, flock etc.

(d) A material noun : It denotes the name of a particular kind of substance.

Eg : Gold, iron, wood, wax, clay etc.

On the basis of meaning, nouns may be classified as concrete nouns and abstract nouns.

A concrete noun is a word that denotes something concrete, something that can be tasted, touched, or seen, something that exists physically.

Eg : Room, son, girl, boy, iron, gold etc.

Generally proper nouns and material nouns are concrete nouns.

An abstract noun is a word that denotes something that is abstract. The thing denoted may be an idea or emotion.

Eg : freedom, liberty, thought, joy, death etc.

- (2) **Pronoun** : A pronoun stands for or refers to a noun, an individual or individuals or a thing or things whose identity is made clearer in the preceeding or following sentences.

Eg : "Is there Mr. Vikram" ?

"No he has gone out".

Pronouns are divided into several classes.

- (a) **Personal Pronouns** : The pronouns I, we, you, he, she, it, that, this are called personal pronouns because they refer to the three persons.

1st person - I, my, mine, we, us, our, ours.

2nd person - you, your, yours.

3rd person - he, him, his, she, her, hers, it, its, they, their, theirs, them.

- (b) **Possessive Pronouns** : A pronoun, which refers to possession or ownership, origin or kind, is called possessive pronoun.

Eg : 1. This is my book.

2. I borrowed his book.

3. I depend on their support.

4. We are staying in her house.

- (c) **Predicative possessive** : These are pronouns used as a part of predicates.

Eg : 1. This book is mine.

2. The dress is hers.

3. That pen is yours.

- (d) **Reflexive Pronouns** : The pronoun, which is used to co-refer to the subject (being in the place of object), is called a reflexive pronoun. It is also used to emphasize the nominal.

Eg : 1. He praised himself.

2. The car moved itself in the slope.

3. You can do it yourself (emphasis).

4. They did it themselves (emphasis).

- (e) **Demonstrative Pronouns** : Sometimes a pronoun may not come in the place of a noun. But, it is used to refer to something, or someone.

Eg : 1. This is my book.

2. That is fantastic.

3. These are delicious.

4. Those are trees.

(f) **Indefinite Pronouns** : Some pronouns refer to persons, places or things in general. They are called indefinite pronouns.

- Eg : 1. One should love one's own country.
 2. None of them is busy.
 3. Some of them are Punjabis.
 4. Many of them could not reach in time.

(g) **Relative Pronouns** : Relative pronouns relate two units of a sentence by referring back to somebody or something indicated by the noun/pronoun it is linked with.

- Eg : 1. This is the man, who helped me that day.
 2. He is the person who won in the election.
 3. This is the train, which goes to Tirupathi.
 4. This is the place where I did my graduation.

(h) **Interrogative Pronouns** : Interrogative pronouns are the words used to ask questions.

- Eg : 1. What is happening there ?
 2. Who is investigating the case ?
 3. Why are you standing here ?

These are also used to report questions

- Eg : 1. She asked me what the time was.
 2. They enquired about why the train was delayed.
 3. He wanted to know how I was feeling.

(i) The reciprocal pronouns are each other and one another.

- Eg : The couple loved each other.
 They liked one another.

(3) **An Adjective** : It is a word that qualifies a noun or a thing.

Sweet song, *white* wall, *kind* mother, *bad* boy.

Kinds of Adjectives :

- (i) Adjectives of quality : *brave* boy, *good* girl.
 (ii) Adjectives of quantity : *a little* water, *some* rice.
 (iii) Adjectives of Number (or Numeral adjectives) : They are of three types.

(a) **Definite Numeral Adjectives** :

One, two, three, ten, hundred - cardinals.
 First, second, tenth, hundredth - ordinals.

(b) **Indefinite Numeral Adjectives** :

All, no, many, few, some, any, certain, several.

(c) **Distributive Numeral Adjectives** :

Each, every, either.

(iv) **Demonstrative Adjectives** : *This* house, *such* books.

(v) Interrogative Adjectives:

What sort of man is he ?

Which way shall I go ?

Whose pen is this ?

(vi) Exclamatory Adjectives : *What an idea !*

What a piece of work is man !

(4) A Verb : It denotes an action or state.

He *is* a teacher

She *sings*.

There are two kinds of Verbs : Transitive and Intransitive.

(i) Transitive Verb denotes action passing from the doer to an object.

Eg : He *threw* the ball.

(ii) An Intransitive Verb denotes an action which does not go beyond the doer.

Eg : She *walks* to school.

(iii) Thirdly there are Auxiliary Verbs. An auxiliary Verb is a helping Verb. It is used along with the main Verb to form tenses, moods and voices. They are 24 in number.

Eg : *be, have, do* and their forms.

Shall, should, will, would, can, could.

May, might, must, ought to, need and dare.

Verbs are further divided into Finite and Non-Finite Verbs.

(A) **Finite Verbs** : Verbs which are limited by Person and Number are called Finite Verbs.

Eg : Sekhar *likes* mangoes.

Sekhar *likes* to eat mangoes.

In both the sentences the Verb *likes* has a subject and this Verb is limited by the person and number of its subject. So it is a Finite Verb.

In the second example, *to eat* has no subject and it is not limited by person or number. Hence it is called a Non-Finite Verb or specifically, an Infinitive.

(B) **Non-Finite Verbs** : There are three groups.

(a) **The Infinitive** :

to eat, to drink, to write (Present Infinitive)

to have eaten, to have drunk, to have written (Perfect Infinitive)

(b) **The Present Participle** :

eating, drinking, writing (present participle)

eaten, drunk, written (past participle)

(c) **The Gerund or Verbal Noun** :

Swimming is good for health.

Starving is better than *stealing*.

(5) An Adverb :

An adverb is a word which modifies (i.e., qualifies) a verb, an adjective or another adverb.

He walks *quickly*.

She is a *very* good girl.

He ran *too* quickly.

(i) Adverbs of Time :

I have not heard this *before*.

The train arrived *late*.

He goes to school *daily*.

My brother came *yesterday*.

(ii) Adverbs of Place :

Come *here*, Go *there*, Come *in*.

He follows me *everywhere*.

She looked *up*.

(iii) Adverbs of Manner :

He walks *quickly*.

She writes *clearly*.

The essay is *well* written.

The Sikhs fight *bravely*.

She works *hard*.

You should not do *so*.

(iv) Adverbs of Frequency :

I told you *twice*.

She *often* makes mistakes.

I could ask him *again*.

He *always* comes late.

They *seldom* come here.

(v) Adverbs of Degree or quantity :

He is *too* careless.

The fruit is *almost* ripe.

I am *fully* prepared.

This is good *enough* for my purpose.

You are *quite* wrong.

(vi) Adverbs of Reason :

I *therefore* left school.

He is *hence* unable to give the answer.

(vii) Adverbs of Affirmation or Negation :

He *certainly* wrote.

Surely she is mistaken.

I do *not* know you.

- (6) **A Preposition :** A Preposition is a word which indicates the relation in which things stand one to another.
 Eg. : He is *in* the house.
 The book is *on* the table.
- (7) **A conjunction :** A conjunction is a word which joins words phrases, clauses and sentences.
 Eg. : Anil *and* Dileep went to the cinema.
 Vishwant promised *but* he did not come.
 Pay the rent *or* vacate the house
- (8) **An Interjection :** An Interjection is a word of exclamation which expresses some sudden feeling or emotion (love, hatred, joy, sorrow, anger panic etc.)
 Eg. : Oh! I won the game.
 Alas! The young an died.

Exercises / Assignments and their answers

Assignment - 1

Name the Parts of Speech of the words *Italicised*.

1. *Still* waters *run* deep.
2. *They* *still* live *in* *that* house.
3. *She* is *on* the committee.
4. Let *us* move *on*.
5. *Ah!* She cried with concern.
6. The *fast* lasted *for* a week.
7. This is a *fast* passenger.
8. Mohammedans *fast* during the month of Ramzan.
9. She ran *fast* to catch the bus.
10. We are in *very serious* times *because* *we* are free.
11. *Gandhiji* was a *holy* and pious man.
12. She *typed* the letter *quickly*.
13. The *boy* *made* a kite.
14. Rita *and* Gita *are* twins.
15. The *lecture* of Satyam *still* *rings* in my ears.

Answers :

- | | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| 1. Adjective - verb | 2. Pronoun - adverb - preposition - adjective |
| 3. Pronoun - preposition - noun | 4. Pronoun - adverb |
| 5. Interjection | 6. Noun, Preposition |
| 7. Adjective | 8. Verb |
| 9. Adverb | 10. Adverb - adjective - conjunction - pronoun |
| 11. Noun - adjective - adjective | 12. Verb - adverb |
| 13. Noun - verb - noun | 14. Conjunction - verb - noun |
| 15. Noun-adverb-verb | |

Assignment - II

Name the Parts of Speech of the words italicised.

1. A *national* leader should *also* have a *lively* awareness of the *world* beyond the frontiers *of* India.

Ans : adjective - adverb - adjective - noun - preposition.

2. *In* the *first* stage, man is an *infant*, crying *for* food *and* comfort.

Ans : Preposition - adjective - noun - preposition - conjunction.

3. One day *he* gave a lecture *on* *ancient* mathematicians and *astronomers* of India.

Ans : Pronoun - preposition - adjective - noun.

4. *Energy* is something that *makes* it possible to do work.

Ans : Noun - verb.

5. The *second* essential *quality* is the capacity to communicate *with* colleagues *and* masses.

Ans : Adjective - noun - preposition - conjunction.

6. *Gandhiji* believed that *every* individual has in him the capacity of responding to *noble impulses*.

Ans : Noun - adjective - adjective - noun.

7. *Gandhiji's* *attitude to* social change was influenced *by* his *own* experience.

Ans : Noun - preposition - preposition - adjective.

8. *Gandhiji* *often* described *himself* as a simple, *ordinary* man.

Ans : Adverb - pronoun - adjective - noun.

9. I have *never* *owed* a penny in my life - cash down, that's *my* motto.

Ans : adverb - verb - pronoun.

10. Why, just one more *instalment* and *BABY'S* *really* ours!

Ans : Noun - adverb.

11. That *cheque* I gave you for your *wedding* present - *it* was only *two* hundred pounds, wasn't it!

Ans : Noun - adjective - pronoun - adjective.

12. *From* a *high* wall, *you* hit the ground *harder*.

Ans : preposition - adjective - pronoun - adverb.

13. For most part, you *think* of work in connection with *living* beings.

Ans : Verb - adjective.

14. 'Calculus' *Srinivasan* was my *mathematics* lecturer.

Ans : Noun - adjective - noun.

15. Bhaskaracharya *was* another *unique* intellectual of *his* time.

Ans: Verb-adjective-pronoun.

Assignment - III

Complete the dialogue given below using appropriate interrogative pronouns.

- "_____ do you live?"
"I live in Anantapur".
- "_____ is your father doing?"
"He is working in the S.K. University".
- "_____ did you come here?"
"I came by Scooter".
- "_____ will you go back?"
"I will go back at 5 o'clock".
- "_____ long have you been living in this town?"
"I have been living in this town for five years".
- "_____ have you come here?"
"I have come to see my friend".
- "_____ often do you come to see your friend?"
"Once in a month I come to see her".
- "_____ book is this?"
"That is my friend's book."

Answers :

1. where 2. what 3. how 4. when 5. how 6. why 7. how 8. whose

Assignment - IV

Fill in the blanks with suitable relative pronouns.

(Who, what, when, how, where, which etc)

- I asked my mother _____ I should do it.
- Praveen asked me _____ he should say if his wife asks him about his lost purse.
- Tell me _____ I should search.
- She selected a dress _____ she liked.
- I want to know _____ happened yesterday.
- The man _____ owns the house has not come.
- She stopped crying _____ she saw her mother.
- She noticed some bottles _____ were floating on the sea.
- I am looking for a man _____ could do this work.

Answers :

1. when, 2. what, 3. where, 4. which, 5. what, 6. who, 7. when, 8. which 9. who

Assignment - V

Identify the parts of speech of the underlined words.

1. Ashoka was a great king.
2. His courage won him honour.
3. There are twenty girls in the class.
4. The girl wrote a letter to her cousin.
5. Iron and copper are useful metals.
6. She worked the sum quickly.
7. The girl is fond of music.
8. A fair little girl sat under a tree.
9. Alas! He is dead.
10. I ran fast but missed the bus.

Answers :

1. noun, adjective, 2. pronoun, 3. Adjective, 4. verb, 5. conjunction, 6. adverb,
7. preposition, 8. preposition, 9. interjection, 10. conjunction

LET US SUM UP

In this unit, we have looked at the characteristics of the eight parts of speech and known their importance in English usage and making.

PARTS OF SPEECH

Identify the parts of speech for the underlined words.

1. She looks sad _____
2. It weighs about a pund _____
3. I heard a noise from inside _____
4. I studied hard but I failed _____
5. He covered the child tenderly _____
6. I have handled these issues earlier _____
7. First impression is the best _____
8. All are welcom _____
9. Pranayama keeps enough oxygen in the brain _____
10. The man posed himself as a rich Australian _____
11. He bought things very cheaply but sold at higher price _____
12. It was not a residence but a little shop _____
13. People profit with experience _____
14. She was only a novice _____
15. The doctor arrived late _____
16. She pronounced the word quite correctly _____
17. I walked through the crowd _____
18. I did not sleep well that night _____
19. She wore sports apparel _____
20. Water the plants regulary _____
21. After the strom comes to the calm _____
22. He was only a yard off me _____
23. She is absoulately against your idea _____
24. The scene ends where it began _____
25. His youthful hose, well saved _____
26. They have their exits and their enterence _____
27. How happy is he born _____
28. I love the rain _____
29. Let the rain kiss you _____
30. He applied for jobs where ever his relatives would advise _____
31. I graduated in 2008 _____
32. She fished out a hand kerchief from the bag _____
33. Indians have black hair. _____
34. Every one goes along with the work _____
35. I enjoy doing exciting tasks _____
36. She learned to fly at the age of 18 _____
37. We often turn leaders into the demi gods _____
38. There was a fly buzzing around the kitchin _____

39. He believed that she is innocent _____
40. Oh! have you got a radio - gram _____
41. He became a driver _____
42. Let us start now _____
43. He lay on the bed _____
44. He gave her some flowers _____
45. He has cars _____
46. How nice it is _____
47. Those books are mine _____
48. I owe you _____
49. He spok for nearly an hour nearly _____
50. Science and Technology is important _____
51. The wind blows ship across the water _____
52. Trust begts trust _____
53. The tide can lift heavy ships _____
54. My career starts slow _____
55. She has given her personal file _____
56. We accepted the proposal _____
57. All you have to do is borrow the money _____
58. She usually wears cotton saries _____
59. And this is our Language _____
60. I love you _____
61. Helen was blind _____
62. I am a hard worker _____
63. Please call the police _____
64. I never go to school _____
65. The rat is under the box _____
66. She looks fine _____
67. I saw a horror movie _____
68. They called me a dog _____
69. I am drinking water _____
70. I am working well _____

1. I graduated in science from St. Joseph College.

- a. noun b. verb c. adjective d. adverb

2. The wind can blow ships across the water.

- a. noun b. verb c. adverb d. preposition

3. He was influenced by his own experience.

- a. noun b. verb c. adjective d. adverb

4. Now, tell me how much do all these cost.
a. Adverb b. verb c. adjective d. preposition
5. Energy goes along with work.
a. adverb b. adjective c. verb d. preposition
6. He has the capacity of responding to noble impulses.
a. verb b. adjective c. noun d. article
7. He laboured all day in the coal mine.
a. verb b. adverb c. adjective d. preposition
8. I think he must be a very strong person.
a. adjective b. noun c. adverb d. preposition
9. The man from the west showed a little piece of paper.
a. noun b. pronoun c. adjective d. adverb
10. It is lucky that Kalpana was born in the 60s.
a. adjective b. adverb c. conjunction d. interjection
11. He is people's champion.
a. adjective b. adverb c. noun d. preposition
12. I am absolutely against this.
a. noun b. pronoun c. adjective d. adverb
13. Kamala went into kitchen.
a. preposition b. verb c. adverb d. noun
14. He has two cars.
a. noun b. adjective c. verb d. none
15. I called my sister in.
a. noun b. pronoun c. adverb d. adjective
16. He gave her some flowers.
a. adverb b. adjective c. noun d. pronoun
17. The teacher is angry with the boy.
a. article b. Pronoun c. noun d. adverb
18. He was a aeronautical engineer.
a. adjective b. adverb c. noun d. pronoun
19. Both her hands are injured.
a. noun b. pronoun c. verb d. adjective
20. There is a bridge across the river.
a. noun b. pronoun c. preposition d. adverb
21. She looked out through the window.
a. preposition b. noun c. verb d. adverb
22. Though he worked hard, he failed.
a. verb b. adverb c. conjunction d. interjection
23. He accepted only, arranged marriages.
a. verb b. adverb c. noun d. conjunction

24. Human relations are fair and orderly.
a. adverb b. adjective c. noun d. verb
25. How nice indeed!
a. conjunction b. interjection c. noun d. verb
26. He talks about words in a sentence.
a. adverb b. adjective c. preposition d. noun
27. The boy gave money to the beggar.
a. article b. noun c. verb d. preposition
28. I asked him my name.
a. noun b. verb c. adverb d. pronoun
29. Kamala's brother is a tall boy.
a. adjective b. noun c. verb d. adverb
30. He is a defence scientist.
a. adjective b. noun c. verb d. adverb

EXERCISE

1. He kept the fast for a week.
a. Noun b. Pronoun c. Adjective d. Adverb
2. Do not speak so loudly.
a. Verb b. Adverb c. Noun d. Adjective
3. Please call me early.
a. Pronoun b. Adjective c. Adverb d. Noun
4. It is long since we met.
a. Conjunction b. Verb c. Pronoun d. Noun
5. Most people think so.
a. Adjective b. Noun c. Adverb d. Conjunction
6. He is little known here.
a. Pronoun b. Adverb c. Noun d. Verb
7. Still waters run deep
a. Adjective b. Adverb c. Noun d. Verb
8. Much cry and little wool.
a. Noun b. Verb c. Adjective d. Pronoun
9. The early bird catches the worm.
a. Adjective b. Preposition c. Conjunction d. Adverb
10. It is hard to understand.
a. Preposition b. Conjunction c. Adjective d. Adverb
11. It matters little what he says.
a. Verb b. Adverb c. Noun d. Adjective
12. That can stand over.
a. Verb b. Noun c. Pronoun d. Adverb

13. I must be off.
a. Verb b. Noun c. Adverb d. Preposition
14. All is not lost.
a. Pronoun b. Conjunction c. Noun d. Verb
15. All is good in a famine.
a. Preposition b. Pronoun c. Adverb d. Conjunction
16. He went after I came.
a. Adverb b. Verb c. Conjunction d. Adjective
17. May comes after April.
a. Verb b. Conjunction c. Noun d. Preposition
18. He was only a yard off me.
a. Noun b. Preposition c. Pronoun d. Verb
19. He lives about two miles from here.
a. Adverb b. Verb c. Noun d. Adjective
20. The minister follows after.
a. Verb b. Adjective c. Adverb d. Pronoun

Answers : 1.a, 2.b, 3.c, 4.d, 5.a, 6.b, 7.a, 8.c, 9.a, 10.c, 11.b, 12.d, 13.c, 14.a, 15.b, 16.c, 17.d, 18.b, 19.a, 20.c

EXERCISE

1. The heavens are above.
a. Adverb b. Noun c. Pronoun d. Verb
2. Analyse the above sentence.
a. Verb b. Adjective c. Adverb d. Noun
3. We went away after they had left.
a. Adverb b. Preposition c. Conjunction d. Pronoun
4. He lost his all in speculation.
a. Noun b. Pronoun c. Verb d. Adjective
5. Are there any witnesses present?
a. Noun b. Adjective c. Verb d. Conjunction
6. Does any of you know anything about it?
a. Pronoun b. Conjunction c. Noun d. Verb
7. We walked as fast as we could.
a. Noun b. Verb c. Adverb d. Preposition
8. As he was poor I helped him.
a. Preposition b. Conjunction c. Adjective d. Adverb
9. I have seen you before.
a. Noun b. Adverb c. Pronoun d. Verb
10. He came before the appointed time.
a. Verb b. Conjunction c. Preposition d. Adverb

11. I think yours is a better plan.
a. Adverb b. Noun c. Pronoun d. Adjective
12. I know better.
a. Adjective b. Pronoun c. Noun d. Adverb
13. Give place to your bettors.
a. Noun b. Adverb c. Pronoun d. Preposition
14. You cannot have it both ways.
a. Noun b. Verb c. Adjective d. Adverb
15. Both of them are dead.
a. Preposition b. Conjunction c. Pronoun d. Noun
16. The fire engine came rushing down the hill.
a. Adverb b. Preposition c. Noun d. Verb
17. The porter was killed by the down train.
a. Adjective b. Adverb c. Noun d. Verb
18. There is time enough and to spare.
a. Adverb b. Noun c. Adjective d. Pronoun
19. You know well enough what I mean.
a. Conjunction b. Preposition c. Verb d. Adverb
20. If we except Hari, all are to be blamed.
a. Verb b. Adverb c. Adjective d. Conjunction

Answers :

1.b 2.b 3.c 4.a 5.b 6.a 7.c 8.b 9.b 10.c 11.d 12.d 13.a 14.c 15.c 16.b
17.a 18.c 19.d 20.a

EXERCISE

1. All the brethren were in Egypt except Benjamin.
a. Conjunction b. Preposition c. Verb d. Adverb
2. Children like sweets.
a. Conjunction b. Adverb c. Verb d. Preposition
3. He eats very little.
a. Pronoun b. Noun c. Adverb d. Adjective
4. We want more men like him.
a. Adjective b. Verb c. Adverb d. Noun
5. What next ?
a. Adverb b. Pronoun c. Verb d. Conjunction
6. I like this best.
a. Conjunction b. Adverb c. Noun d. Pronoun
7. He did his best.
a. Verb b. Pronoun c. Noun d. Adverb

8. He is but a child.
a. Pronoun b. Noun c. Verb d. Adverb
9. Set it right.
a. Conjunction b. Adjective c. Verb d. Adverb
10. Do not talk like that.
a. Verb b. Conjunction c. Preposition d. Adverb
11. More will be wanted.
a. Verb b. Noun c. Pronoun d. Adverb
12. He is in the right.
a. Pronoun b. Verb c. Noun d. Adverb
13. He is not any the worse for it.
a. Noun b. Pronoun c. Adverb d. Verb
14. I thought as much
a. Verb b. Adverb c. Conjunction d. Noun
15. He is as deaf as a post.
a. Preposition b. Noun c. Conjunction d. Pronoun
16. He is my best friend.
a. Adverb b. Verb c. Adjective d. Noun
17. Use right words.
a. Adverb b. Adjective c. Noun d. Pronoun
18. He is like his father.
a. Preposition b. Noun c. Conjunction d. Verb
19. I change, but I cannot die.
a. Conjunction b. Preposition c. Verb d. Noun
20. We have no money.
a. Verb b. Adverb c. Adjective d. Preposition

Answers :

1.b 2.c 3.c 4.a 5.a 6.b 7.c 8.d 9.d 10.c 11.c 12.c 13.c 14.b 15.e 16.c
17.b 18.a 19.a 20.c

EXERCISE

1. He was a natural motivator.
a. Adjective b. Noun c. Verb d. Preposition
2. I reflected on what Jerry said.
a. Verb b. Conjunction c. Noun d. Pronoun
3. They kept telling me I was going to be fine.
a. Adverb b. Adjective c. Pronoun d. Verb
4. Attitude, after all, is everything.
a. Pronoun b. Verb c. Adverb d. Noun

5. She took her to an oculist and learnt that Helen was blind.
a. Adverb b. Interjection c. Adverb d. Verb
6. Helen was deaf too.
a. Adjective b. Verb c. Noun d. Pronoun
7. Her table manners were appalling.
a. Adjective b. Pronoun c. Preposition d. Verb
8. Helen at 10 years, already was reading Braille avidly.
a. Noun b. Adjective c. Adverb d. Verb
9. Helen was intensively tutored.
a. Verb b. Adjective c. Adverb d. Preposition
10. These examinations were a great trial to me.
a. Verb b. Adjective c. Noun d. Pronoun
11. I wrote my name at the top of the page.
a. Adjective b. Adverb c. Noun d. Conjunction
12. We learnt English thoroughly.
a. Noun b. Adverb c. Interjection d. Pronoun
13. I would whip them hard for that.
a. Adverb b. Verb c. Noun d. Adjective
14. It took me three tries to pass into sandhurst.
a. Adjective b. Verb c. Adverb d. Noun
15. It became invisibly embedded into our daily existence.
a. Noun b. Adjective c. Pronoun d. Verb
16. Historical precedent is a good place to start.
a. Noun b. Verb c. Adjective d. Adverb
17. It's tearing down the walls of the world's tyrannies.
a. Adverb b. Verb c. Pronoun d. Noun
18. Every integer is a personal friend of Ramanujan.
a. Noun b. Pronoun c. Verb d. Adverb
19. Energy is something that has "work inside it".
a. Noun b. Preposition c. Verb d. Adverb
20. The tide can lift heavy ships.
a. Noun b. Pronoun c. Verb d. Adverb
21. The faster an object moves, the more work it can do.
a. Pronoun b. Noun c. Verb d. Adverb
22. Trust begets trust.
a. Adverb b. Verb c. Noun d. Pronoun
23. He was a great fighter for social reform.
a. Preposition b. Conjunction c. Interjection d. Pronoun
24. Shiva went to Hyderabad and returned yesterday.
a. Noun b. Conjunction c. Verb d. Adverb

25. Rent ? oh, no, we don't pay rent.
a. Interjection b. Verb c. Noun d. Pronoun
26. He worked hard but failed.
a. Noun b. Verb c. Preposition d. Conjunction
27. Cashdown, That's my motto.
a. Noun b. Pronoun c. Verb d. Adverb
28. The nurse has just gone to post it.
a. Adverb b. Verb c. Pronoun d. Noun
29. Let us move on.
a. Verb b. Preposition c. Pronoun d. Adverb
30. Summer came quickly as expected.
a. Adverb b. Preposition c. Noun d. Conjunction

Answers :

1.a 2.c 3.b 4.d 5.a 6.a 7.a 8.c 9.a 10.b 11.c 12.b 13.b 14.a 15.b 16.c
17.d 18.a 19.b 20.c 21.a 22.b 23.a 24.b 25.a 26.d 27.a 28.a 29.b 30.a

EXERCISE**I. Find out the parts of speech of the underlined words in the following sentences.**

1. Rome is an ancient city.
1. verb 2. noun 3. adjective 4. adverb
2. He bought a new flat.
1. noun, verb 2. verb, adjective 3. adjective, noun 4. noun, adjective
3. The beautiful woman cried softly.
1. adverb 2. preposition 3. verb 4. adjective
4. I cannot come tomorrow.
1. noun 2. adverb 3. adjective 4. conjunction
5. Why did he come late ?
1. adverb 2. verb 3. pronoun 4. noun
6. I remember your name very well.
1. verb, noun 2. pronoun, verb 3. verb, pronoun 4. noun
7. Neeraja called him loudly.
1. noun 2. verb 3. adjective 4. adverb
8. Ramanujam made several important discoveries in mathematics.
1. adjective, preposition 2. adjective, pronoun
3. preposition, adverb 4. adverb, preposition
9. Mr. Pillai is teaching us Sanskrit.
1. noun 2. verb 3. pronoun 4. preposition

10. She did not complete the work.
1. verb 2. adverb 3. adjective 4. preposition
11. The test was very difficult.
1. adjective 2. adverb 3. noun 4. verb
12. They are sending the goods soon.
1. noun 2. pronoun 3. verb 4. adverb
13. I met him at the gate.
1. preposition 2. conjunction 3. interjection 4. pronoun
14. When he was asleep his cousin came into his room.
1. adjective 2. adverb 3. preposition 4. pronoun
15. She let a gentle smile come over her face.
1. preposition, adjective 2. adverb, preposition
3. adjective, conjunction 4. adjective, preposition
16. He carefully looked at every face.
1. adverb 2. adjective 3. verb 4. pronoun
17. History was his most favourite subject at school.
1. pronoun 2. noun 3. verb 4. adjective
18. It is a fact that contentment brings happiness.
1. conjunction 2. preposition 3. pronoun 4. adjective
19. He closed his eyes.
1. adverb 2. verb 3. noun 4. adjective
20. The old man told me angrily that he wanted to see my father.
1. adverb, noun 2. adjective, pronoun
3. adjective, noun 4. noun, adjective

Pick out the verbs from the following.

21. He lives next door.
1. lives 2. next 3. door 4. he
22. Always do what is right.
1. always 2. what 3. do 4. right
23. It rained for three hours.
1. it 2. for 3. three 4. rained
24. He swears on god.
1. god 2. swears 3. on 4. he
25. The boy stole a mango.
1. stole 2. boy 3. a 4. mango

Pick out the adjectives from the following.

26. It is a wonderful idea.
1. is 2. it 3. wonderful 4. idea

27. That is a heavy box.

1. that 2. is 3. box 4. heavy

28. We saw a blind boy.

1. saw 2. we 3. blind 4. boy

29. Gandhi was a man of few words.

1. Gandhi 2. man 3. few 4. words

30. Sita lives in a small room.

1. small 2. Sita 3. lives 4. room

Pick out the prepositions from the following.

31. He went to the railway station.

1. he 2. went 3. to 4. the

32. I shall finish the work in an hour.

1. finish 2. work 3. an 4. in

33. He stood before me.

1. stood 2. before 3. he 4. me

34. She comes at 12 O' clock.

1. at 2. she 3. comes 4. clock

35. What are you looking at?

1. what 2. at 3. you 4. look

Pick out the adverbs in the following.

36. He did the work quickly.

1. he 2. quickly 3. work 4. did

37. He never spoke the truth.

1. truth 2. spoke 3. never 4. he

38. It is quite right.

1. is 2. quite 3. right 4. it

39. My mother has gone upstairs.

1. my 2. upstairs 3. mother 4. go

40. This year the monsoon started early.

1. early 2. year 3. started 4. this

Answers :

- 1.3 2.2 3.1 4.2 5.3 6.1 7.4 8.1 9.3 10.1 11.2 12.3 13.1 14.2 15.4 16.1 17.2 18.1
19.2 20.3 21.1 22.3 23.4 24.2 25.1 26.3 27.4 28.3 29.3 30.1 31.3 32.4 33.2 34.1
35.2 36.2 37.3 38.2 39.2 40.1

VOICE

Voice is a feature of the verb. It is a change in a verb to show whether its subject acts on or is acted upon. Only transitive verbs have two voices - active and passive.

When the person denoted by the subject is the doer of an action, the verb is said to be in the active voice. It is so called because the person indicated by the subject which acts.

Eg : Columbus discovered America.

The Principal read the report.

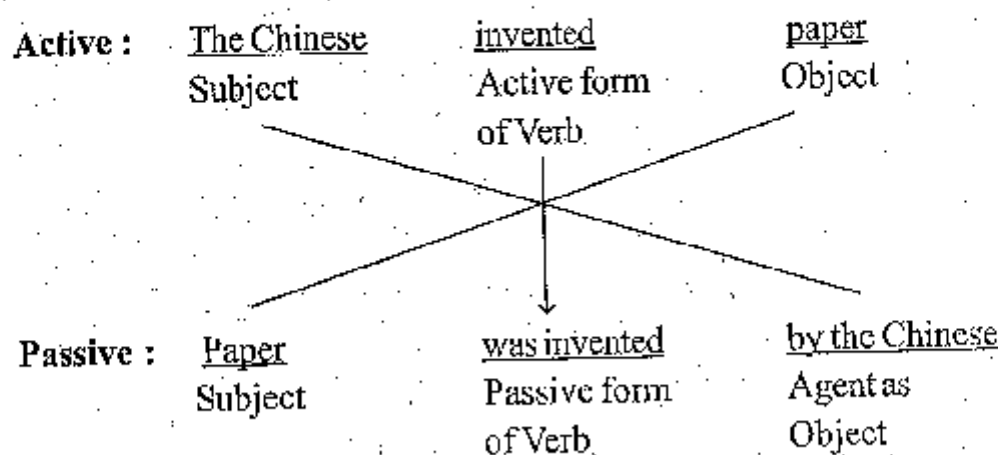
When Something is done to the person or thing denoted by the subject, the form of the verb is called 'passive'. That is, the subject is passive or receive same action.

Eg : America was discovered by Columbus.

The report was read by the Principal.

Change of the Active Voice into the Passive Voice

Look at the following sentence and observe the changes :



When a sentence is changed to the Passive Voice.

1. the Object of Active Voice becomes the Subject of Passive - it is not the Agent/doer of action.
2. the suitable form of *be* is added as a helping verb.
3. the Verb of Active Voice is changed into Past Participle form.
4. *by* is added and the Agent comes at the end.

Verbs NOT used in the Passive :-

Passive structures are impossible with Intransitive Verbs like *die*, or *arrive*, which can't have objects. There is nothing to become the Subject of a Passive sentence.

We arrived in the morning
Subject Intransitive Verb

Some Transitive Verbs, too, are seldom used in the Passive. Most of these are 'Static Verbs' = Verbs which refer to states, not actions. (e.g. *fit*, *have*, *lack*, *resemble*, *suit*)

They have a nice house. BUT NOT: A nice house is had by them

Verbs with Two Objects

If the Verb has two Objects, an 'Indirect Object' (a person) and a 'Direct Object' (a thing), two Passive structures are possible.

- Active : 1. She gave her sister the car.
2. She gave the car to her sister.

- Passive : 1. Her sister was given the car by her.
2. The car was given to her sister by her.

The choice between the two Passive structures may depend on what needs to be put last in the sentence. Structure 1 (Her sister was given the car by her) is probably the more common of the two.

Changes in transforming Active Voice into Passive Voice :

| | Tense | Structure in Active voice | Structure in Passive Voice |
|-----|---|--|--|
| 1. | Simple Present | Base Verb (V1) Cats kill rats | Am/is/are+past participle of the verb + by Rats are killed by cats |
| 2. | Present continuous | Am/is/are + ing Cats are killing rats | Am/is/are+being+PP+by Rats are being killed by cats |
| 3. | Present perfect | Has/have+PP Cats have killed rats | Has/have+been+PP+by Rats have been killed by cats |
| 4. | Simple past | Second form of the verb(v2) Cats killed rats | Was/were+PP+by Rats were being killed by cats |
| 5. | Past continuous | Was/were+verb+ing Cats were killing rats | Was/were+being+PP+by Rats were being killed by cats |
| 6. | Past Perfect | Had + PP Cats had killed rats | Had+been+PP+by Rats had been killed by cats |
| 7. | Simple Future | Shall/will+plain Verb(v1) Cats will kill rats | Shall/will+be+PP+by Rats will be killed by cats |
| 8. | Future Perfect | Shall/will+have+PP Cats will have killed rats | Shall/will+Have+been+PP+by Rats will have been killed by cats |
| 9. | The future intention | (be going to + v1) We are going to complete this work in an hour. | Is/are+going to be + PP+by This work is going to be completed in an hour by us. |
| 10. | Modal Verbs (should, must, ought verb (v1) to, can et) | Modal Verbs + plain Cats would kill rats | Modal Verbs+be+PP+by Rats would be killed by cats |

| | | |
|--|---|--|
| 11. Imperative | Base verb + object Close the door | Let + O + be + V3 Let the door be closed |
| 12. Double subjects | S+Verb+I.D.O.+D.O. Ram gave her a gift | A gift was given to her by Ram(or) She was given a gift by Ram |
| 13. It is said (that) / subject+is said to be | People <u>say</u> the bridge is unsafe | It is <u>said that</u> the bridge is unsafe (or) The bridge <u>is said to be</u> unsafe. |

Extra Models

I Type : Objects are missing. To change them to active an appropriate subject is to be provided.

Eg : 1. The house is painted green (P.V.)

S V

The painter paints the house green. (A.V.)

S V

2. The thief was caught (P.V.)

The police caught the thief (A.V.)

II Type : Questions with "Who", "Who is changed" to "By Whom" and the rest as usual.

Eg : A. Who wrote the novel? (Active Voice)

P. By whom was the novel written? (Passive Voice)

A. Who gave the present? (Active Voice)

P. By whom were you given the present? (Passive Voice)

III Type : Questions with "Do-Does & Did", "has and have" and "can"

Change it to the affirmative and turn it to passive. Push the 'Be' verb of the passive to the front position -

Eg: (i) Did he write that novel? (Passive)



Affirmative : He wrote that novel.



That novel was written by him. (Passive)



Ans : Was that novel written by him? (Passive)

(ii) Did he kill the tiger? (Active Voice)



He killed the tiger.



The tiger was killed by him.



Ans : Was the tiger killed by him? (Passive voice)

Observe the following examples :

- (iii) Does he help his sister ?
Is his sister helped by him ?
- (iv) Do they buy our goods ?
Are our goods bought by them ?
- (v) Has he answered your questions ?
Have your questions been answered by him ?
- (vi) Have they sent the telegram ?
Has the telegram been sent by them ?
- (vii) Can you send the parcel by post ?
Can the parcel be sent by you by post ?

IV. Type : These are put in the passive voice using the words 'you are requested to' as shown below :

- 1. Please help the poor boy.
You are requested to help the poor boy.
- 2. Please remain silent for two minutes.
You are requested to remain silent for two minutes.
- 3. Please come in.
You are requested to come in.

Note : Remove 'please' when you change A.V. to P.V.

V. Type : Negatives : These are put in the passive voice as shown below :

- 1. The Indian team did not play the test.
The test was not played by the Indian team.
- 2. We do not sell oil.
Oil is not sold by us.
- 3. Don't be late to the class.
You are advised not to be late to the class.
- 4. Don't insult the innocent boy.
Let not the innocent boy be insulted.

Assignment - I and their answers :**Simple present :**

Change the following sentences from the Active into the Passive Voice.

1. The Postman delivers letters.
2. The gardeners plant trees.
3. I laugh at the beggar.
4. We speak English.
5. The grocer sells sugar.
6. Cats catch mice.
7. Do children love animals ?
8. Does he sell mangoes ?
9. When does the peon ring the bell ?
10. How does she play chess ?
11. Why do we keep our promise ?
12. Where do the grocers sell sugar ?

Answers:

1. Letters are delivered by the postman.
2. Trees are planted by the gardeners.
3. The beggar is laughed at by me.
4. English is spoken by us.
5. Sugar is sold by the grocer.
6. Mice are caught by cats.
7. Are animals loved by children ?
8. Are mangoes sold by him ?
9. When is the bell rung by the peon ?
10. How is chess played by her ?
11. Why is our promise kept by us ?
12. Where is sugar sold by the grocers ?

Assignment-II and their answers :**Simple past:**

1. I stole his pen.
2. The mad dog bit the beggar.
3. Did you answer all the questions ?
4. When did he sell his mangoes ?
5. Where did you bring pens ?
6. How did she sing songs ?
7. Why did Ashok tell the truth ?
8. When did the farmer plough the field ?

Answers:

1. His pen was sold by me.
2. The beggar was bitten by the mad dog.

3. Were all the questions answered by you ?
4. When were his mangoes sold by him ?
5. Where were pens brought by you ?
6. How were songs sung by her ?
7. Why was the truth told by Ashok ?
8. When was the field ploughed by the farmer ?

Assignment-III and their answers :

Simple Future:

1. We shall finish the whole work.
2. He will hurt you.
3. Will the post master deliver the letters ?
4. Shall we help her ?
5. When will he write a letter ?
6. How shall we prepare a cup of tea ?
7. You will not make a kite.

Answers:

1. The whole work will be finished by us.
2. You will be hurt by him.
3. Will the letters be delivered by the post master ?
4. Will she be helped by us ?
5. When will a letter be written by him ?
6. How will a cup of tea be prepared by us ?
7. A kite will not be made by you ?

Assignment-IV and their answers :

Present Continuous:

1. I am painting pictures.
2. He is repairing the building.
3. You are buying a car.
4. She is not making a noise.
5. We are not writing a letter.
6. Am I delivering letters.
7. Is she singing songs ?
8. Are they making kites ?
9. When am I writing a novel ?
10. How is he singing songs ?
11. Where are we doing home work ?

Answers:

1. Pictures are being painted by me.
2. The building is being repaired by him.
3. A car is being bought by you.
4. A noise is not being made by her.

5. A letter is not being written by us.
6. Letter are being delivered by me.
7. Are songs being sung by her?
8. Are kites being made by them?
9. When is a novel being written by me?
10. How are songs being sung by him?
11. Where is home work being done by us?

Assignment-V and their answers :

Past Continuous:

1. The wind was blowing the clouds away.
2. The workers were repairing the bridge.
3. Childern were not making a noise.
4. Were they singing songs?
5. Was she writing a letter?
6. Why were we playing cricket?
7. How was she making kites?
8. When was he buying pens?

Answers:

1. The clouds were being blown away by the wind.
2. The bridge was being repaired by the workers.
3. A noise was not being made by children.
4. Were songs being sung by them?
5. Was a letter being written by her?
6. Why was cricket being played by us?
7. How were kites being made by her?
8. When were pens being bought by him?

Assignment-VI and their answers :

Present Perfect:

1. He has blamed us.
2. She has not cooked the dinner.
3. We have played chess.
4. Have they told the truth?
5. Has she brought mangoes?
6. Where have they brought pencils?
7. How has he painted a picture?
8. When have you sold your car?

Answers:

1. We have been blamed by him.
2. The dinner has not been cooked by her.
3. Chess has been played by us.
4. Has the truth been told by them?

5. Have mangoes been brought by her?
6. Where have pencils been brought by them?
7. How has a picture been painted by him?
8. When has your car been sold by you?

Assignment-VII and their answers :

Past Perfect:

1. Everyone had blamed us.
2. We had not spent money.
3. Where had he bought a car?
4. How had she painted pictures?
5. When had they given me pen?

Answers:

1. We had been blamed by everyone.
2. Money had not been spent by us.
3. Where had a car been bought by him?
4. How had pictures been painted by her?
5. When had I been given a pen by them?

Assignment-VIII and their answers :

Future Perfect

1. Everyone will have done home work.
2. I shall have eaten mangoes.
3. You will not have written a letter.
4. She will have bought mangoes.
5. When will she have sold cars?
6. Why shall we have painted a car?

Answers:

1. Home work will have been done by everyone.
2. Mangoes will have been eaten by me.
3. A letter will not have been written by you.
4. Mangoes will have been bought by her.
5. When will cars have been sold by her?
6. Why will a car have been painted by us?

Assignment-IX and their answers :

Imperative Sentences:

1. Recite the poem.
2. Leave the place, please.
3. Let us do the work.
4. Open the windows.
5. Don't kill a man.
6. Never tell a lie.

7. Call the police.
8. Please help that man.
9. Please move out.
10. Let her close the door.

Answers:

1. Let the poem be recited.
2. You are requested to leave the place.
3. Let the work be done by us.
4. Let the windows be opened.
5. You are ordered not to kill a man.
6. You are advised not to tell a lie.
7. Let the police be called.
8. You are requested to help that man.
9. You are requested to move out.
10. Let the door be closed by her.

Assignment-X and their answers :

1. a) Suresh kills an ant.
b) An ant is killed by Suresh.
2. a) Ravi broke a door.
b) A door was broken by Ravi.
3. a) My mother is cooking food.
b) Food is being cooked by my mother.
4. a) You are selling cars.
b) Cars are being sold by you.
5. a) Ravi was giving an orange to Mohan.
b) An orange was being given to Mohan by Ravi.
6. a) He had stolen a note book.
b) A note book had been stolen by him.
7. a) He has repaired a car.
b) A car has been repaired by him.
8. a) They will have prepared biscuits.
b) Biscuits will have been prepared by them.
9. a) Who has done this ?
b) By whom has this been done ?
10. a) Drink this tea.
b) Let this tea be drunk.
11. a) All love him.
b) He is loved by all.
12. a) Who wants me ?
b) By whom am I wanted ?

13. a) Please, don't insult others.
b) You are requested not to insult others.
14. a) We shall not study History.
b) History will not be studied by us.
15. a) I gave Peter a paper.
b) A paper was given to Peter by me.
16. a) They can give a paper.
b) A paper can be given by them.

EXERCISES

Choose the correct Passive voice of the following sentences :

1. They were white washing the house yesterday.
a. Yesterday was white washed by them yesterday.
b. Yesterday was white washed by them
c. They were being white washed by the house yesterday
d. The house was being white washed by them yesterday
2. He has not paid the examination fee.
a. The examination fee has not paid by him.
b. The examination fee has not been paid by him.
c. The examination fee was not being paid by him.
d. The examination fee was not being paid by him.
3. We have purchased a number of books for the library.
a. A number of books for the library has been purchased by us.
b. A number of books have been purchased for the library by us.
c. The library has been purchased by us for number of books.
d. A number of books are purchased by us for the library.
4. The teacher marks the attendance every period
a. The attendance was marked by the teacher every period.
b. The attendance is marked by the teacher every period.
c. The attendance is marked by the teacher.
d. The attendance were marked by the teacher every period.
5. We should respect our elders.
a. Our elders should have been respected by us.
b. Our elders shall be respected by us.
c. Our elders should be respected by us.
d. Our elders are respected by us.
6. The people accused him of murder.
a. He was accused of murder.
b. He is accused of murder.
c. He has been accused of murder by the people.
d. He was being accused of murder by the people.

7. She was not doing anything in the morning.
 - a. Anything was done by her in the morning.
 - b. Anything has not been done by her in the morning.
 - c. Nothing was being done by her in the morning.
 - d. The morning was not being done by her.
8. He is watering the fruit bearing tree.
 - a. The fruit-bearing tree is being watered by him.
 - b. The fruit-bearing tree has been watered by him.
 - c. The fruit-bearing tree has been watered by him.
 - d. The fruit watered by him bearing the tree.
9. Mother cooked dinner for guests.
 - a. The guests cooked dinner for mother.
 - b. The guests were cooked for dinner by mother.
 - c. Dinner is cooked by guests for mother.
 - d. Dinner was cooked by mother for guests.
10. I have finished the work.
 - a. The work has been finished by me.
 - b. The work have been finished by me.
 - c. The work is finished by me.
 - d. The work was finished by me.
11. Who wrote this letter ?
 - a. Who was written by this letter ?
 - b. By whom was this letter written ?
 - c. By whom this letter was written ?
 - d. By whom is this letter written ?
12. Do you always laugh at him ?
 - a. Was he laughed at by you ?
 - b. Were you always laughed at by you ?
 - c. Is he always laughed at by you ?
 - d. Had he always been laughed at by you ?
13. Punish them severely .
 - a. Let severely be punished by them.
 - b. You are ordered to punish them severely.
 - c. They are punished severely.
 - d. You are punished them severely.
14. Was he writing the drama ?
 - a. Was the drama written by him ?
 - b. Has the drama written by him ?
 - c. Is the drama being written by him ?
 - d. Was the drama being written by him ?
15. Somebody took her to the hospital.
 - a. She is taken to the hospital.
 - b. She was taken to the hospital.

- c. She has been taken to the hospital.
 - d. She is being taken to the hospital.
16. They will arrange everything in time.
- a. Everything will be arranged in time.
 - b. Everything would be arranged in time.
 - c. Everything has been arranged in time.
 - d. Everything was being arranged in time.
17. Your friend can repair the bicycle.
- a. The bicycle can be repaired by your friend.
 - b. The bicycle was repaired by your friend.
 - c. The bicycle can be repaired by your friend.
 - d. The bicycle will be repaired by your friend.
18. Let Rama help him.
- a. Let him be helped by Rama.
 - b. Let Rama be helped by him.
 - c. Let he be helped by Rama.
 - d. Rama helped by him.
19. She did not sing songs.
- a. Songs are not sung by her.
 - b. Songs were not sung by her.
 - c. Songs have not been sung by her.
 - d. Songs would not sung by her.
20. The tourists did not visit the place.
- a. The place is not visited by the tourists.
 - b. The place was not visited by the tourists.
 - c. The place has not been visited by the tourists.
 - d. The place cannot be visited be visited by the tourists.

Choose the correct Active voice of the following sentences :

21. Are colour photos taken by you ?
 - a. Does he take colour photos ?
 - b. Do you take colour photos ?
 - c. Do colour photos take you ?
 - d. Did you take colour photos ?
22. By whom were you given this pen ?
- a. Who did give you this pen ?
 - b. Who has given you this pen ?
 - c. Who gives you this pen ?
 - d. Who gave you this pen ?
23. You are requested to keep off the grass.
- a. Please keep off the grass.
 - b. Keep off the grass.
 - c. Keep grass off.
 - d. None of these.

24. Vegetables and fruits are sold by the old man.
- The old man sold the vegetables and fruits.
 - The old man sells the vegetables and fruits.
 - The old man is selling the vegetables and fruits.
 - The old man has sold the vegetables and fruits.
25. English is spoken all over the world.
- All over the world speak English.
 - Someone speak all over the world English.
 - People speak English all over the world.
 - He speaks English all over the world.
26. The bicycle was being painted green by him.
- He was painting the bicycle green.
 - He is painting the bicycle green.
 - Green was painting the bicycle.
 - He painted the bicycle green.
27. Let her own way be chosen by her.
- Let her choose own way.
 - Let her be choose her own way.
 - Let the way be chosen by her.
 - Let her choose her own way.
28. He was made the Cheif Minister by the people.
- People make him the Cheif Minister.
 - People made him the Cheif Minister.
 - People have made him Cheif Minister.
 - People are making him the Cheif Minister.
29. The thief was arrested at the bus station.
- We arrested the thief at the bus station.
 - The bus station arrested the thief.
 - Police arrested the thief at the bus station.
 - The bus station was arrested at the bus station.
30. Where did you see him ? (Passive Voice)
- Where was he seen by you ?
 - Where he was seen by you ?
 - Where is he seen by you ?
 - Where has been seen by you
31. Have you completed the home work ?
- You have been comploted your homework ?
 - Has the home work been completed by you ?
 - Had the home work been completed by you ?
 - None of the above ?

32. Has the money been deposited by him?
 - a. Did he deposit the money?
 - b. Has the money deposited him?
 - c. Has he deposited the money?
 - d. Have he deposited the money?
33. The letter will be answered tonight by me.
 - a. I will be answering the letter tonight.
 - b. I shall answer the letter tonight.
 - c. Tonight will be a letter answered by me.
 - d. I answered the letter tonight.
34. Refreshments will be served by the waiter to the guests.
 - a. The waiter will serve refreshments to the guests.
 - b. The guest will serve the refreshments to the waiter.
 - c. The waiter should serve refreshments to the guests.
 - d. The waiter had served refreshments to the guests.
35. All the problems have been solved by the state government.
 - a. The state government will solve all the problems.
 - b. The state government will be solving all the problems.
 - c. The state government will have solved all the problems.
 - d. The state government has solved all the problems.
36. His work is not done well by him.
 - a. He does not do his work well.
 - b. He do not do his work well.
 - c. He has not done his work well.
 - d. He is not doing his work well.
37. Tea is being made by her.
 - a. She was making tea.
 - b. She is making tea.
 - c. She has been making tea.
 - d. She will be making tea.
38. The book has been returned by him.
 - a. He had returned the book.
 - b. He returned the book.
 - c. He was returned the book.
 - d. He has returned the book.
39. I was fascinated by; the picture.
 - a. The picture fascinated me.
 - b. The picture fascinates me.
 - c. The picture is fascinating me.
 - d. The picture has fascinated me.

40. By whom has the glass been broken ?

- Who have broken the glass ?
- Who has broken the glass ?
- Who broke the glass ?
- Who had broken the glass ?

ANSWERS

- | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. d | 2. b | 3. b | 4. b | 5. c | 6. a | 7. c | 8. a | 9. d | 10. a | 11. b |
| 12. c | 13. b | 14. d | 15. b | 16. a | 17. c | 18. a | 19. b | 20. b | 21. b | 22. d |
| 23. a | 24. b | 25. c | 26. a | 27. d | 28. b | 29. c | 30. a | 31. b | 32. c | 33. b |
| 34. a | 35. d | 36. a | 37. b | 38. d | 39. a | 40. b | | | | |

PRACTICE - I

- The passive voice of "Post this card" is
 - Let post this card.
 - Let this card posted.
 - Let this card be posted.
 - Card this be posted.
- The passive voice of "She writes a novel" is
 - A novel is write by her.
 - A novel is written by her.
 - A novel is wrote by her.
 - A novel was written her by.
- The passive voice of "Shekhar has painted a picture" is
 - A picture is painted by Shekhar.
 - A picture has painted by Shekhar.
 - A picture has paint by Shekhar.
 - A picture has been painted by Shekhar.
- Shakespeare wrote Macbeth. - Passive voice
 - Macbeth is written by Shakespeare.
 - Macbeth was written by Shakespeare.
 - Macbeth has written by Shakespeare.
 - Macbeth has been written by Shakespeare.
- All had a good time. --Passive voice is
 - A good time was had by all.
 - A good time had been had by all.
 - A good time is had by all.
 - A good time has been had by all.
- Someone has stolen my pen. ---Passive form
 - My pen has stolen.
 - My pen had been stolen.
 - My pen has been stolen.
 - MY pen have been stolen.

7. The madam punished the child.---Passive voice.
 - a. The child is punished by the madam.
 - b. The child is punished the madam by.
 - c. The child punished by the madam.
 - d. The child was punished by the madam.
8. Who broken the glass ? Passive voice ?
 - a. Who was broken the glass ?
 - b. Who was broken the glass by ?
 - c. Whom by was the glass broken ?
 - d. By whom was the glass broken ?
9. What do you want ? Passive voice ?
 - a. What are you want ?
 - b. What is wanted by you ?
 - c. What you are wanted ?
 - d. You are wanted what ?
10. Where is my pen ? Passive voice ?
 - a. Where my pen is ?
 - b. Where is pen my ?
 - c. My pen is where ?
 - d. No passive voice ?

Answers - Explanation :

1. c: Impetative sentence.
2. b: Simple present.
3. d: Present perfect---has/have + been
4. b: Simple past.
5. a: had -main verb - simple past
6. c: Subject - by some one
7. d: Simple past.
8. d: Qustion - Past Tense
9. b: Simple present - Question.
10. d: Verb intransitive

EXERCISE

1. We elected Raju captain - The passive voice is.
 - a. Raju was elected captain by us.
 - b. Raju is elected captain by us.
 - c. Raju was being elected captain by us.
 - d. Raju is being elected captain by us.

2. He painted the car black. The passive voice is
- The car is painted black by him.
 - The car was painted black by him.
 - The car has been painted black by him.
 - The car was being painted black by him.
3. Why did he beat you? The passive voice is
- Why are you beaten by him?
 - Why was you beaten by him?
 - Why were you beaten by him?
 - Why is you beaten by him?
4. Does he sell rice? The passive voice is
- Was rice sold by him?
 - Are rice sell by him?
 - Is rice sell by him?
 - Is rice sold by him?
5. She laughs at me. The passive voice is
- I has been laughed at by her.
 - I am laughed at by her.
 - I was laughed at by her.
 - I have been laughed at by her.
6. She sent for the police. The passive voice is
- The police was being sent for by her.
 - The police was sent for by her.
 - The police is being sent for by her.
 - The police were sent for by her.
7. Please give some money. The passive voice is
- You were requested to give some money.
 - You are requested to give some money.
 - You have been requested to give some money.
 - You has been requested to give some money.
8. Who broke the glass? The passive voice is
- By whom were the glass broken?
 - By whom is the glass broken?
 - By whom was the glass broken?
 - By whom are the glass broken?
9. Who gave you this book? The passive voice is
- By whom were you given this book?
 - By whom have been you given this book?
 - By whom was you given this book?
 - By whom has been you given this book?

10. Call the police. The passive voice is
 - a. Let the police be calling.
 - b. Let the police be called.
 - c. Let be the police called.
 - d. Let the police be call.
11. Advertise the post. The passive voice is
 - a. Let the post be advertised.
 - b. Let the post be advertise.
 - c. Let be the post advertised.
 - d. Let the post be advertising.
12. Covet not wealth. The passive voice is
 - a. Let not be wealth covet.
 - b. Let not wealth be covet.
 - c. Let not wealth be coveted.
 - d. Let not be wealth coveted.
13. Who gave you this pen ? The passive voice is
 - a. By whom have been you given this pen ?
 - b. By whom was you given this pen ?
 - c. By whom has been you given this pen ?
 - d. By whom were you given this pen ?
14. Do you take colour photos ? The passive voice is
 - a. Are colour photos taken by you ?
 - b. Is colour photos taken by you ?
 - c. was colour photos taken by you ?
 - d. were colour photos taken by you ?
15. Do you buy mangoes ? The passive voice is
 - a. Are mangoes bought by you ?
 - b. Is mangoes bought by you ?
 - c. Were mangoes bought by you ?
 - d. Was mangoes bought by you ?
16. Do you ever read novels ? The passive voice is
 - a. Were novels ever read by you ?
 - b. Is novels ever read by you ?
 - c. Was novels ever read by you ?
 - d. Are novels ever read by you ?
17. Please stand still. The passive voice is
 - a. You has been requested to stand still.
 - b. You are requested to stand still.
 - c. You were requested to stand still.
 - d. You have been requested to stand still.

18. Let him do the work. The passive voice is

- a. Let the work be do by him.
- b. Let the work be done by him.
- c. Let be the work be done by him.
- d. Let the work be does by him.

19. Are they speaking truth? The passive voice is

- a. Was the truth being spoken by them?
- b. Is the truth being spoken by them?
- c. Were Was the truth being spoken by them?
- d. Are Was the truth being spoken by them?

20. Let him take the book. The passive voice is

- a. Let the book be took by him.
- b. Let be the book be taken by him.
- c. Let the book be taken by him.
- d. Let be the book be took by him.

21. Bees make honey. The passive voice is

- a. Honey is made by bees.
- b. Honey was made by bees.
- c. Honey is being made by bees.
- d. Honey was being made by bees.

22. Is Rama writing a letter? The passive voice is

- a. Is a letter being written by Rama?
- b. Was a letter being written by Rama?
- c. Are a letter being written by Rama?
- d. Were a letter being written by Rama?

23. I like sweets. The passive voice is

- a. Sweets was liked by me.
- b. Sweets is liked by me.
- c. Sweets are liked by me.
- d. Sweets were liked by me.

24. Prepare yourself for anything. The passive voice is

- a. Be prepare for anything.
- b. Prepared for be anything.
- c. Prepare for be anything.
- d. Be prepared for anything.

25. This book was written by Rama. Active voice is

- a. Rama has written a book.
- b. Rama is written a book.
- c. Rama wrote this book.
- d. Rama writes this book.

26. He was found guilty. Active voice is
 - a. The judge found him guilty.
 - b. The judge find him guilty.
 - c. The judge is finding him guilty.
 - d. The judge has founded him guilty.
27. Our plan has been discovered. Active voice is
 - a. He discovers our plan.
 - b. He discovered our plan.
 - c. He is discovering our plan.
 - d. He has discovered our plan.
28. I was asked my name. Active voice is
 - a. Someone asked me my name.
 - b. Someone ask me my name.
 - c. Someone has asked me my name.
 - d. Someone asks me my name.
29. This stone can be lifted by Hercules. Active voice is
 - a. Hercules can lift this stone.
 - b. Hercules be can lift this stone.
 - c. Hercules can be lift this stone.
 - d. Hercules can be lifts this stone.
30. Good news is expected. Active voice is
 - a. We has expected good news.
 - b. We expected good news.
 - c. We expect good news.
 - d. We have expected good news.
31. He was arrested. Active voice is
 - a. The police arrested him.
 - b. The police arrest him.
 - c. The police has arrest him.
 - d. The police has arrested him.
32. The field is ploughed. Active voice is
 - a. The farmer ploughs the field.
 - b. The farmer ploughed the field.
 - c. The farmer has ploughed the field.
 - d. The farmer has plough the field.
33. They will buy a house. Passive voice is
 - a. A house will be bought by them.
 - b. A house be will bought by them.
 - c. A house was being bought by them.
 - d. A house is being bought by them.

34. He posted the letters. Passive voice is.
- The letters were posted by him.
 - The letters was posted by him.
 - The letters have posted by him.
 - The letters has posted by him.
35. I was kept waiting by him. Active voice is
- He is keep me waiting.
 - He kept me waiting.
 - He has kept me waiting.
 - He has keep me waiting.
36. You cannot pump the ocean dry. Passive voice is
- The ocean cannot be pumped dry by you.
 - The ocean be cannot pumped dry by you.
 - The ocean cannot be pump dry by you.
 - The ocean be cannot pump dry by you.
37. He saw me yesterday. Passive voice is
- I was seen by him yesterday.
 - I am seen by him yesterday.
 - I have seen by him yesterday.
 - I saw by him yesterday.
38. They refused him admittance. Passive voice is
- He refuses admittance by them.
 - He was refused admittance by them.
 - He is refused admittance by them.
 - He has refused admittance by them.
39. Respect your teachers. Passive voice is
- You are advised to respect your teachers.
 - You were advised to respect your teachers.
 - You have advised to respect your teachers.
 - You advise to respect your teachers.
40. Let her choose her own way. Passive voice is
- Let her own way be chosen by her.
 - Let be her own way chosen by her.
 - Let her own way been chosen by her.
 - Let her own way be choosing by her.

ANSWERS :

1.a 2.b 3.c 4.d 5.b 6.b 7.b 8.c 9.a 10.b 11.a 12.c 13.d 14.a 15.a 16.d
 17.b 18.b 19.b 20.c 21.a 22.a 23.c 24.d 25.c 26.a 27.d 28.a 29.a 30.c
 31.a 32.a 33.a 34.a 35.b 36.a 37.a 38.b 39.a 40.a

Practice Test

1. Venu broke the mirror.
2. Sita loves Latha.
3. The boy has opened the gate.
4. The Mason is building the wall.
5. Who broke the mirror?
6. Advertise the post?
7. Does he play chess.
8. Rama loves Sita.
9. The hunter killed the Tiger.
10. Shakespeare wrote the play 'Hamlet'.
11. A pack of dogs killed our cat.
12. Close the door.
13. Deposit the money in the bank.
14. Put up the picture on the wall.
15. The servant washes our clothes.
16. The auditors are checking the accounts.
17. We have posted most of the invitations.
18. Some boys were helping the wounded man.
19. Do they speak Tamil?
20. A High Court Judge will conduct the enquiry.
21. The lecturer marks the attendance every period.
22. Mother has cooked the dinner.
23. The Principal will interview the students in the afternoon.
24. Why did you brother write such a letter?
25. Rash driving causes many accidents.
26. Bad weather had spoiled the crops.
27. People speak Hindi in many parts of India.
28. When do they clear the mail?
29. Send invitations to all the parents.
30. Please enter by this door.
31. Warner Brothers has produced this film.
32. Bin Laden hates the American domination in world politics.
33. The girls were decorating the stage.
34. She is typing a letter.
35. Why did they give him so much money?
36. You should teach the mass a lesson.
37. The children called Nehru 'Chacha'.
38. The principal asked the boy to wait.
39. The doctor advised the young man to give up smoking.
40. You can help me to solve this problem.
41. He taught me how to face an interview.

42. The Agreement satisfied the workers.
43. Mr. Kumar taught us English.
44. Who killed the snake?
45. The police were taking him to prison.
46. Please post the letter.
47. Do you take color photo?
48. Did they Hire a bus ?
49. Where do they paly the match?
50. Why did they rise the question?
51. Who broke the news?
52. Let me see the picture.
53. We love India.
54. I shall punish you.
55. Please listen to me.
56. Rajini has given me a present.
57. The Nurse will look after the old man.
58. We expect good news.
59. Can he lift this box?
60. He was writing a letter to his father.
61. The man is building the wall.
62. I was forced in to it by my well wishers.
63. Has he invited you?
64. By whom were you taught english.
65. We should keep promises.
66. Is Sudhir reading his English text book?
67. Who draw the picture on the wall?
68. When will the carpenter begin his work?
69. Nothing can be gained by impatience.
70. She gave the begger a Rupee.

FIND CORRECT PASSIVE VOICE FOR THE FOLLOWING SENTENCES:

1. All desire wealth and some acquire it.
 - 1) Wealth is acquired by all but desired by some.
 - 2) Wealth is desired by all but acquired by some.
 - 3) Wealth is acquired and desired by some.
 - 4) Wealth is desired by some but acquired by all.
2. He does the work.
 - 1) The work is done by him.
 - 2) The work was done by him.
 - 3) The work has been done by him.
 - 4) The work had been done by him.
3. Most people remember their early life.
 - 1) Most people remember their early life.
 - 2) Their early life is remembered by most people.
 - 3) Their early life was remembered by most people.
 - 4) Their early life has been remember by most people.
4. The cat drank all the milk.
 - 1) All the milk is drunk by the cat.
 - 2) All the milk was drunk by the cat.
 - 3) All the milk has been drunk by the cat.
 - 4) All the milk had been drunk by the cat.
5. Some one left the dog in the park.
 - 1) The dog is left in the park.
 - 2) The dog was left in the park.
 - 3) The dog has been left in the park.
 - 4) The dog had been left in the park.
6. I do not drink coffee.
 - 1) Coffee not drunk by me.
 - 2) Coffee was not drunk by me.
 - 3) Coffee is not drunk by me.
 - 4) Coffee should not be drunk by me.
7. She does not like me.
 - 1) I is not liked by her.
 - 2) I am not liked to her.
 - 3) I was not liked by her.
 - 4) I had not been liked by her.
8. They do not speak truth.
 - 1) Truth is not spoken by them.
 - 2) Truth was not spoken by them.
 - 3) Truth has not been spoken by them.
 - 4) Truth cannot be spoken by them.
9. I did not buy the book.
 - 1) The book is not bought by me.
 - 2) The book was not bought by me.
 - 3) The book had not been bought by me.
 - 4) The book should not be bought by me.

10. They did not tell the story .
- 1) Story is not told by them.
 - 2) Story was not told by them.
 - 3) Story should not told by them.
 - 4) Story cannot be told by them.
11. The enemy boomed the city.
- 1) The city is boomed by the enemy.
 - 2) The city was boomed by the enemy.
 - 3) The city has been boomed by the enemy.
 - 4) The city had been boomed by the enemy.
12. Somebody took her to the hospital.
- 1) She is taken to the hospital.
 - 2) She was taken to the hospital.
 - 3) She has been taken the hospital.
 - 4) She is being taken to the hospital.
13. They will arrange everything in time.
- 1) Everything will be arranged in time.
 - 2) Everything would be arranged in time.
 - 3) Everything has been arranged in time.
 - 4) Everything was being arranged in time.
14. Your friend can repair the bicycle.
- 1) The bicycle can be repaired by your friend.
 - 2) The bicycle was repaired by your friend.
 - 3) The bicycle could be repaired by your friend.
 - 4) The bicycle will be repaired by your friend.
15. Let Rama help him.
- 1) Let him be helped by Rama.
 - 2) Let Rama be helped by him.
 - 3) Let he be helped by Rama.
 - 4) Rama helped by him.
16. She did not sing songs.
- 1) Songs are not sung by her.
 - 2) Songs were not sung by her.
 - 3) Songs have not been sung by her.
 - 4) Songs would not sung by her.
17. The tourists did not visit the palace.
- 1) The place is not visited by the tourists.
 - 2) The place was not visited by the tourists.
 - 3) The place has not been visited by the tourists.
 - 4) The place cannot be visited by the tourists.
18. The patient did not take medicine.
- 1) Medicine is not taken by the patient.
 - 2) Medicine was not taken by the patient.
 - 3) Medicine cannot be taken by the patient.
 - 4) Medicine had not been taken by the patient.

19. She will not buy the book.
 - 1) The book will be bought not by her.
 - 2) The book will not be bought by her.
 - 3) The book would not be bought by her.
 - 4) The book cannot be bought not by her.
20. You cannot pump the ocean dry.
 - 1) The ocean cannot be pumped dry.
 - 2) The ocean can be pumped dry.
 - 3) The ocean could not be pumped dry.
 - 4) The ocean is pumped dry.
21. Circumstances will oblige me to go.
 - 1) I Shall be obliged to go.
 - 2) I am to go.
 - 3) I was to go.
 - 4) I Shall be ordered to go.
22. This is too much for us to expect.
 - 1) This is too much to be expected.
 - 2) This was much to be expected.
 - 3) This cannot be be expected.
 - 4) This is expected.
23. This jug contains milk.
 - 1) Milk is contained in this jug.
 - 2) Milk is in this jug.
 - 3) Milk filled in this jug.
 - 4) Milk completed in this jug.
24. Call him at once.
 - 1) Let him be called at once.
 - 2) Let he be called at once.
 - 3) Let at called he once.
 - 4) Let call him at once.
25. Do not disturb me.
 - 1) Let me not be disturbed.
 - 2) Let me not disturbed.
 - 3) I am not disturbed.
 - 4) I was disturbed.
26. One cannot gather grapes from thistle.
 - 1) Grapes cannot be gathered from thistle.
 - 2) Grapes were not gathered from thistle.
 - 3) Grapes could not be gathered from thistle.
 - 4) Grapes are not gathered from thistle.
27. I cannot understand him.
 - 1) He cannot be understood by me.
 - 2) He cannot understand by me.
 - 3) He cannot be understand by me.
 - 4) He is not understand by me.

28. She has not sung songs.

- 1) Songs are not sung by her.
- 2) Songs had not been sung by her.
- 3) Songs have not been sung by her.
- 4) Songs were not sung by her.

29. He should not have asked me.

- 1) I should not be asked by him.
- 2) I should not have been asked by him.
- 3) I should not being asked by him.
- 4) I was not asked by him.

30. No one has written the exam.

- 1) The exam has not been written.
- 2) The exam had not been written.
- 3) The exam was not been written.
- 4) The exam will not been written.

ANSWERS :

1.2 2.1 3.2 4.2 5.2 6.3 7.2 8.1 9.2 10.2 11.2 12.2 13.1 14.1 15.1 16.2 17.2 18.2
19.2 20.1 21.1 22.1 23.1 24.1 25.1 26.1 27.1 28.3 29.2 30.1

QUESTION TAG

- * Question tags are short questions added to the statements. They seek confirmation or agreement.
- * Question tags have fixed structure. It can be represented as

Helping verb + (n't) + Pronoun + ?

- * Positive statements take Negative tag, Negative statements take Positive tag.
- * Negative statement can be conformed having by the following words

Hardly, Scarcely, Seldom, Rarely, Few, Little, Never, Nothing,
Nobody, None, Not, No, Neither, Unless

PRONOUNS

- * Pronouns can be used directly by the following :- I, We, You, She, He, It, They and There.
- * If sentence begins with Masculine Names (Ravi, Kishor, Rahul) "He" is used.
- * If sentence begins with Feminine Names (Seetha, Nagamani) "She" is used.
- * If sentence begins with Common or Nuter genders "It" is used.
- * If sentence begins with Plural Nouns "They" is used.
- * If sentence begins with 'body / one' "They" is used. Ex:- Somebody, someone.
- * If sentence begins with 'thing' "It" is used. Ex:- Anything, nothing.

HELPING VERBS:

- * The following helping verbs can be used directly :-
is, are, will, shall, can, may, was, were, would, could, might and must.
- * Have / Has / Had + V3 Haven't, Hasn't, Hadn't. Can be used in question tag.

- * Have/Has/Had are used as a main verbs Haven't (Don't), Hasn't, (Doesn't), Hadn't (Didn't) can be used.
- * I am... (positive) aren't I? / Am n't I?
- * I am... (Negative).... Am I?
- * If a sentence has only Verb1 (Simple Present) don't
- * If a sentence has only Verb1(s) (Simple Present)... doesn't.
- * If a sentence has only Verb2 (Simple Past) ... didn't.

Examples:

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. Your father is a teacher, is n't he? | 13. The doors are all open, _____? |
| 2. She was a teacher, wasn't she? | 14. He brought his children, _____? |
| 3. She does not know Telugu, does she? | 15. The principal got angry, _____? |
| 4. They don't write letters, _____? | 16. She can write well, _____? |
| 5. She can drive a car, _____? | 17. He went to Hyderabad, _____? |
| 6. Jhon is not going to school, _____? | 18. She has not a bag with her _____? |
| 7. Kolkatta is a big city, _____? | 19. They will not help you _____? |
| 8. They are friends _____? | 20. He came only yesterday _____? |
| 9. She would take little food, _____? | 21. None of the boys turned up _____? |
| 10. Your sister has 2 telephones _____? | 22. You speak Hindi, _____? |
| 11. He always reads books _____? | 23. Every one can walk well, _____? |
| 12. I am invited to the party _____? | 24. No one phoned for me, _____? |

Imperative Sentences

Imperative statements orders, commands, requests, takes, will, would, can, could, are used in Questions tags.

- Ex:-
- | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Close the door, Will you? | 5. Open the door, _____? |
| 2. Help me with this luggage, could you? | 6. Please give me your pen _____? |
| 3. Don't make a noise, will you? | 7. Stop talking _____? |
| 4. Don't disturb, will you? | 8. Go to our school _____? |

* Let me / take / will you / shall I in question tags.]

- Ex:-
- | | |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Let me speak English, will you? | 3. Let us Play Shall we? |
| 2. Let him say sorry, will you? | 4. Let them ask will you? |

* I'll = I shall, We'll = we shall, remaining become "will".

* I / we / they'Ve = I / we / they + have.

* He / she / it's = He / She / it + is.

* Subject'd = Subject + would (followed by verb1)

* Subject'd = Subject + had (followed by V3 or no verb).

Practice Test:

- | | |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. I am a doctor, _____? | 2. Lets go to a movie, _____? |
| 3. None of the clerks came, _____? | 4. The ladies haven't come, _____? |

5. He will hit six, _____?
7. It is not cold, _____?
9. Children went there, _____?
11. They have hardly seen, _____?
13. She has wonderful voice, _____?
15. She would come today, _____?
17. I am not working, _____?
19. She had a car, _____?
21. I ate little meal, _____?
23. It is not very costly, _____?
25. We will come tomorrow, _____?
27. Pass the magazine, _____?
29. She's beautiful flower, _____?
31. I'd meet my friend, _____?
33. They seldom speak, _____?
35. We are friends, _____?
37. That can be very nasty, _____?
39. Jhon Paid his fee, _____?
41. He sings well, _____?
43. Mangoes are very cheap, _____?
45. Ravi never drinks Coffee, _____?
47. She knows me well, _____?
49. She has three children, _____?
51. It was broken, _____?
53. She hates me, _____?
55. Nothing is possible, _____?
57. We are afraid, _____?
59. I opened an account, _____?
61. They call me, _____?
63. Neither of the boys came today, _____?
65. The book is interesting, _____?
67. Kavitha loves me, _____?
69. We go to movie, _____?
6. She sings well, _____?
8. Switch of the fan, _____?
10. Somebody is coming, _____?
12. None is typing, _____?
14. I never make a mistake, _____?
16. Please go to your home, _____?
18. I have a few money, _____?
20. Soumya, you can go now, _____?
22. We posted letters, _____?
24. It is time to leave, _____?
26. She was in the lab, _____?
28. We'd large house, _____?
30. They'd taken a book, _____?
32. They'll play chess, _____?
34. Don't walk in the shade, _____?
36. They worked hard, _____?
38. He teaches well, _____?
40. No one has seen my book, _____?
42. We shall join them, _____?
44. India is developing fast, _____?
46. I owe you, _____?
48. Ajay goes by bus, _____?
50. He should not smoke, _____?
52. Don't leave the place, _____?
54. I know her, _____?
56. It is raining, _____?
58. She has no leg, _____?
60. She asked me a gift, _____?
62. They used to play, _____?
64. I stop the fan, _____?
66. The fan has no wings, _____?
68. I did not say wrong, _____?
70. Let us move, _____?

Practise Test:

1. The match was very exiting
a) is it? b) was it? c) wasn't it? d) isn't it?
2. The book is not very interesting
a) is it? b) was it? c) wasn't it? d) isn't it?
3. The Minister made a good speech
a) Don't he? b) didn't he? c) doesn't he? d) did he?
4. All of them speak telugu well
a) dont they? b) didn't they? c) did they? d) do they?
5. The story isn't very interesting
a) is it? b) isn't it? c) wasn't it? d) was it?
6. Your mother will help me
a) Will she? b) Won't she? c) will your mother d) wont she?
7. He can repair computers
a) can he? b) can't he? c) could he? d) could n't he?
8. The Chief Minister came by air
a) did he? b) didn't he/She? c) don't he? d) doesn't he?
9. I am right
a) am nt I? b) aren't I? c) don't he? d) does n't he?
10. Ajay can repair radio
a) can he? b) can't he? c) could he? d) could n't he?
11. Raju draws pictures well
a) don't he? b) doesn't he? c) did he? d) didn't he?
12. Kiran is a doctor
a) is it? b) is n't he? c) was it? d) was n't?
13. He became a doctor
a) don't he? b) didn't he? c) didn't she? d) doesn't he?
14. Ravinder, you haven't got a pencil
a) have you? b) has you? c) has n't you? d) had you?
15. All of them play cricket well
a) don't they? b) didn't they? c) does n't they? d) did they?
16. Shilpa can drive a jeep well
a) can she? b) can't she? c) could n't she? d) could she?
17. My parents don't quarrel at all
a) do they? b) don't they? c) do they? d) did n't they?
18. You are not interested in games
a) are you? b) are n't you? c) were you? d) were n't you?
19. We should respect elders
a) should we? b) should n't we? c) shall we? d) shan't we?
20. She has been very lucky
a) has she? b) has n't she? c) had she? d) hadn't she?
21. You are joking
a) are you? b) aren't you? c) were you? d) were n't you?
22. Rajini attended the dinner party
a) don't she? b) did she? c) did n't she? d) does she?

23. Apples aren't cheap []
 a) are they? b) aren't they? c) were they? d) weren't they?
24. He looks very tired []
 a) don't he? b) doesn't he? c) didn't he? d) did he?
25. Raghu likes tea []
 a) dont he? b) doesn't he? c) didn't he? d) did he?
26. I'd be glad if I were invented []
 a) didn't I? b) would I? c) hadn't I? d) wouldn't I?
27. I'll go to my home tomorrow []
 a) shall I? b) will I? c) won't I? d) shan't I?
28. You've got good idea []
 a) have you? b) had you? c) haven't you? d) hadn't you?
29. She'll open the new account []
 a) won't she? b) will she? c) shall she? d) shan't she?
30. Let us walk to the pool []
 a) will you? b) will I? c) shall we? d) will we?

Answers : 1.c 2.a 3.b 4.a 5.a 6.b 7.b 8.b 9.b 10.b 11.b 12.b 13.b 14.a 15.a 16.b
 17.a 18.a 19.b 20.b 21.b 22.c 23.a 24.b 25.b 26.d 27.d 28.c 29.a 30.c

Choose the correct Question Tag for the following :

1. They came yesterday.
1. did they? 2. didn't they? 3. don't they? 4. do they?
2. Ramesh cannot swim.
1. can he? 2. can't he? 3. can she? 4. can't she?
3. She will be punished,
1. will she? 2. does she? 3. won't she? 4. did she?
4. I like sweets,
1. don't I? 2. do I? 3. did I? 4. didn't I?
5. Manisha sings well,
1. did she? 2. did he? 3. does she? 4. doesn't she?
6. I am young.
1. am I? 2. amn't I? 3. aren't I? 4. do I?
7. They should go immediately,
1. should they? 2. shouldn't they? 3. shall they? 4. shalln't they?
8. Ramu can repair TV sets,
1. can't he? 2. can he? 3. can it? 4. can't she?
9. It had never rained there,
1. has it? 2. haven't it? 3. had it? 4. hadn't it?
10. She is not tall,
1. is she? 2. isn't she? 3. isn't it? 4. is it?
11. He got a few marks,
1. doesn't he? 2. did he? 3. does he? 4. did n't he?
12. They used to go for a walk,
1. do they? 2. don't they? 3. did they? 4. did n't they?
13. Let's go,
1. shall us? 2. shall not him? 3. shall we? 4. shan't we?
14. There is a mistake,
1. isn't them? 2. is there? 3. isn't there? 4. was there?
15. He used to play cricket,
1. usedn't he? 2. don't he? 3. didn't he? 4. did he?
16. You saw me,
1. don't you? 2. doesn't you? 3. didn't you? 4. won't you?
17. He plays the game,
1. don't he 2. did n't he? 3. doesn't he? 4. does he?
18. Please wait,
1. will you? 2. won't you? 3. do you? 4. don't you?
19. Anitha does not sing,
1. doesn't Anitha? 2. does she? 3. didn't she? 4. won't she?
20. Sheela is very late to School today,
1. is she? 2. hasn't she? 3. isn't she? 4. doesn't she?
21. They were reading.
1. aren't they? 2. weren't they? 3. were not they? 4. are they?

22. The boys don't play well,
1. didn't they? 2. don't they? 3. do they? 4. doesn't they?
23. I am lazy,
1. amn't I? 2. am I? 3. aren't I? 4. are I?
24. I am not lazy?
1. am I? 2. am n't I? 3. are n't I? 4. are I?
25. The dog was barking,
1. was n't the dog? 2. wasn't it? 3. was not the dog? 4. was it?
26. It isn't ready yet,
1. is it? 2. does it? 3. does n't it? 4. is n't it?
27. He never goes to church,
1. does n't he? 2. is n't he? 3. does he? 4. will he?
28. There is a mosque in that street,
1. is it? 2. aren't there? 3. is there? 4. isn't there?
29. I seldom go there,
1. do I? 2. don't I? 3. am n't I? 4. aren't I?
30. Gopi broke the glass,
1. did he? 2. did n't he? 3. isn't Gopi? 4. is n't it?
31. Gopal hasn't passed the exam,
1. hasn't he? 2. has he? 3. didn't he? 4. did he?
32. You aren't going out,
1. do you? 2. isn't it? 3. are you? 4. don't you?
33. Wait a minute,
1. isn't it? 2. can you? 3. did n't you? 4. shall he?
34. Somebody has called,
1. has he? 2. haven't he? 3. has n't they? 4. have n't they?
35. It is very hot today,
1. is it? 2. doesn't it? 3. isn't it? 4. did n't it?
36. Kishore will come,
1. won't he? 2. will be? 3. is he? 4. will n't he?
37. We must not hurry,
1. mustn't we? 2. don't we? 3. do we? 4. must we?
38. You have tea for breakfast,
1. is n't it? 2. haven't you? 3. hasn't you? 4. must we?
39. I am right,
1. aren't I? 2. am I? 3. amn't I? 4. shall we?
40. Let's go to the beach.
1. do we? 2. don't we? 3. aren't we? 4. shall we?

Answers :

1.2 2.1 3.3 4.1 5.4 6.3 7.2 8.1 9.3 10.1 11.4 12.4 13.3 14.3 15.3 16.3 17.3 18.1
19.2 20.3 21.2 22.3 23.3 24.1 25.2 26.1 27.3 28.4 29.1 30.2 31.2 32.3 33.2 34.4 35.3
36.1 37.4 38.2 39.1 40.4

MODEL - I

1. I have drunk milk.
A haven't it?
2. Ravi will teach English.
A won't he?
3. Sita is singing songs.
A isn't she?
4. Iron is a useful metal.
A isn't it?
5. He can speak english.
A can't he?
6. We should drink milk.
A Shouldn't we?
7. The students are playing cricket.
A aren't they?
8. I am watching T.V.
A aren't I?
9. I shall teach English.
A shan't I?
10. He was reading books.
A wasn't he?
11. You were writing a story.
A weren't you?
12. Raju had gone to cinema.
A hadn't he?
13. I am not going to market.
A am I?
14. It was raining.
A wasn't it?
15. He has done it.
A hasn't he?
16. He will not read books.
A will he?
17. Tea is very hot.
A isn't it?
18. He must not do it.
A must he?
19. He dare not climb that tree.
A dare he?
20. He need not buy it.
A need he?
21. They ought to go there.
A oughtn't they?
22. I used to swim.
A didn't I?
23. They must not do it.
A must they?
24. She should not walk.
A should she?
25. He could sing a song.
A couldn't he?

MODEL - II

1. He writes a story.
A doesn't he?

Note : ఇచ్చిన వాక్యంలో క్రియ మొదటి రూపం (Simple Present Tense) లో, ఉన్నప్పుడు కర్త (Subject) ఏకవచనమైన Question Tag లో does వ్రాయాలి. కర్త (Subject) బహువచనమైన Question Tag లో do వ్రాయాలి.

Eg :

1. They play cricket.
A don't they?
2. The Sun rises in the east
A doesn't it?
3. They play well
A don't they?
4. She goes to college daily
A doesn't she?
5. The boys read books
A don't they?
6. Barking dogs never bite
A do they?
7. We write stories
A don't we?
8. I don't like tea
A do I?

MODEL - III

1. They played cricket.

A. didn't they?

Note: ఇచ్చిన వాక్యంలో క్రియ రెండవ రూపం (Simple Past Tense) లో, ఉన్నప్పుడు Question Tag లో did వ్రాయాలి.

Eg:-

1. They sang songs.

A. didn't they?

2. Ramu watched T.V.

A. didn't he?

3. She drank milk.

A. didn't she?

4. The telephone bell rang.

A. didn't it?

5. I wrote a letter.

A. didn't I?

6. He did not eat a mango.

A. did he?

7. The Manager came to the Bank.

A. didn't he/she?

8. I went to market.

A. didn't I?

9. Columbus discovered America.

A. didn't he?

10. They went to cinema.

A. didn't they?

EXERCISES

1. Frank doesn't look very well to day, does he?
2. You haven't seen Francis today, have you?
3. You can speak English, can't you?
4. Neeraja won't be late, will she?
5. I am very lucky, aren't I?
6. They were very cruel, weren't they?
7. This story is not very interesting, is it?
8. The match was exciting, wasn't it?
9. He does not sing a song, does he?
10. Rama played cricket, didn't he?

OBJECTIVE TYPE EXERCISES

- | | | | | |
|----------------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. They go to College? | 1. don't they? | 2. do they? | 3. isn't it? | 4. don't it? |
| 2. It is raining | 1. is it? | 2. isn't it? | 3. was n't it? | 4. don't it? |
| 3. You write a story? | 1. do you? | 2. aren't you? | 3. don't you? | 4. doesn't you |
| 4. I am going to market. | 1. amn't I? | 2. aren't I? | 3. am I | 4. wasn't I? |
| 5. The cat killed the rat? | 1. don't it? | 2. doesn't it? | 3. did n't it? | 4. none |

6. I will conquer him.
1. will I? 2. Shall I? 3. will not I? 4. won't I?
7. Your behaviour vexes me
1. doesn't it? 2. don't it? 3. doesn't he? 4. don't he?
8. English is spoken all over the world.
1. is it? 2. doesn't it 3. isn't it? 4. aren't it?
9. I shall not oblige to go.
1. shan't I? 2. won't I 3. shall I? 4. will I?
10. I am reading books
1. amn't I? 2. aren't I 3. am I? 4. are I?
11. I heard her song.
1. did I? 2. didn't I 3. don't I 4. do I?
12. We must work hard.
1. mustn't we? 2. must we? 3. shall we? 4. shan't we?
13. He is a teacher.
1. isn't he? 2. isn't he? 3. is he? 4. wasn't he?
14. You met him.
1. don't you 2. do you? 3. didn't you? 4. doesn't you?
15. The manager called him.
1. do they? 2. don't they? 3. didn't he? 4. don't he?
16. She likes milk.
1. does she? 2. doesn't she? 3. don't she? 4. do she?

Answers :

1.1 2.2 3.3 4.2 5.3 6.4 7.1 8.3 9.3 10.2 11.2 12.1 13.1 14.3 15.3 16.2

VERBS

Types of Verbs :

Verbs are classified into many types depending on their functions.

1. **Main Verbs (Lexical Verbs):** Verbs which denote actions or states/possession are called the main verbs.

Eg :

1. I am reading a novel.
2. She likes apples.
3. She has a scooter.

2. **Auxiliary Verbs :** The word 'auxiliary' means giving help or support to the main verb. An auxiliary verb is a word, which helps or supports the main verb in the formation of sentences.

Eg :

1. Amala is driving a car.
2. They are celebrating Diwali.
3. The man was looking for an opportunity.
4. My friends were forcing me to dance in the party.
5. You have been helping me for many days.
6. Did you finish your assignment ?
7. He will be visiting this place tomorrow.

Auxiliary verbs are of two types : Those which can function both as main verbs and as auxiliaries are called **primary auxiliaries**.

Ex :

1. I am a teacher. (main verb)
2. I am going to the airport. (auxiliary verb)

(a). Primary auxiliaries

1. Vimala is a X class student. (main verb)
2. Vimala is working in a bank. (auxiliary verb)
3. Kings were the rulers in the past. (main verb)
4. Kings were the ruling in the past.
5. I have five hundred rupees in my purse. (main verb)
6. I have finished my lunch. (auxiliary verb).
7. Shirisha has many talents. (main verb)
8. Shirisha has gone to Mauritius. (auxiliary verb)

Those verbs which function only as auxiliaries and cannot be used as main verbs in a sentence and these are called **modal auxiliaries**.

Ex :

1. Can you hear properly ?
2. May I come in sir?

(b) Modal auxiliaries

1. Can you lift this big rock?
2. Can you read Tamil?
3. Could you finish your exam within three hours?
4. He might come back tomorrow.
5. He will be coming tomorrow.
6. You ought to apologize for using an offensive language against your friend.

Use of Modal Auxiliaries

1. Shall and Will

Shall is used

- (i) In the first person to express simple futurity.
I shall go to Madras tomorrow.
We shall talk to the Director next week.
- (ii) In the second and third persons to express a command or promise or threat or determination.
You shall not enter my house. (command)
You shall enjoy a holiday tomorrow. (promise)
He shall be punished for this. (threat)
He shall obey me. (Determination)
- (iii) To express offers, suggestions, polite enquiries.
Shall I help you?
Shall we have some drink?
Shall we go for a walk?

Will is used

- (i) In the second and third persons to express simple futurity:
You will get the book tomorrow.
Dr. Rao will be back in a few days.
The Balaji Express will leave at 5 P.M.
- (ii) In the first person to express.
Determination : I will do as I like. / We will not yield
Promise : I will help you : I won't come late.
Threat : I will expose your fraud.
Willingness : We will do this work for you.
- (iii) To express willingness, intention or will in the second persons.
Will you speak at the function? (Willingness or Wish)
Will you attend the marriage? (Intention)
Will you please give me your pen? (Request)
- (iv) To express command or instructions.
Will you speak at the function?

All of you will write the Model Test tomorrow.

Note : However, in modern English the distinction between **Shall** and **Will** has been disappearing.

The use of shall have become old fashioned. The tendency is to use **Will** in all persons.

Should and would : They are used as the past equivalent of shall and will

(a) **Should** is used in all persons.

(i) to express duty or obligation.

We should not lie.

Children should respect their elders.

(ii) to indicate advice.

You should not laugh at his mistakes.

We should not give the child a blade to play with.

(iii) In conditional clauses to express possibility, probability or supposition.

If it should rain, they will not attend.

Should it rain, there will be no function.

(iv) After lest to express a negative purpose.

He ran fast lest he should miss the train.

(b) **Should** and **Would** are used as in the examples given below :

I **Should/ Would** like to help the boy. (Politeness)

Would you lend me your cycle ? (more polite than will)

I wish you **would** not talk too much. (Strong desire)

3. Can, Could, May, Might

(a) i) **Can** generally expresses ability or capacity:

I can cross the river.

He can solve this problem.

ii) **May** is used to express permission. Often, **can** is used in the place of **may**.

You may / can go now.

May / can I borrow your book ?

iii) **May** is used to express possibility in affirmative sentences, while **can** is used in questions and negative sentences.

It may rain.

My friend may be at home.

Can this be true.

It cannot be true.

iv) **May** is used to express a wish.

May you prosper well!

May you live long!

(b) **Could** and **might** are used as the past.

i) equivalents of **can** and **may**.

I **could** swim across the river in my youth. (ability)

He said I **might/ could** go. (Permission)

I thought she **might** be at home. (Possibility)

He wondered whether it **could** be true. (Possibility)

ii) in present-time context as less positive versions of **can** and **may**:

I **could** attend the function. (less positive and more hesitant)

Might/ Could I borrow your scooter? (diffident)

It **might** rain tomorrow. (less positive)

Could you pass me the salt? (polite request)

4. **Must, Ought :**

a) **Must** expresses duty, necessity, obligation or determination.

We **must** obey the laws of the land. (duty)

Children **must** look after their parents. (moral obligation)

One **must** work or starve. (necessity)

I **must** demand for my share. (determination)

Note : As **must** has no past tense form, we use **had to** in the past.

b) **Ought to** expresses moral obligation or desirability or strong probability.

We **ought to** respect our elders.

We **ought not to** speak ill of others.

The film **ought to** be a big success.

Note : When **ought** refers to Past time, it is followed by the Perfect Infinitive. I **ought to have helped** her.

You **ought to have studied** well.

The three characteristics of Modal auxiliaries :

1. They are never used alone. They are used with a principal verb.

2. They do not change their form according to the number and person of the subject.

3. The root verb is used after a Modal auxiliary.

(3) **Weak and Strong Verbs:**

Tense forms of the verbs : Each main verb has three forms. The inflections (endings) of English verb forms are not difficult to remember.

The three basic forms of verbs are :

| Present | Past | Past Participle |
|---------|----------|-----------------|
| Accept | accepted | accepted |
| Begin | began | begun |
| Break | broke | broken |

| | | |
|-------|--------|--------|
| Beat | beat | beaten |
| Catch | caught | caught |
| Come | came | come |
| Drink | drank | drunk |
| Give | gave | given |
| Talk | talked | talked |
| Speak | spoken | spoken |

We can make present participle forms of verbs by adding to the basic forms.

Eg : walk + ing; write + ing; sleep + ing

These are also called Irregular verbs and Regular verbs respectively.

- (a) **Weak verbs** : Many verbs can be changed into past tense just by adding -d or -ed or -to their present tense form. These verbs are called weak or regular verbs.

Eg : explain -ed-explained.

Talk -ed-talked

| | | | |
|----------|------|---|-----------|
| Walk | - ed | - | Walked |
| Love | - d | - | Loved |
| organize | - d | - | organized |
| Invite | - d | - | invited |
| Learn | - t | - | learnt |
| Dream | - t | - | dreamt |

- (b) **Strong Verbs** : Form their past and past participle forms usually in three ways. They are also known irregular verbs. (i) By changing the vowel (as in take + took + taken),

(ii) By changing the vowels and consonants (as in bring - brought-brought) (iii) By making no change at all (as in cut - cut - cut).

| | | | | |
|-------|---|-------|---|--------|
| Eat | - | ate | - | eaten |
| Take | - | took | - | taken |
| Sleep | - | slept | - | slept |
| Beat | - | beat | - | beaten |
| Swim | - | swam | - | swum |
| Drink | - | drank | - | drunk |
| Put | - | put | - | put |
| Cut | - | cut | - | cut |
| Come | - | came | - | come |
| Go | - | went | - | gone |

(4) Transitive and Intransitive Verbs :

Some verbs require an object to complete their meaning.

Eg : Vimala gave (gave what?)

Vimala gave money for charity.

Gave is said to be **transitive** in the above sentence because it requires an object (money) to complete its meaning.

The boy cut his hand.

Put away your books.

Ramu wrote a letter.

The policeman blew his whistle.

I shall bring my camera.

Verbs that are intransitive do not require an object.

Eg :

1. The towers collapsed.

2. The birds fly.

Collapsed / fly is said to be intransitive in the above sentence because it does not require an object.

(5) Finite and non - finite Verbs : A finite verb makes an assertion or expression, a state of being and can stand by itself as the main verb of a sentence.

Eg :

1. The plane demolished the building.

2. Her hair was black and silky.

Non-Finite Verbs cannot stand by themselves be main verbs.

Eg :

1. The fallen star

2. The deserted building

There are three groups of non-finite verbs.

(a) Infinitive : The preposition 'to' plus the root of a verb form to infinitive.

Eg :

1. He went to Goa to see his friends.

2. I want to sleep as early as possible.

A present infinitive describes the present condition.

Eg : I like to go there.

(b) The participle : A participle does the functions partly of a verb and partly of an adjective.

Eg : We read an interesting book.

The wounded lion finally dead.

He gave us the tin filled with sweets.

There are two types of participles.

(1) Present participle : Participles ending in 'ing' are called present participles. They denotes an incomplete action.

Eg : I can hear a girl singing a song.

He came laughing.

- (2) **Past participle** : The participles that denote a completed action is called past participle. The past participle used as an adjective is passive is if the verb is transitive. Such participles end in -en, -n, or -ed, -e, -t, from which it is derived.

Eg : We saw the trees laden with mangoes.
She has already written to Rita.

- (c) **Gerund / Verbal Noun** : The gerund is a form of verb ending with ing, which acts as a noun.

Eg :

1. Smoking is injurious to health.
2. Swimming is a good exercise.
3. Running in the park after dark is dangerous.
4. Dancing is her favourite hobby.
5. Swimming is good for health.
6. Starving is better than stealing.

- (6) **Phrasal verbs or verb phrases** : A phrasal verb consists of a verb and another word or phrases usually a preposition or adverbs.

Eg :

1. Everybody laughed at him when he slipped and fell.
2. He overcomes all his problems with courage.
3. The examination committee withheld the results of the students.
4. Rohit's mother underwent an open heart surgery last week.
5. The rivers overflow during the rainy season.
6. I wish for your success in the examination.
7. He looks after his parents very well.
8. He is looking forward to receiving a favourable reply from his friend.

- (7) **Causative Verbs** : Causative verbs designate the action necessary to cause another action to happen.

Eg :

1. She made me work till evening.
2. Wilson helped me to decorate the room for the party.

- (8) **Factitive Verbs** : Verbs like make, choose, judge, elect, select are called factitive Verbs. These verbs are transitive and they usually take two objects.

Eg : The committee elected John the president of the association.

TENSES

STRUCTURE

Objective : After going through this unit/lesson, you will be able to

- (1) know the time of verbs - action or state, manner or aspect.
- (2) Know the different types of tenses and their application.
- (3) detect the grammatical errors and rectify them.

Introduction : Tense should be distinguished from time. Time is a matter of real life. Tense is a category of grammar. It refers to the form of the verb. It refers to time, when an action took place or will take place and also whether it is completed or in progress. Thus 'Tense' means 'verb form' which indicates both time of the action (verb) and degree of completeness of the action.

Tense is a compulsory feature of the verb in a sentence. It is carried by the finite verb which is the lexical verb when it is a simple verb phrase, or the first auxiliary when it is a complex verb phrase.

Types of Tenses : There are three broad divisions of time-present, past and future. These are the three main tenses and each of them has 4 divisions : The simple (indefinite), the continuous (progressive), the perfect and the perfect continuous.

The present tense denotes that the action refers to present time.

Eg : I love, I speak.

The past tense denotes that the action took place in the past time.

Eg : I loved, I spoke.

The future tense denotes that the action will take place in time to come.

Eg : I shall love, I shall/will speak.

The tense of a verb shows the time of an action/event.

There are twelve tenses which are given below :

- 1) Simple present tense/present indefinite
- 2) Present continuous tense/present progressive
- 3) Present perfect tense
- 4) Present perfect continuous tense
- 5) Simple past tense/ past indefinite
- 6) Past continuous tense
- 7) Past perfect tense
- 8) Past perfect continuous tense
- 9) Future tense
- 10) Future continuous tense
- 11) Future perfect tense
- 12) Future perfect continuous tense

Note : For the sake of easy understanding 12 tenses are represented in a tabular form.

PRESENT TENSE

| Tense | Verb Form | Use | Examples | Adverbs Used |
|---|--|---|--|--|
| 1. The Simple Present Tense/ Present Indefinite | go/goes, is/are/am has/have (v1/base form) | 1. To express habitual action, daily routine or custom | 1. He <u>smokes</u> . 2. Dogs <u>bark</u> . 3. Cats <u>drink</u> milk. 4. The Hindus <u>burn</u> their dead. 5. He <u>walks</u> every day. | Generally, daily, usually, seldom, scarcely, often, always, rarely, frequently, once twice, everyday, every week, every month, every year, whenever hardly |
| | | 2. To express universal facts. | 1. The sun <u>rises</u> in the East. 2. The sky <u>is</u> high | some times, Occasionally, ever, never, commonly, very often, regularly now-a-days, naturally. |
| | | 3. For planned future actions or series of actions | 1. We <u>leave</u> London at 10 a.m. next Tuesday. 2. I <u>visit</u> America in August next year. | |
| | | 4. It can be used in news paper headlines | 1. Peace <u>talks</u> fail. 2. The mass murderer <u>escapes</u> . | |
| | | 5. It can be used in dramatic narrative. | 1. When the curtain <u>rises</u> , he is sleeping 2. Suddenly window <u>opens</u> and a thief <u>enters</u> . | |
| | | 6. To express what actually happens at the time of speaking | 1. Here <u>comes</u> Mr. Naveen. 2. The wind <u>blows</u> heavily. | |
| | | 7. To express a general truth or a permanent truth. | 1. Two and two <u>make</u> four. 2. The sun <u>rises</u> in the east. 3. The earth <u>is</u> round | |
| | | 8. To show possession | 1. She has a car. 2. I have a cycle. | |
| | | 9. To express a fact that is true at the time of speaking | 1. A platform ticket <u>costs</u> Rs.5/-. 2. Petrol <u>costs</u> more now-a-days. | |

| | | | | |
|---------------------------------|--|--|--|---|
| | | 10. Making the past present | 1. Gandhi <u>lives</u> at <u>100</u> years. 2. King Ravana <u>elopes</u> Sita. 3. Rama <u>fights</u> for Sita. | |
| | | 11. In sub-ordinate causes introduced by If or when | 1. If you work hard you will pass. 2. If she helps me, I shall help her. | |
| | | 12. To quote someone | 1. Shakespeare <u>says</u> , "Jealously thy name is woman". | |
| | | 13. For notices, sports commentary and processes | 1. The notice <u>says</u> , "No Parking". 2. Here <u>comes</u> Tendulkar and <u>picks</u> up the ball. | |
| 2. The Present Continuous Tense | Am+going/is+going/are+going/(am/is/are+v1+ing) | 1. For an action happening now | 1. It <u>is raining</u> . 2. I <u>am wearing</u> a hat. | Now, at present, presently, at the moment, still, Look!, See!, For the present, right now, currently, go and find |
| | | 2. For an action happening about this time but not necessarily at the time of speaking | 1. I <u>am reading</u> a play by Shaw. 2. He <u>is teaching</u> English and <u>learning</u> French. | |
| | | 3. For definite arrangement in the near future (usual way of expressing immediate plans) | 1. I <u>am meeting</u> the Prime Minister tomorrow. 2. I <u>am taking</u> leave tomorrow. | |
| | | 4. For an action which appears to be continuous | 1. He <u>is always</u> working. (He works the whole time) | |
| 3. The Present Perfect Tense | Has + gone Have + gone (has/have V3) | 1. For an action just completed | 1. The train <u>has left</u> the station just now. 2. Sita <u>has finished</u> reading paper. | Just, just now, already, not-yet, ever, never, recently, lately, so far, still, till now, upto now till-to-date, since+timeword, for+timeword |

| | | | | |
|---|--|--|--|---|
| | | 2. For recent actions when the time is not mentioned | 1. I <u>have read</u> the instructions but I don't understand them. 2. I <u>have repaired</u> the car you can drive. | |
| | | 3. Recent actions in the past having results in the present | a. Mr. John <u>has brought</u> a car. (He uses car) b. He <u>has met</u> an accident (He is in hospital) | |
| | | 4. For actions which occur in the past that the action could be repeated in the present. | 1. I <u>have seen</u> wolves in that forest (still possible to see them). 2. I <u>have met</u> your sister in my street. (still possible to meet her) | |
| 4. The Present Perfect Continuous Tense | Have+been+going/ Has+been+going (has+have+been (V1+ing)) | a. To express an action which began in the past and still continuing | 1. I <u>have been reading</u> a book since morning. 2. It <u>has been raining</u> for two days. | Since (specific time), for (duration) all this morning, all this week, all day, all this time, how long |
| | | b. To express an action which began in the past and has just finished. | 1. I <u>have been waiting</u> for you. | |

B. PAST TENSE

| Tense | Verb Form | Use | Examples | Adverbs Used |
|--------------------------|--------------------|--|--|---|
| 5. The Simple Past Tense | went/was/were (V2) | 1. It is used for past action, if the time is given | 1. I <u>met</u> him yesterday 2. Mr. John <u>lost</u> his wife in 1947. | Yesterday; ago, last Monday, last week, last month, last year, at that time, ancient in 2001, then before, once upon a time, last night, this morning, in olden days, that day. |
| | | 2. When the time is asked about. | 1. when <u>did</u> you <u>meet</u> him? 2. when <u>did</u> you <u>arrive</u> ? | |
| | | i) For a past action clearly took place at a definite time (though time is not mentioned). | 1. I <u>bought</u> this car in Hyderabad. 2. When <u>did</u> you <u>get</u> your present job? | |

| | | | | |
|------------------------------|---|--|---|--|
| | | ii) For a past action whose time is not given but occurred at a movement in a period of time and now terminated. | 1. Mr. John <u>worked</u> in that bank for four years (he doesn't work in that bank now). 2. He <u>remained</u> in coma for a year. (He is alright now). | |
| | | 5. For the past habits | 1. She always <u>carried</u> an umbrella. 2. He never <u>drank</u> wine. | |
| 6. The Past Continuous Tense | Was+going/ Were+going (was/were + VI+ing) | 1. It is used chiefly for past actions which continued for sometime (whose exact time limits are not known) | 1. Ratna <u>was reading</u> a paper. 2. Boys <u>were playing</u> cricket. | All last week all yesterday, all last night |
| | | 2. Used with time expression permanent truth. | 1. It <u>was getting</u> darker. 2. The wind <u>was raising</u> . | |
| | | 3. Used to refer two activities going on at the same time in the past. | 1. While I <u>was reading</u> a novel, she <u>was dressing</u> children. 2. When master <u>was sleeping</u> the dog <u>was watching</u> . | |
| | | 4. For an activity repeated over a period of time. | 1. Last year, farmers <u>were complaining</u> about bad weather. 2. Before independence freedom fighters <u>were fighting</u> for freedom. | |
| 7. The Past Perfect Tense | Had+gone (had+V3) | 1. It is used to show the sequence of two events in the past. It is also used for the action completed earlier. | 2. When Mrs. Rita reached the station the train <u>had left</u> . 3. Mr. Raju <u>had gone</u> to London and completed M.S. | When, after, before, until, as soon as, already |

PAST TENSE

| | | | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|---|--|---|
| | | 2. To express unfulfilled wishes in the past. | 1. I wish I <u>had married</u> her. 2. I wish I <u>had gone</u> to the U.S.A. | |
| | | 3. It is also used in the reported speech. | 1. He said that he <u>had taught</u> it. 2. Master said that he <u>had taught</u> it. | |
| | | 4. To express unfulfilled conditions | 1. If I <u>had worked</u> hard, I would have achieved my aim. 2. If I <u>had reached</u> the busstop, I would have boarded the bus. | |
| 8. The Past Perfect Continuous Tense | Had + been + going (had + been + V1 + ing) | 1. It is used for an action began before the time of speaking in the past and continued up to the time. | 1. The labourers <u>had been working</u> since last year. 2. The patient <u>had been suffering</u> for two years. | Since + past point of time For + past period of time |
| | | 2. It is used for repeated actions in the past. (A continuous action in the past) | 1. I <u>had been persuading</u> her (daughter) to marry Mr. Robin. 2. John <u>had been encouraging</u> him to learn English. | |
| | | 3. It is used for an action that began in the past and completed in the past. | 1. The patient <u>had been crying</u> all the night but no doctor came. 2. She <u>had been shouting</u> for help all the day but nobody helped her. | |

C. FUTURE TENSE

| Tense | Verb Form | Use | Examples | Adverbs Used |
|----------------------------|---|--|---|---|
| 9. The Simple Future Tense | Will + go/ Shall + go (will/shall/can/may/+V1) | 1. To express the speakers opinions, assumptions, speculations about the future. | 1. (I suppose) We <u>will go</u> to England 2. We hope it <u>will rain</u> next month. | Tomorrow, next year, soon, shortly tonight, next week, in a few minutes, by next week, 2012 |
| | | 2. For future habitual actions | 1. Birds <u>will build</u> nests. 2. People <u>will make</u> plans. | |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 3. Used in the sentence containing clauses of conditions (conditions of time and purpose) | 1. If you drop this glass, it <u>will break</u> . 2. When it gets warmer, the snow <u>will melt</u> . | |
| | | 4. It is chiefly used in newspapers news broadcasts, announcements of future plans and weather broadcasts. | 1. The present <u>will open</u> the new airport tomorrow. 2. It <u>will rain</u> tomorrow. | |
| 10. The Future Continuous Tense | Will+be+going/ Shall+be+going (will/shall+be+vl+ing) | 1. It is used to express an action in progress at some future time. | 1. I <u>will be taking</u> I.A.S. examination next year. 2. Mr. Rao <u>will be constructing</u> a house in future. | For many days, in the next month. |
| | | 2. Used to express future without intension | a. I will be seeing Mr. Tom tomorrow (normal course of events) Note: I am <u>seeing</u> Tom tomorrow (deliberate future action) | |
| 11. The Future Perfect Tense | will+have+gone/shall+have+gone (will/shall+have+v3) | To express an action to be completed at a point of time in the future. It is normally used with the time adverbials like by the time by the 24 th etc. | 1. By the end of the next August we <u>will have gone</u> to the U.S.A. 2. I <u>will have finished</u> eating by that time. | By now, by this time, by the end of this week (month, year), by 'o' clock, by tomorrow, after a year |
| 12. The Future Perfect Continuous Tense | will + have+been+going/ Shall+have+been+going (will/shall+have+been+vl+ing) | Use like future perfect. It is normally used with a time expression beginning with by. It can be used instead of the future perfect, when the action is continuous. | 1. By the end of this year she <u>will have been completed</u> sixteen years. 2. By the end of the month we <u>will have been living</u> here for ten years. | By now, by this time, by the end of this week (month year), by 'o' clock, by tomorrow, after a year, for+future period of time, since + future point of time. |

Tenses in Conditionals :

There are three kinds of conditionals. They are :

1. Open condition
2. Improbable or unreal condition
3. Unfulfilled condition

Conditionals sentences have two parts : the "if" clause and the main clause

- (1) If you try again you will succeed.
- (2) Unless you work hard you will not get a first class.

("If" clause)

(Main clause)

This is a subordinate clause.

(1) Open Condition :

In this type, the condition may be fulfilled or may not be fulfilled. The question whether the condition will be fulfilled is left OPEN or unanswered. Hence, it is called OPEN CONDITION.

The Simple Present Tense is used in the "if-clause". Will/shall/can may + plain infinitive are used in the Main Clause.

Eg :

1. If he works hard, he will get a first class.
2. If I see him, I'll give him a lift.
3. If you leave before nine, you can catch the train.
4. If you telephone her, she may come.

(2) Improbable or unreal condition or imaginary condition

(a) This type of condition is used when the action in the "if-clause" is considered unlikely to happen.

Eg :

1. If he worked hard, he would get a first class.
("If he worked hard" means that it is possible that he will work hard, but not probable).

(b) We also use this type of condition to talk about unreal situations in the present.

Eg : If I were you, I wouldn't do that. (Here the reference is to the present or future.

The Simple Past in the "if-clause" is not a true past, but a subjunctive expressing unreality).

Thus, the Simple Past is used (improbable or unreal conditions) in the "if-clause".
Would/should/could/might + plain infinitive are used in the Main Clause.

Other examples are :

1. If we flew, we could get there in time.
2. If I were you, I would visit America.
3. If I got the chance I would go into business.
4. If I were rich, I would travel round the world.
5. If I had enough money, I would buy a car.

(3) Unfulfilled condition

The Past Perfect is used in the "if-clause" and would/should/could/might + had + past participle are used in the Main Clause. This type of conditional clause shows that something did not happen because a certain condition was not fulfilled.

Eg :

1. If he had worked hard, he would have got a first class. (It means that he did not work hard and therefore, he did not get a first class).
2. If we had more rain, our crops would have grown better.
3. If I had not been careful, I might have met with an accident.
4. If I had not been busy I would have attended the meeting.
5. If you had telephoned I would have come to your house.

Assignment-1 :

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verb given in brackets.

1. Yesterday I _____ (write) a letter to my father.
2. He _____ (work) in this factory since 1991.
3. The Sun _____ (shine) during the day.
4. It _____ (snow) all night.
5. He _____ driving his own car when I saw him. (be)
6. "You haven't _____ your duty," he said. (do)
7. We need to fix a _____ door here. (revolve)
8. After lunch, I prefer _____ for half hour. (sleep)
9. Would you like _____ the Army? (join)
10. I _____ a film of Sridevi's yesterday. (see)
11. We _____ (take) the last train yesterday.
12. I cannot decide about _____ Science courses. (choose)

Answers:

- (1) Wrote, (2) has been working, (3) shines, (4) has been snowing, (5) was, (6) done, (7) revolving, (8) to sleep, (9) to join, (10) saw, (11) took, (12) choosing

Assignment-2 :

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

1. Kishore _____ the youngest child in the family till his brother was born. (be)
2. Don't disturb me. I _____ (do) my home work.
3. This year during the Republic Day sixteen soldiers _____ honoured with awards. (be)
4. We _____ (play) chess, when he came in.
5. How old are you? I _____ 28. (be)
6. Miss Gita _____ (teach) in this college since 1990.
7. Priya and Shanta _____ very dear to me. (be)

8. I _____ (meet) him while I was going to college.

9. He _____ my neighbor in the colony. (be)

10. The sun _____ (rise) in the east.

Answers:

(1) Was, (2) am doing, (3) were, (4) were playing, (5) am, (6) has been teaching,
(7) are, (8) met, (9) is, (10) raises

Assignment-3:

Use the correct form of the verbs in brackets and complete the sentences given below.

- The farmers _____ (plough) their fields for two hours now.
- The old man _____ (sleep) in the garden every day.
- You _____ (eat) four ice creams already.
- I _____ (study) the lesson for the last one hour.
- This servant always _____ (work) very hard.
- I _____ (not, see) a film since March.
- She _____ (look) at the picture carefully and read the name of the artist.
- They _____ (lock) the door and left.
- He always _____ (come) to office in time.
- I _____ (give) the book to you yesterday.

Answers

(1) have ploughed, (2) sleeps, (3) have eaten, (4) have been studying, (5) works,
(6) have not seen, (7) had looked, (8) had locked, (9) comes, (10) gave

Assignment - 4 :

Fill in blanks with do, does, am, is, are, was, were

- We _____ expecting a dozen people for lunch today.
- _____ you play caroms?
- Over a thousand people _____ injured in the earthquake.
- I _____ writing my English exam today.
- The door _____ shut.
- He _____ surprised to hear my voice.
- _____ your mother like to watch T.V.?
- _____ you busy this evening?
- The Prime Minister _____ received by this Cabinet Ministers.
- _____ you want some more tea?

Answers:

1. Are 2. Do 3. Were 4. Am 5. Was 6. Is 7. Does 8. Are 9. Was 10. Do

Assignment - 5 :

Fill in blanks with is, am, was, were, do, does, are, have and complete the sentences given below.

1. I _____ not want any money.
2. Shyam _____ very busy when I want to see him.
3. There _____ a girl behind the counter now.
4. I _____ a bad cold and a headache. I want to go home.
5. Hundreds of people _____ at the public meeting today.
6. "I _____ your nephew", he told her.
7. You _____ right, it is going to rain.
8. _____ he come to work by bus or train?
9. What _____ your plan to complete the work?
10. There _____ no sugar in the bowl.

Answers :

1.do 2.was 3.is 4.have 5.are 6.am 7.are 8.Does 9.is 10.is

Assignment - 6 :

Fill in blanks with suitable forms of verbs given in brackets.

1. I _____ (meet) him three time so far.
2. He _____ (read) "Gulliver's Travels" two months ago.
3. She _____ (wear) glasses since 1984.
4. We shall start as soon as you _____ (be) ready.
5. When I get home, my children _____ (play).
6. She _____ (leave) before you go to see her.
7. I _____ (buy) this book last week.
8. If it is hot, I _____ (postpone) my trip.
9. If I were you, I _____ (buy) a car.
10. If I had not been ill, I _____ (meet) your uncle.
11. India _____ (win) freedom in 1947.
12. By the time I reached the station, the train _____ (leave)
13. The sun _____ (set) in the west.
14. When _____ your pen? (you lost, have you lost, did you lose)
15. I _____ (write) a letter. Don't disturb me.
16. When I came in, the cat _____ (sleep) in my chair.
17. The shop _____ (open) at 10 o'clock every morning.
18. He _____ (Pass) EAMCET examination two years ago.

Answers

1.have met 2.read 3.has been wearing 4.are 5.will be playing 6.will have left 7.bought
8.will postpone 9.would buy/would have bought 10.could have met 11.won 12.had left
13.sets 14.did you lose 15.am writing 16.was sleeping, 17.opens, 18. passed.

Assignment - 7 :

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate forms of the verbs given in brackets.

1. What _____ the price of the watch? (be)
2. Hindi _____ in many parts of India. (speak)
3. He _____ the car pass a few minutes ago. (see)
4. The boys _____ as soon as the teacher is ready. (start)
5. I _____ for the bus for two hours. (wait)
6. Anupama has borrowed a book from the library but she _____ reading it. (not, start)
7. The names of the pupils _____ called and one of them is absent. (be)
8. I _____ (see) you for a long time. What _____ you _____ (do) all these days?
9. Look, the old man _____ across the road. (walk)
10. My friend _____ music. (like)
11. The journalist _____ a new book at present. (write)
12. He found that he _____ for a long time. (work)
13. The boys _____ the game by five. (finish)
14. Sita _____ a lesson now. (learn)
15. The train _____ the platform an hour ago. (leave)
16. He _____ the letters for two hours. (type)
17. If she does not take a taxi, she _____ the train. (miss)
18. Though she was ill she _____ to college. (go)
19. He _____ his work. (just, finish)
20. They _____ the bus yesterday. (miss)
21. She _____ the novel since 9 O clock. (read)
22. They will not go unless they _____ from you. (hear)
23. She has to reach home before it _____ dark. (get)
24. Hyderabad _____ the capital of Andhra Pradesh. (be)
25. Ravi's purse _____ yesterday. (steal)
26. While he _____ to the office he met with an accident. (go)
27. It _____ when I met them. (rain)
28. She _____ of learn Hindi for years but she has not succeeded yet. (try)
29. The old man _____ for a walk in the morning. (go)
30. Srikant _____ a book now. (read)
31. He _____ Japan before the earthquake occurred. (leave)
32. It was a beautiful night. The clouds _____ The moon _____ in the sky. We
_____ very happy. (disappear, shine, feel)
33. We _____ till you are ready. (wait)
34. _____ you all employees in this company? (be)
35. The girl _____ by snake two days ago. (bite)
36. If he had known of your arrival he _____ you. (meet)
37. They _____ in this college since 1990. (work)

38. If you _____ him, he would help you. (ask)
39. The bell rung while I _____ to my friend. (talk)
40. The sun _____ in the west. (set)
41. His aim in life _____ to become an engineer. (be)
42. Don't disturb the boy. He _____ his homework. (do)
43. He wanted to go yesterday but he _____ not. (can)
44. Once upon a time there was a king. He _____ a beautiful daughter. One day when she _____ in the garden, a handsome young man _____ her (have sit, see)
45. The lawyer _____ when the court rose. (argue)
46. We _____ in Warangal. (live)
47. She _____ when her husband came in. (cook)
48. He _____ so young that he cannot go to school. (be)
49. The novelist _____ the book by next month. (finish)
50. Water _____ at 100° C. (boil)

Answers:

1. is 2. is spoken 3. saw 4. start 5. I have been waiting 6. does not start 7. are
8. haven't seen, have, been doing 9. is walking 10. likes 11. is writing 12. had been working
13. will finish 14. is learning 15. left 16. has been typing 17. will miss
18. went 19. has just finished 20. missed 21. has been reading 22. hear 23. gets
24. is 25. was stolen 26. was going 27. was raining 28. has been trying 29. goes
30. is reading 31. had left 32. disappeared, shone, felt 33. shall be waiting 34. Are
35. was bitten 36. would have met 37. have been working 38. asked 39. was talking
40. sets 41. is 42. is doing 43. could 44. had, was sitting, saw 45. had argued 46. live
47. was cooking 48. is 49. will have finished 50. boils.

Assignment - 8 :

Fill in the blanks with a suitable verb form:

1. Dolphins _____ (live, lives, lived) in water.
2. The Prime Minister _____ (speak, spoke, spoken) to the victims yesterday.
3. He _____ (see, saw, had seen) an accident while he was waiting at the busstop.
4. The President _____ (will address, was addressing, addresses, addressed) the Public tomorrow.
5. Rohit _____ (distributed, distributing, distributes) sweets on his birthday.
6. My aunt _____ (ate, eat, eating, eats) an apple everyday.
7. I _____ (has been, have been, am) living in a rent house for the last six months.
8. Anand _____ (have written, has written) a book on health care.
9. Varma _____ (preparing, will have been preparing, will prepare) for his examinations by this time next month.
10. Anitha _____ (is going, has been going, was going) to school now.
11. The earth _____ (moves, will move, moved) round the sun.

12. I _____ (have met, had met, met) him this week.
 13. I shall take milk before I _____ (went, will go, go) to bed.
 14. John _____ (has, have, in having) a factory in London.
 15. Smith _____ (leaves, left, had left) for Paris Yesterday.
 16. She _____ (worked, is working, has been working) here for the last three years.
 17. If you go now, you _____ (caught, will catch, catches) the train.
 18. He _____ (wrote, has written, had written) a novel last year.
 19. My sisters _____ (arriving, has arrived, will arrive) tomorrow.
 20. Don't disturb him. He _____ (do, did, is doing) his homework.

Answers:

1. live 2. spoke 3. saw 4. will address 5. distributed 6. cats 7. have been 8. has written
 9. will have been preparing 10. is going 11. moves 12. met 13. go 14. has 15. left
 16. has been working 17. Will catch 18. wrote 19. will arrive 20. is doing

Assignment-9: (With Answers)**Correct the following sentences:**

1. She is knowing me well.
Ans: She knows me well.
2. He has written a letter yesterday.
Ans: He wrote a letter yesterday.
3. I am waiting here for three hours.
Ans: I have been waiting here for three hours.
4. The boy is taking coffee every day.
Ans: The boy takes coffee every day.
5. He is having a car.
Ans: He has a car.
6. I met him once before he left Delhi.
Ans: I met him once before he had left Delhi.
7. Birds flies in the sky.
Ans: Birds fly in the sky.
8. He is living in Madras since 1980.
Ans: He has been living in Madras since 1980.
9. I have met Joshi in New Delhi in 1982.
Ans: I met Joshi in New Delhi in 1982.
10. He will write the poem by next week.
Ans: He will have written this poem by next week.

Assignment-10:

(A) Use the correct verb form in the following sentence.

1. He _____ for a long time.
a. was waited b. has been waiting c. had been waiting d. will have waiting
2. I wish I _____ a dictionary.
a. have b. have had c. was having d. had
3. They _____ here for a decade.
a. had lived b. have been living c. had lived d. either (a) or (b)
4. The train _____ before he reached the station.
a. had left b. has left c. did leave d. left
5. I _____ the telephone bill yesterday.
a. paid b. have paid c. have not paid d. pay
6. I _____ my home work when Mohan came to see me.
a. did b. have done c. was doing d. do
7. It is unlikely that he _____ every race.
a. is going to win b. may win c. wins d. will win
8. The manager _____ into the papers when his assistant came to see him.
a. looks b. was looking c. looked d. is looking
9. He _____ unwell since yesterday.
a. is b. was c. has been d. had been
10. I discovered that I _____ my purse at the hotel.
a. left b. have left c. was left d. had left
11. When I entered the room he _____ television.
a. was watching b. had watched c. has been watched d. was watched
12. Had I requested him he _____ me.
a. will help b. would help c. would have helped d. would be helping
13. If you go there now you _____ your friend.
a. can meet b. would meet c. should meet d. would have met
14. We _____ to Hyderabad next Monday.
a. will have go b. would go c. shall go d. would be going
15. My son _____ his home work yet.
a. finished b. has not finished c. have to finish d. has been finishing
16. The project _____ by February next.
a. will complete b. will have complete
c. will have been completed d. will be completing
17. I generally _____ of the provisions of the bill.
a. approve b. am approving c. has approved d. shall approved
18. The tax _____ simultaneously in all the states.
a. imposed b. will impose c. was imposed d. shall impose

Answers :

1. has been waiting 2. had 3. have been living 4. had left 5. paid 6. was doing
7. will win 8. was looking 9. has been 10. had left 11. was watching 12. would have
helped 13. can meet 14. Shall go 15. has not finished 16. will have been completed
17. approve 18. will impose

B. Find out the correct sentence from the following sentences.

1. (a) My friend and her brother is arriving tonight.
(b) My friend and her brother are arriving tonight.
(c) My friend and her brother am arriving tonight.
(d) My friend and her brother was arriving tonight.
2. (a) I shall call you when the dinner will be ready.
(b) I shall call you when the dinner is ready.
(c) I shall call you when the dinner would be ready.
(d) I shall call you when the dinner was ready.
3. (a) He had gone to New York last week.
(b) He gone to New York last week.
(c) He goes to New York last week.
(d) He went to New York last week.
4. (a) I bought this pen in Mumbai.
(b) I had bought this pen in Mumbai.
(c) I will have bought this pen in Mumbai.
(d) I shall have bought this pen in Mumbai.
5. (a) The man complained that his cycle is stolen.
(b) The man complained that his cycle was stolen.
(c) The man complained that his cycle had been stolen.
(d) The man complained that his cycle have been stolen.

Answers:

1. (b), 2. (b) 3. (d), 4. (a), 5. (b)

LET US SUM UP

This unit has provided an exposure to the study of the tenses – their forms and uses. They will enable you to 'fill up the appropriate verbs in the 'fill-up the blanks' and also to 'correct the sentences' given in the examination for correction.

EXERCISE

- I. Use the correct tense form (Simple Present Progressive) of the verb given in brackets :

| | |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Simple Present | - V ₁ (+s/es) |
| Present Progressive | - is/ am/ are + V ₁ -ing |

1. She (go) to school everyday.
2. We now (learn) English.
3. I (sit) on a chair and (eat) a banana.
4. Bad students never (work) hard.
5. He generally (sing) in Hindi but today he (sing) in English.
6. The baby (cry) because it is hungry now.
7. The school time is over. The peon (ring) the bell.
8. Do you know where he (live) these days?
9. He (write) a novel. He (expect) to finish it very soon.
10. He often (sit) on the back benches but today he (sit) on the front bench.
11. Do you know the man who (argue) with my father?
12. They (talk) at the back of the room now.
13. She is not in the kitchen. She (wash) clothes.
14. These days he (prepare) for the annual examination.
15. She has finished her work and (play) in the garden.
16. I (have) a new TV set.
17. Mr. Das is my friend. He (have) two sons.
18. My father usually (wake) at a five.
19. This house (belong) to my uncle.
20. The bell (ring) and you will get late.

- II. Use the correct tense form (Present Perfect or Present Perfect Progressive) of the verb given in brackets :

| | |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Present Perfect | - has/have + V ₃ |
| Present Perfect Progressive | - has/have + been + V ₁ - ing |

1. I (live) here since 1979.
2. The cat (sit) in the front of the fire since tea-time.
3. I (not see) you for a long time.
4. You must tell me what you (do) since morning.
5. You already (drink) three cups of tea.
6. He (not be) here since Christmas. I wonder where he (live) since then.
7. I (try) to learn English for four years, but I (not succeed) yet.
8. We (live) here for the last six months, and just (decide) to move.
9. I (wait) for her since 7 o'clock and she (not come) yet.
10. I (phone) him four times but (not find) him at home.
11. You (be) a sleep all the morning? I (ring) the bell for the last twenty minutes.
12. He (write) a novel for the last two years, but he (not finish) it yet.

III. Add 'since' or 'for' :

Remember : since = from a point in past till now.
for = length of time till Now.

1. He has been selling cars _____ ten years.
2. He has been living here _____ 1989.
3. I have been waiting _____ 5 o'clock.
4. I have been mending your socks _____ the last two hours.
5. You haven't sent me any money _____ last Saturday.
6. Nobody has written to me _____ many years.
7. He hasn't been here _____ three weeks.
8. She has slept _____ four hours now.
9. I haven't done any work _____ a month.
10. What have you been doing _____ yesterday?
11. My friend has been ill _____ long time.
12. He has been working _____ 7 o'clock this morning.

IV. Put the verb in brackets in the correct tense and insert 'since' or 'for'

1. _____ the last two years apples (be) very dear.
(For the last two years apples have been very dear)
2. I _____ (write) ten letters since breakfast.
3. last year the streets _____ (become) more crowded.
4. I (not see) him _____ more than a week.
5. They (stay) at the same hotel every year _____ five years.
6. They (build) that bridge _____ several months, but they (not finish) it yet.
7. You must wake her ! She _____ (sleep) soundly ten hours !
8. He (work) in the Post Office _____ twenty years.
9. She (not buy) any new dress _____ six months.
10. Coal (become) dearer _____ the end of last year.
11. "How long you (wait)" " _____ half an hour".
12. "How long that fire _____ (burn) last night.

ANSWERS:

- I. 1. goes 2. are now learning 3. became 4. work 5. sings, is singing 6. is crying
7. is ringing 8. lives/is living 9. is writing, expects 10. sits, is sitting 11. is arguing
12. are talking 13. is washing 14. is preparing 15. is playing 16. have 17. has
18. wakes 19. belongs 20. is ringing.
- II. 1. have been living 2. has been sitting 3. have not seen 4. have been doing 5. have
already drunk 6. has not been, has been living 7. have been trying, have not succeeded
8. have been living, have just decided 9. have been waiting, hasn't come 10. have
phoned, haven't found 11. have you been asleep; I have been ringing 12. has been
writing, hasn't finished.

- III. 1. for 2. since 3. since 4. for 5. since 6. for 7. for 8. for 9. for 10. since
11. for 12. since.
- IV. 2. have written, since 3. since, have become 4. have not seen, for 5. have been
staying, for 6. have been building, for, have not finished 7. has been sleeping, for
8. has been working, for 9. has not bought, for 10. has become, since 11. have you
been waiting, for 12. has that fire been burning, Since.

EXERCISE

- I. Use the correct Tense form (Simple Past or Past Progressive) of the verb
given brackets.

Remember: Simple Past (V_2) for an action completed in the past

Past Progressive (was/were + V_1 -ing) for an action continuing in the past

1. I (read) a novel when my friend came.
2. I (go) to bed early last night.
3. As I (go) to school yesterday, I met an old friend of mine.
4. He jumped off the train while it (move).
5. I didn't see that the teacher (stand) behind me.
6. It (begin) to rain just as we moved out.
7. I saw that two policemen (chase) a thief.
8. I (have) my lunch when the postman came.
9. When I (see) him last time he was quite healthy.
10. A thief (break) into our house last night.
11. I (sleep) on the roof when it started raining.
12. He (realise) his folly but it was too late.
13. The snake bit the boy while he (try) to catch it.
14. While the teacher (teach) all the boys were silent.
15. I (go) on the road when I (find) this pen.
16. He (work) as a teacher from 1990 to 1994
17. As soon as he (see) me, he came running to me.
18. As I (travel) by bus, I tried to learn this poem.
19. While the farmer (plough), his wife was sowing.
20. He (sit) in a cafe when I (see) him.
21. When I (go) out, the sun (shine).
22. The boy (fall) down while he (run).
23. When the war (begin), we (live) in London.
24. The light (go out) while I (have) tea.
25. My friend (sing) when I (come) into the room.

26. He (eat) his dinner when I (go) to see him.
27. We (drink) coffee every day when we (be) in France.
28. You (wear) a new hat when I (meet) you yesterday.
29. When the phone (ring), I (have) a bath.
30. We (walk) to the station when it (begin) to rain.

II. Use the correct Tense form (Past Simple or Past Perfect) of the verb given in brackets :

Remember : Past Perfect (had+V3) for an action that took place first.
Simple Past (V2) for an action that took place later.

1. Mohan (reach) home before it started raining.
2. He had broken the lock before I (bring) the key.
3. We (have) our dinner before she left.
4. I saw that he (eat) all the mangoes.
5. I (close) the book after I had read it.
6. The patient (die) before the doctor came.
7. When I (go) to the Post Office, it had closed already.
8. After he (pluck) the flowers, he ran away.
9. The birds (fly) away before the hunter could catch them.
10. The thief (run) away before the police came.
11. They (go) home after they (finish) their work.
12. He (eat) all the chocolates before we (get) home.
13. Before help (reach) us, one woman (died).
14. The sun (set) before I (be) ready to go.
15. The fire (spread) to the next building before the fireman (arrive).

III. Use the correct Tense form (Past Simple or Present Perfect) of the verb given in brackets. :

Remember : We can't say : He has come yesterday. (Present Perfect)
We should say : He came yesterday. (Past Simple)
We can't use an Adverb or Phrase denoting past time with the Present Perfect tense. We use the Present Perfect for an action completed at the time of speaking.

1. He (be) a teacher since 1984.
2. I (come) to this town in 1980.
3. Two thieves (escape) from prison last night.
4. He (get) a new car now. He (buy) it last month.
5. I (already see) this film. I (see) it in Bombay last month.
6. He (tour) India for a month last year. Now he (write) a book about it.
7. He (leave) this house a few days ago. He (not come) back yet.

8. He (buy) a shirt last month. He (not wear) it yet.
9. He (write) a book last year. He (not publish) it yet.
10. I (meet) my friend last Sunday. I (not see) him after that.
11. He (open) his shop at 10 this morning. It (be) open since then.
12. In the beginning he (be) weak in English. Now he (make) up deficiency.

ANSWERS:

- I. 1. was reading 2. went 3. was going 4. was moving 5. was standing 6. began 7. were chasing 8. was having 9. saw 10. broke 11. was sleeping 12. realised 13. was trying 14. was teaching 15. was going 16. found 17. worked 18. saw 19. was travelling 20. was ploughing 21. was sitting, saw 22. went, was shining 23. fell, was running 24. began, were living 25. went out, was having 26. was singing, came 27. was eating, went 28. drank, were 29. were wearing, met 30. rang, was having 31. were walking, began.
- II. 1. had reached 2. brought 3. had had 4. had eaten 5. closed 6. had died 7. went 8. had plucked 9. had flown 10. had run 11. went, had finished 12. had eaten, got 13. reached, had died 14. had set, was 15. had spread, arrived.
- III. 1. has been 2. came 3. escaped 4. has got; bought 5. have already seen; saw 6. toured; has written 7. left; hasn't come 8. bought; hasn't worn 9. wrote; hasn't published 10. met; haven't seen 11. opened; has been 12. was; has made.

EXERCISES

- I. Use the correct Tense form (Simple Present, Simple Past or Simple Future) the verb given in brackets :

Remember : Present Simple (V_1 -s/es) for habitual acts and universal truths.

Past Simple (V_2) for actions completed in the past.

Future Simple (will/shall + V_1) for expressing opinion or speculation about the future.

1. He always (find) fault with others.
2. It (happen) in the year 1992.
3. I (leave) for Calcutta after the holidays.
4. He (come) to see you but you were not at home.
5. My birthday (fall) on a Sunday next year.
6. A stitch in time (save) nine.
7. God (help) those who help themselves.
8. It (rain) last night.
9. They are going to Bombay and (stay) there for a week.
10. India (make) great progress in the coming years.
11. The teacher (be) on leave today. He (not take) his classes.
12. I (not like) boys who tell lies.

13. Before 1947 India (be) under the British rule.
14. It often (rain) in this month.
15. I (have) my first driving lesson tomorrow.
16. We (have) a Sports Day in our school every year.
17. My sister (arrive) late since it was raining.
18. There (be) heavy rains and the city was flooded.
19. It (not behave) good boys to tell lies.
20. We (be) back home before it gets dark.

II. Use the correct Tense form (Future Simple or Future Progressive) of the verb given in brackets :

Remember : Future simple (will/shall+V₁) for an action that begins at a certain future moment.

Future Progressive (will/shall + be+V₁-ing) for an action that begins before, and finishes after, a certain future moment.

1. I (open) the door when the bell rings.
2. I (sing) a song at his birthday party.
3. I (see) what I can do for you.
4. Don't come next week. I (prepare) for my examination.
5. The sky is dark. I think it (rain).
6. I (reach) there at 5 o'clock.
7. When I meet him tomorrow, I (give) him your message.
8. It is too late. They (sleep) when we get there.
9. He (do) as you tell him.
10. I (pack) my luggage after coming back from school.
11. I (buy) a new pen if you give me ten rupees.
12. They (live) in their new house by next year.
13. When you come, I (sit) in the school library.
14. Please come to my house. We (dine) together.
15. I (do) my homework when you come to my house.

III. Use the correct Tense form (Present Perfect, Past Perfect or Future Perfect) of the verb given in brackets :

Remember: Present Perfect (has/have +V₃) for an action recently completed
Past Perfect (had + V₃) for an action completed before a certain past moment.

Future Perfect (will/shall +have +V₃) for an action that will be completed before a certain future time.

1. I (finish) my work just now.
2. I (finish) my work before he came.
3. I (finish) my work by tomorrow evening.
4. The train (come). Try to find a seat for me.
5. The train (come) before I reached the station.
6. The train (come) before you reach the station.
7. I (read) the book which you gave me.
8. I (already read) the book which you gave me.
9. I (read) the whole book before you come back.
10. We (do) all these exercises by the end of this month.
11. They (not yet return) from the market.
12. I (write) the letter before she comes back.
13. I (just take) my driving test.
14. The mad dog (bite) many people before it was killed.
15. The last bus (leave) by the time you reach the bus stand.
16. After we (drink) coffee, we went out for a walk.
17. The Students (leave) the class before the teacher arrived.
18. I (just receive) a letter from my brother.
19. The bell (ring) before I entered the class.
20. She (eat) all the chocolates by the time we return.

ANSWERS:

- I.** 1. finds 2. happened 3. shall leave 4. came 5. falls/will fall 6. saves 7. helps
8. rained 9. will stay 10. will make 11. is; won't take 12. don't like 13. was
14. rains 15. shall have 16. have 17. arrived 18. were 19. doesn't behave 20. shall be
- II.** 1. shall open 2. shall sing 3. shall see 4. shall be preparing 5. will rain 6. shall reach
7. shall give 8. will be sleeping 9. will do 10. shall pack 11. shall buy 12. will be
living 13. will be sitting 14. shall dine 15. shall be doing.
- III.** 1. have finished 2. had finished 3. will have finished 4. has come 5. had come
6. will have come 7. have read 8. had already read 9. will have read 10. shall have
done 11. have not yet returned 12. will have written 13. have just taken 14. had
bitten 15. will have left 16. had drunk 17. had left 18. have just received 19. had
rung 20. will have eaten

EXERCISES

- I.** Use the correct form of the verb given in brackets :
1. If you tell a lie the teacher (punish) you.
 2. She failed because she (not work) hard.

3. The hen (lay) no egg yesterday.
4. It was good that you (come).
5. I can't catch the train because I (be) late.
6. If you (go) to him, he would have helped you.
7. He told me that he (pass) the examination.
8. If you give me a brush, I (paint) my table.
9. If it (rain), I would stay at home.
10. We stayed at a hotel when we (go) to Shimla.
11. You'll spoil it if you (not be) careful.
12. These machines (lie) idle for three years.
13. The storm was so terrible that it (lay) the crops flat.
14. He would have told you if you (ask) him.
15. Misha will be pleased when she (read) this letter.

II. Supply 'if' or 'unless' in the following sentences :

1. He would have come _____ you had rung him.
2. I'll go to the door _____ I hear the bell.
3. I shan't go to the door _____ I hear the bell.
4. _____ you ring the bell, the servant will come.
5. He'll come _____ you ring the bell.
6. _____ you don't ring the bell, the servant won't come.
7. He won't come _____ you ring the bell.
8. _____ he wrote to me, I should write to him.
9. I shan't write to him _____ he writes to me.
10. He will not learn much _____ he works harder.
11. _____ you send a telegram now, he'll get it this evening.
12. _____ I were an orange, I should be spherical and juicy.
13. _____ you take a taxi, you can't catch the train.
14. _____ she tells the truth, I won't talk to her.

ANSWERS :

- I. 1. will punish 2. did not work 3. laid 4. came 5. am 6. had gone 7. had passed
8. shall paint 9. rained 10. went 11. are not 12. have lain 13. laid 14. had asked
15. reads

- II. 1. if 2. if 3. unless 4. if 5. if 6. if 7. unless 8. if 9. unless 10. unless
11. if 12. if 13. unless 14. unless

EXERCISE

1. Akbar _____ India long ago. (rule)
a. rules b. ruled c. is ruling d. was ruled
2. Both the boy and his brother _____ in the house yesterday. (be)
a. are b. were c. is d. was
3. Children _____ sweets. (like)
a. likes b. like c. are liking d. liked
4. Don't disturb him. He _____ his home work. (do)
a. is doing b. has done c. was doing d. will do
5. Don't disturb me. I _____ my home work. (do)
a. have done b. am doing c. was doing d. will do
6. Don't get off the train, till it _____. (stop)
a. stopped b. stop c. stops d. is stopped
7. English _____ all over the world. (speak)
a. speaks b. is spoken c. spoken d. speaking
8. He _____ the work before he reached the garage. (finish)
a. finished b. had finished c. will finish d. finishes
9. He _____ a letter before he arrived. (write)
a. wrote b. writes c. write d. had written
10. He _____ since morning. (study)
a. study b. is studying c. has studied d. has been studying
11. He _____ to my office last month. (come)
a. came b. come c. comes d. has come
12. He _____ just out. (go)
a. is gone b. has gone c. had gone d. was gone
13. He _____ milk everyday. (drink)
a. drink b. drinks c. drank d. has drunk
14. He _____ the place before we met him. (leave)
a. left b. had left c. is left d. leaves
15. He has to reach home before it _____ dark. (get)
a. got b. gets c. had got d. is getting
16. He was _____ by a mad dog. (bite)
a. bit b. bite c. bites d. bitten
17. He _____ for Bangalore just now. (leave)
a. left b. leave c. leaves d. has left
18. He _____ from college yesterday. (return)
a. return b. returns c. returned d. returning
19. His speech _____ his ideas. (reflect)
a. reflect b. are reflecting c. is reflecting d. reflects.
20. How long have you _____ here? (wait)
a. been waiting b. are waiting c. are waited d. have waited

21. I _____ as a teacher since 1980. (work)
 a. am working b. worked c. work d. have been working
22. I _____ this letter while I was searching for a book. (find)
 a. have found b. found c. had found d. find
23. I _____ the novel the whole day yesterday. (read)
 a. read b. was reading c. have been reading d. reading
24. I _____ the TV since 8 p.m. (watch)
 a. watched b. watch c. am watching d. have been watching
25. I _____ about him before I went to England. (hear)
 a. hear b. heard c. had heard d. am hearing
26. I _____ to Vizag yesterday. (go)
 a. went b. had gone c. had went d. am going
27. I _____ to bed now. Good night. (go)
 a. am going b. went c. was going d. am gone
28. I _____ in this town since 1990. (live)
 a. am living b. have been living c. was living d. was lived
29. I _____ my haircut this afternoon. (have)
 a. have b. has c. had d. will have
30. I know about the film because I _____ it twice. (see)
 a. have seen b. saw c. see d. am seeing
31. I saw a young man _____ to commit suicide. (try)
 a. try b. tries c. trying d. tried
32. I will come there even if it _____. (rain)
 a. will rain b. rains c. is raining d. is rained
33. I _____ my work till now. (not finish)
 a. didn't finish b. haven't finished c. am n't finished d. did n't finished
34. I _____ a letter now. (write)
 a. write b. am writing c. have written d. wrote
35. If he had not taken a taxi, he _____ the train. (miss)
 a. would have missed b. would miss c. would missed d. didn't miss
36. If he _____ hard, he would have passed in first division. (work)
 a. had worked b. worked c. works d. working
37. If I am invited, I _____ the function. (attend)
 a. will attend b. would attend c. would have attended d. attend
38. If I study well, I _____ good marks. (get)
 a. will get b. will get c. get d. gets
39. If I try to speak, she _____ round seriously. (turn)
 a. turn b. turns c. will turn d. turned
40. If she had asked, I _____ her. (help)
 a. would help b. would have helped c. will help d. will have helped
41. If you go now, you _____ the principal. (meet)
 a. meet b. will meet c. met d. will have met

42. If you go now, you _____ the bus. (catch)
a. catch b. caught c. will catch d. will have caught
43. If you go now, you _____ the train. (catch)
a. catch b. caught c. will catch d. will have caught
44. India _____ a big country. (be)
a. is b. are c. was d. were
45. India _____ hard working people. (want)
a. want b. wanted c. wants d. is wanting
46. India _____ Independence in 1947. (win)
a. win b. wins c. won d. winning
47. It _____ when I met him. (rain)
a. rained b. was raining c. has been raining d. had been raining
48. It _____ for two hours. (rain)
a. rained b. was raining c. has been raining d. had been raining
49. Jyothi _____ the park before Sheela arrived there. (leave)
a. had left b. has left c. has been left d. had been left
50. Last evening at 8'0 clock, I _____. (study)
a. studied b. was studying c. had studied d. was studied
51. Last week, we _____ a Cyber Cafe. (open)
a. open b. opens c. opened d. have opened
52. Last year the cost of living _____ to a new high point. (raise)
a. is raised b. was raised c. rose d. had risen
53. Leela _____ a novel now. (read)
a. is reading b. was reading c. read d. reads
54. Listen ! some body _____ you. (call)
a. calls b. is calling c. has called d. was called
55. My mother _____ to market daily. (go)
a. go b. goes c. going d. is going
56. My mother always _____ food. (cook)
a. cooks b. cooking c. was cooking d. cooked
57. My sister never _____ tea. (drink)
a. drink b. drinks c. drank d. drunk
58. Our visitors _____ yesterday. (arrive)
a. arrive b. will arrive c. would arrive d. arrived
59. Puja _____ when I visited her. (sing)
a. sang b. was singing c. had sung d. is singing
60. Raju _____ his home work now. (do)
a. does b. is doing c. has done d. did
61. Ramu _____ an actor. (be)
a. is b. was c. are d. am
62. Ramu and Gopi _____ friends. (be)
a. are b. were c. is d. was

63. Ravi usually _____ up at 6'o clock in the morning.
 a. get b. got c. gets d. getting (get)
64. Ravi usually _____ at the back of the class.
 a. sit b. sits c. is sitting d. sat (sit)
65. River water _____ salty.
 a. didn't taste b. doesn't taste c. don't taste d. not taste (not taste)
66. Science _____ also regarded as a branch of Philosophy.
 a. is b. are c. was d. am (be)
67. She _____ the novel since 9'o clock.
 a. has been reading b. reads c. read d. is reading (read)
68. She _____ up at 5 'o clock.
 a. get b. gets c. got d. getting (get)
69. She _____ a huge bungalow.
 a. have b. has c. having d. had (have)
70. She _____ the film recently.
 a. saw b. has seen c. was seen d. had seen (see)
71. She _____ a letter at present.
 a. writes b. is writing c. was writing d. has written (write)
72. She _____ from fever for a week.
 a. has been suffering b. suffered c. was suffering d. is suffering (suffer)
73. She _____ to college yesterday.
 a. goes b. went c. going d. gone (go)
74. She usually _____ in the front row.
 a. sits b. sit c. sat d. sitting (sit)
75. Srikanth _____ a book now.
 a. is reading b. read c. reads d. was reading (read)
76. Stars _____ in the night.
 a. twinkle b. twinkles c. are twinkling d. are twinkled (twinkle)
77. Stories _____ by the children.
 a. liked b. are liked c. were liked d. is liked (like)
78. Sumathi _____ a wise girl.
 a. is b. was c. am d. are (be)
79. Sunil _____ a letter to me last week.
 a. write b. wrote c. written d. writes (write)
80. The boy met with an accident while he _____ to the college.
 a. go b. goes c. was going d. went (go)
81. The boy _____ the novel since 8'o clock.
 a. was reading b. has been reading c. read d. reads (read)
82. The child _____ here since 3'0 clock.
 a. was sleeping b. has slept c. was slept d. has been sleeping (sleep)
83. The child _____ here since 8'0 clock.
 a. was staying b. is staying c. has stayed d. has been staying (stay)

84. The earth _____ round the sun. (move)
a. move b. moves c. moving d. moved
85. The girl fell asleep while she _____ T.V. (watch)
a. was watching b. watched c. watching d. has watched
86. The house _____ on fire, call for the fire department. (be)
a. was b. is c. am d. were
87. The maid broke the cup while she _____ it. (wash)
a. washed b. washing c. was washing d. has washed
88. The owner of these factories _____ rich. (be)
a. are b. is c. am d. were
89. The president of America _____ India shortly. (visit)
a. will visit b. visited c. will be visited d. would visit
90. The theme of the novel _____ our culture. (reflect)
a. reflect b. reflects c. reflected d. is reflect
91. The train _____ the platform an hour ago. (leave)
a. left b. leave c. leaves d. will leave
92. The train _____ the station, before I reached there. (Leave)
a. had left b. has left c. was left d. left
93. The World War II _____ in 1945. (end)
a. ends b. end c. ended d. ending
94. There _____ no need of your help. (be)
a. is b. was c. am d. were
95. They _____ the old bridge now. (repair)
a. repairing b. repaired c. have repairing d. are repairing
96. Water _____ at 100°C. (boil)
a. boil b. boils c. is boiling d. boiling
97. We _____ to see the movie last night. (go)
a. went b. had gone c. have went d. go
98. We _____ a big nation. (be)
a. are b. is c. were d. am
99. We can't go out as it is _____. (rain)
a. rained b. raining c. rains d. rain

Answers :

- 1.b 2.b 3.b 4.a 5.b 6.c 7.b 8.b 9.d 10.d 11.a 12.b 13.b 14.b 15.b 16.d
17.d 18.c 19.d 20.a 21.d 22.b 23.b 24.d 25.c 26.a 27.a 28.b 29.a 30.a
31.c 32.b 33.b 34.b 35.a 36.a 37.a 38.b 39.c 40.b 41.b 42.c 43.c 44.a
45.c 46.c 47.b 48.c 49.d 50.b 51.c 52.c 53.a 54.b 55.b 56.a 57.b 58.d
59.b 60.b 61.a 62.a 63.c 64.b 65.b 66.a 67.a 68.b 69.b 70.b 71.b 72.a
73.b 74.a 75.a 76.a 77.b 78.a 79.b 80.c 81.b 82.d 83.d 84.b 85.a
86.b 87.c 88.b 89.a 90.b 91.a 92.a 93.c 94.a 95.d 96.b 97.a 98.a 99.b

Practice Test :

1. Vegetables _____ (sell) in the market.
2. We _____ (discuss) English grammar for two hours.
3. When I went to the theatre yesterday, the tickets _____ (sell) out already.
4. If you get a rank, the college management _____ (give) you a prize.
5. Had you worked hard you _____ (pass).
6. Last week they _____ (open) a cyber cafe.
7. The boy _____ (read) the novel since 8 o'clock.
8. The owner of these factories _____ (be) rich.
9. When I went to her, she _____ (play) chess.
10. I _____ (go) to market now.
11. My mother never _____ (drink) tea.
12. Rahul _____ (not) yet _____ (join) any college.
13. Don't disturb me, I _____ (do) my home work.
14. If you go now you _____ (catch) the train.
15. The train _____ (leave) the station before we reached there.
16. The camel _____ (call) the ship of the desert.
17. Now the wind _____ (blow) fiercely.
18. I _____ (receive) a letter yesterday.
19. They _____ (come) if you invite them.
20. Leela as well as Radha _____ (be) here.
21. I _____ (go) to Vizag yesterday.
22. The train _____ (leave) the station, before I reached there.
23. He _____ (drink) milk every day.
24. Raju _____ (do) his homework now.
25. Puja _____ (sing) when I visited her.
26. If you go now, you _____ (catch) the train.
27. English _____ (speak) all over the world.
28. Don't disturb him. He _____ (do) his homework.
29. Ramu _____ (be) an actor.
30. The child _____ (sleep) here since 8 o'clock.
31. Ravi usually _____ (sit) at the back of the class.
32. We shall go as soon as you _____ (be) ready.
33. Don't get off the train, till it _____ (stop).
34. He was _____ (bite) by a mad dog yesterday.
35. Where have you _____ (hide) my pen?
36. English _____ (speak) all over the world.
37. The train _____ (leave) the platform an hour ago.
38. I saw a young woman _____ (try) to commit suicide.
39. My mother always _____ (cook) food.
40. She _____ (write) a letter at present.
41. Science _____ (be) also regarded as a branch of philosophy.
42. How long _____ (wait) here?
43. Last year the cost of living _____ (rise) to a new high point.
44. They are _____ (repair) the old bridge now.

45. If he _____ (work) hard, he would have passed in first division.
46. I _____ (hear) about him before I went to England.
47. I will come there, even if it _____ (rain).
48. He _____ just _____ (go) out.
49. Don't disturb me, I _____ (do) my homework.
50. We _____ (be) a big nation.
52. I _____ (meet) him three times so far.
53. He _____ (read) "Gulliver's travels" two months ago.
54. She _____ (wear) glass since 1984.
56. She _____ (leave) before you go to see her.
57. I _____ (buy) this book last week.
58. If it is hot I _____ (postpone) my trip.
59. If I were you I _____ (buy) a car.
60. If I had not been ill I _____ (meet) your uncle.
62. India _____ (win) freedom in 1947.
63. The Sun _____ (set) in the West.
64. When _____ you _____ (lose) your pen?
65. I _____ (write) a letter. Don't disturb me.
66. When I came in, the cat _____ (sleep) in my chair.
67. The shop _____ (open) at 10 o'clock every morning.
68. Since 1980 women's fashions _____ (change) alot.
69. He _____ (pass) EAMCET Examinations 2 years ago.
70. When I got home my children _____ (play)
71. Yesterday I _____ (write) a letter to my father.
- a) Write b) writes c) wrote d) has written
72. The Sun _____ (shine) during the day.
- a) shine b) shines c) is shining d) was shining
73. He _____ (work) in his factory since 2000.
- a) have been working b) has been working c) worked d) is working
74. He _____ (be) driving his car. When I saw him.
- a) is b) was c) are d) were
75. I _____ (see) the film yesterday.
- a) see b) sees c) saw d) is seeing
76. I _____ (meet) him while I was going to college.
- a) meet b) meets c) met d) is meeting
77. The Sun _____ (rise) in the East.
- a) rise b) rises c) rose d) risen
78. We _____ (love) our country.
- a) love b) loves c) loved d) is loving
79. The book _____ (write) by me last year.
- a) wrote b) writes c) was written d) has written
80. If I _____ (Invite) by her. I can go to her party.
- a) invite b) invited c) invites d) Am invinted
81. If they _____ (play) well. They would win the match.
- a) play b) plays c) played d) playing

82. If I had taken a taxi I _____ (catch) the train. []
 a) would have caught b) caught c) can caught d) None
83. She usually _____ (go) temple. []
 a) go b) goes c) went d) have gone
84. It _____ (rain) now. []
 a) rain b) is raining c) rains d) rained
85. She _____ (take) the milk just now. []
 a) took b) takes c) has taken d) had taken
86. We _____ (go) to movie next week. []
 a) will go b) went c) shall go d) going
87. By next June she _____ (complete) her studies. []
 a) completes b) will complete
 c) will be completing d) will have completed
88. She _____ (bite) by a mad dog yesterday. []
 a) bit b) bite c) is bitten d) was bitten
89. I never _____ (see) Taj Mahal in life. []
 a) Saw b) have seen c) has seen d) see
90. We _____ (be) friends now. []
 a) is b) was c) were d) are
91. They _____ (not play) cricket last week. []
 a) did not play b) did not played c) do not play d) not play
92. _____ you ready to go to movie. []
 a) is b) was c) were d) are
93. The weather _____ (be) hot yesterday. []
 a) is b) was c) were d) are
94. let the books be _____ (sell) in the shop. []
 a) sell b) sold c) sells d) selling
95. R.K.Narayan _____ (write) the Novel Malgudi in 1980. []
 a) write b) writes c) wrote d) have written
96. India _____ (win) the word cup in 2011. []
 a) win b) wins c) won d) had won
97. When I opened the door the cat _____ (rush) quickly. []
 a) rushed b) rush c) had rushed d) None
98. I _____ (not like) sweets. []
 a) don't like b) does not like c) did not like d) not like
99. Articles _____ (use) before common nouns. []
 a) use b) used c) is used d) are used
100. I _____ (study) the books yesterday from 9 A.m. to 12 P.m. []
 a) was studying b) have been studying
 c) has been studying d) had been studying

DIRECT AND INDIRECT SPEECH

There are two ways of reporting

1. He said, "I am going to Bombay"
2. He said that he was going to Bombay.

In sentence (1) the actual words or speech is reported in quotation marks. This is called Direct Speech. In sentence (2) *that he was going to Bombay* are not the actual words but the reporter's version. This is called Indirect speech or the Reported speech.

He said is the main clause with a subject and a verb.

Said is called the reporting verb.

That he was going to Bombay is the subordinate noun clause, object of the verb **said**.

That is the link word/a subordinate conjunction linking the main clause and the subordinate clause.

There are some changes involved in transformation from sentence (1) to sentence (2) which we will discuss below. Note the function of sentence (1) There is a comma after the main clause : He said : quotes begin and the first word should be written with a capital letter; at the end of the sentence there is a full stop because it is an assertive sentence; the quotation is closed after the full stop.

Changes involved in the transformation

Look at this sentence :

He said, "I don't like this film". He said that he didn't like that film.

The changes are :

1. the comma and the quotes are left out.
2. **that** is added.
3. I → he
4. don't → didn't
5. this → that

THESE CHANGES MAY BE GROUPED AS

- (1) Change of Personal Pronouns
- (2) Change of Verb Tenses
- (3) Change of Adverbs
- (4) Other Changes

1. Change of Personal Pronouns

Change of pronouns is the most important change and this is also the most confusing change to the students. It should be observed and learnt carefully.

In every reporting three persons are involved

- (1) the speaker
- (2) the person addressed
- (3) the reporter

1. He said; "I don't like" he is the speaker & is the reporter.
2. He told me, "I don't like" he is the speaker; me is person addressed and the reporter.
3. I told you, "I don't like....." I is the speaker and also the reporter, you the person addressed.

In the sentences above **he, he, I** are the subjects of the main clause; **said, told, told** are the reporting verbs, **me, you** are the objects of the verb.

He said, He told me. I told you, are the **main clauses**.

Observe how the pronouns in the following are changed.

1. I said, "I don't like" (Direct) I said that I didn't like" (Indirect)
I in the Direct speech is; not changed because
I in the main clause (or Reporting clause) is the speaker.
2. The doctor said to her, "I will see you"
The doctor told her that he would see her.
I becomes **he** because the doctor is the speaker or the subject.
you becomes **her** because her is the person addressed or the object of the verb.
From this we can derive the **Rule of pronoun change**.

The first person pronouns in the Direct speech change to conform with the speaker or the subject of the main or reporting verb; the second person pronouns in the direct speech change to conform with the person addressed or the object of the main or reporting verb. Conform with = to agree with the person and number and the case. Take a look at the personal pronouns.

| | Subject Position | Object Position | Possessive Adjectives | Possessive Pronouns |
|----------|------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|---------------------|
| Singular | I | me | my | mine |
| Plural | We | us | our | ours |
| Singular | You | you | your | yours |
| Plural | You | you | your | yours |
| Singular | He, She | him, her | his/her | his/hers |
| | It | it | its | it's |
| Plural | They | them | their | theirs |

Note : Only the first and the second person pronouns undergo change; the third person pronouns remain unchanged.

2. Changes in the Tense of the Verb :

The second important change is the change of the tenses of the verbs in direct speech. Note the tense of the main clause or the reporting clause is never changed.

Look at these examples :

1. I say, "I am ill". (Direct) I say (that) I am ill. (Indirect)
2. He says, "I was ill yesterday". (Direct). He says (that) he was ill yesterday. (Indirect)
3. He says, "I will come tomorrow" (Direct). He says (that) he will come tomorrow. (Indirect)

In the above sentences the tense of verbs is not changed.

In (1) am am (2) was was (3) will come will come

We may draw the rule of tense change : When the reporting verb or the verb in the main clause is in present tense, the tense of the verbs in Direct speech remain unchanged. This rule applies also when the reporting verb or the verb in the main clause is Future tense.

Look at the examples

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. He said "I don't like" | He said (that) he didn't like. |
| 2. He said, "I have never seen" | He said that he had never seen.... |
| 3. He said, "I will become ..." | He said that he would become |
| 4. He said, "I don't see" | He said that he didn't see. |

You will notice in the above, the tenses have been changed into past/past perfect/ past continuous etc., to be consistent with the reporting verb or the verb in the main clause which is in past tense. This is called **sequence of tenses** i.e., If the verb in the main clause is in the past tense, the verbs in all the following subordinate clauses should be in the past tense.

There is one exception to this rule.

1. The Teacher said that there is only one God.
2. The Teacher said that honesty is the best policy.

In these sentences the object clauses in indirect speech express universal, timeless truths; true for all time.

Note : These changes from direct to indirect speech

- | | |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. Present simple / continuous | Past simple/Continuous |
| 2. Present perfect | Past Perfect |
| 3. Past simple | Past Perfect |
| 4. Future (will) | Conditional (would) |
| 5. Future perfect | Conditional Perfect (would have) |
| 6. Conditional (would) | Conditional Perfect (would have) |

3. Changes in Demonstrative Pronouns and Adverbs :

The third important change is the change of adverbs of time, of place, and a few other expressions indicating nearness to indicate distance.

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|----------|----------------------------------|
| This | That | Today | that day (tonight / that night) |
| These | Those | tomorrow | the following day / the next day |

| | | | |
|------|----------------|------------|-------------------|
| now | Then | yesterday | the previous day |
| now | Then | last night | the night before |
| here | There | ago | before |
| come | go (sometimes) | last week | the previous week |

4. Other Changes :

(a) Addition of Conjunctions

| No. | Type of sentence in the D.S. Part | Conjunction to be used |
|-----|---|--|
| 1. | Declarative : | that |
| 2. | Interrogative : (a) Wh-Question (b) None-wh Question | Wh-word(what/when/which/who/why etc) If/whether |
| 3. | Imperative : a) Negative b) Positive | Not to to |
| 4. | Exclamatory : | that |

(b) An appropriate reporting verb has to be used.

| No. | Type of sentence in the D.S. Part | Reporting Verb | Reported Verb |
|-----|-----------------------------------|---------------------------|--|
| 1. | Declarative | Said, said to, told | Said, told |
| 2. | Interrogative | | Asked, enquired, demanded, wondered, wanted to know |
| 3. | Imperative | | Asked, ordered, told, commanded, begged, urged |
| 4. | Exclamatory | | Exclaimed and said, exclaimed and told |

Four kinds of Sentences

We know there are four kinds of sentences in English

1. Assertive sentence - Declarative or statement
2. Interrogative - Questions
3. Imperative - Orders and requests
4. Exclamatory sentence

1. **Assertive Sentence** : An assertive sentence is a subject + verb + object order sentence, ending with a full stop. When it is; changed from Direct into Indirect speech these points should be remembered :

- (1) suitable reporting verb (say, tell, explain, suggest, inform)
- (2) that conjunction,
- (3) changes in personal pronouns, (4) changes in tenses, (5) changes in demonstratives and adverbs.

Look at these examples :

1. He said, "I can come next week"
He said (or told someone) that he could come the next week.
2. John said, "She has finished now".
John said, (or told someone) that she had finished then.
3. She said, "I lost my temper yesterday morning"
She said that she had lost her temper the previous day morning.
4. Mary said, "I am sorry I'm late".
Mary said that she was sorry she was late.
5. Tom said, "I think she's married".
Tom said that he thought she was married.

2. Interrogative Sentences : Direct questions have to be changed into indirect questions i.e., the word order of question

Verb + subject + verb + object ? Is changed to

Subject + verb + verb + object Statement. The question mark at the end is replaced by a full stop. We have two types of questions in English.

- (i) Those that are introduced with a Wh-word or question word (what, who, which, when, where, why, how)
- (ii) And those that begin with an auxiliary verb called inverted questions yes or no questions.
 1. He said, "where is the post office?" (wh-question)
 2. He said, "Do you know me?" (yes/no question)

Wh-questions are changed into indirect speech

1. Appropriate reporting verb (ask, enquire, want to know)
2. Wh-word as the conjunction.
3. Verb+subject order changed to subject+verb order.
4. Appropriate pronoun, tense, adverb, demonstrative changes.
5. Sentence and question mark changed to full stop.

Look at the examples

1. He said to the boy, "what are you doing here?"
He asked the boy what he was doing there.
2. The stranger said to me, "where do you live?"
The stranger asked me where I lived.
3. He said to them, "Why do you listen to such a man?"
He asked them why they listened to such a man.

Inverted questions are changed into indirect questions by using if/whether as conjunction and in all other respects as the wh-questions.

Look at these examples

1. He said to them, "will you listen to such a man?"
He asked them whether they would listen to such a man.
2. Ram said to Pal, "Do you agree to this proposal?"
Ram asked Pal whether he agreed to that proposal.
(Do + agree (in past) agreed)
3. He said to the station master, "Is the train late?"
He asked the station master whether the train was late.

3. **Imperative Sentence** : These sentences express an order, request, advice, warning, negative orders etc. The reporting verb should be **told, asked, ordered, requested, advised** etc., the verb in the Direct Speech is changed to a **to-infinitive** or **not to + infinitive** in case of negative command.

Look at these examples

1. He said to the servant, "Get out of the room".
He ordered (or told) the servant to get out of the room.
2. He said to the boys, "Be quiet and listen to my words."
He told the boys to be quiet and listen to his words.
3. "Please take me to the officer," said the visitor.
The visitor asked (or requested) them to take him to the officer.
4. He said to the girl, "Don't try to be funny!"
He warned the girl not to try to be funny.
5. He said to Mary, "Don't sit on my hat."
He told Mary not to sit on his hat.

4. **Exclamatory Sentences and Wishes** : Exclamations are generally not reported, but when reported, their spirit is reflected in a round about manner as a statement or an indirect question.

Examples :

1. "What a lovely garden (this is)!" he said.
He exclaimed (or remarked) what a lovely garden it was (or) that it was really a lovely garden.
2. "Hello! Where are you going?" he cried.
He greeted me and asked where I was going.
3. "Oh dear! I have torn my frock". She screamed.
She exclaimed sadly that she had torn her frock.
She sighed and said that she had torn her frock.
4. He said, "Alas! I am ruined".
He exclaimed sadly that he was ruined.
5. The poor woman said, "Save me! Oh, Save me!"
The poor woman desperately begged them to save her.

TABLE OF DIRECT AND INDIRECT SPEECH

Changes from Direct Speech into Indirect Speech (with a Past Reporting Verb)

Types of sentences : Statements (S+V)

| Change 1 Reporting Verb | Change 2 Conjunction in place of the comma | Change 3 Pronouns | Change 4 Tenses | Change 5 Words of Place and Time | Examples |
|---|--|--|--|---|---|
| Said <input type="checkbox"/> said Said to <input type="checkbox"/> told (also) agreed, informed, replied, answered, remarked, added, etc. | That (sometimes) omitted | All Persons <input type="checkbox"/> as per the speaker All II Persons <input type="checkbox"/> as per the hearer All III Persons no change | Present <input type="checkbox"/> Past Past <input type="checkbox"/> Past Perfect Except when a universal truth or unchanged situation or a habitual fact is expressed in the quotations | Words of nearness <input type="checkbox"/> words of distance which are given below here <input type="checkbox"/> there this <input type="checkbox"/> that these <input type="checkbox"/> those now <input type="checkbox"/> then today <input type="checkbox"/> that day tomorrow <input type="checkbox"/> the next day yesterday <input type="checkbox"/> the day before or the previous day ago <input type="checkbox"/> before | 1. He said to me "You are lucky." He told me, that I was lucky. He said, "My father went to Chennai" He said (that) his father had gone to Chennai. Exceptions : 1. He said, "The sun rises in the east". He said that the sun rises in the east. 2. He said, "Kutub Minar is in Delhi." He said that Kutub Minar is in Delhi. 3. He said, "I always go to bed early". He said that he always goes to bed early. |

Questions : Yes/No Type (H.V. + S....?) + Who Questions (Q.Word + HV. + SO'?)

| said to asked (also) questioned wanted to know enquired etc. | (a) If whether (b) The same question word | as in Statements | as in Statements Note: Word order changes from V+SO into S+VO | as in Statements Note: At the end of the sentence the Question mark is changed into the | 1. He said to me, "Do you want coffee?" He asked me if I wanted coffee. 2. He said to me, "Where did you go?" He asked me where I had gone. |
|---|---|------------------|---|---|--|
|---|---|------------------|---|---|--|

Imperative Commands and Requests {(S) + MV-Obj.}

| Said to asked (also) told, instructed, begged, requested, advised | to (in affirmatives), not to (in Negatives) | as in Statements | No change at all (after 'to' only the root verb is used) | as in Statements | 1. He said to his son, "Go out and play". He told his son to go out and play. 2. He said, "Don't disturb me". He said, "Don't disturb me". He instructed him not to disturb him. |
|--|--|------------------|---|------------------|---|
|--|--|------------------|---|------------------|---|

Exclamations {Phrases and Sentences How/What+Adj. (N+S+VO...!)}

| Said to asked (also) questioned wanted to know enquired etc. | as in Statements | as in Statements | as in Statements | as in Statements | 1. He said "What a terrible storm it is!" He exclaimed that it was a terrible storm. 2. He said to her, "How foolish of you!" He exclaimed that she was very foolish. |
|---|------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|--|
|---|------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|--|

Assignment - 1

Report the following in Indirect Speech :

1. He Said, "I have passed the examination".
2. He said to me, "I don't believe you".
3. I said to my friend, "I am glad to be here this evening".
4. The advertisement said, "candidates for the job of the secretary must speak English fluently".
5. David said, "By next Christmas I shall have passed this examination, I hope".
6. He said, "he is very greedy. If he eats all that cheese he'll have bad dreams tonight".
7. Shanthi said "Auntie, if I were really ill I know you would nurse me splendidly".
8. "That is my house," said he, "and if I do not prove it in a few minutes I will give up my claims".
9. "I will avenge your wrongs," he said, "I will not enter Athens untill I have punished the king who had so cruelly treated you".
10. Drona said to his unknown pupil, "you have given me your right thumb. Your name will be remembered as long as the Sun and the Stars shine in the Sky".

Answers :

1. He said that he had passed the examination.
2. He told me that he didn't believe me.
3. I told my friend that he was glad to be there that evening.
4. The advertisement said that the candidates for the job of the secretary had to speak English fluently.
5. David said that he hoped, by next Christmas he should have passed that examination.
6. He said that he was very greedy and if he ate all that cheese he would have bad dreams that night.
7. Shanti told her auntie that if she were really ill she knew she (auntie) would nurse her splendidly.
8. He said that it was his house and if he did not prove it in a few minutes he would give up his claims.
9. He cried that he would avenge his wrongs and added he would not enter Athens untill he had punished the king who had so cruelly treated him.
10. Drona told his unknown pupil that he (the pupil) had given him his right thumb, and added that is (the pupil) never would be remembered as long as the Sun and the Stars shine in the sky.

Assignment - 2

Turn the following into Indirect Speech :

1. He said to her, "What is your name?"
2. He said to his son, "Where are you going now?"
3. She said to him, "Are you coming home with me?"
4. He said, "Frieda, why don't you get married?"
5. The mother said, "Did you ever see such a naughty, disobedient girl?"

6. Aladdin said to the magician, "What have I done to deserve so severe a blow?"
7. "Dear bird, "She said Stroking its feathers" have you come to comfort me in my sorrow?"
8. She said, "Sister, shall I get an Ice-cream for you?"
9. The officer said, "Why are you still waiting here young man?"
10. When did the Brahmin approach, the first thief said.
"Why do you carry a dog in your back? Are you not ashamed?"

Answers :

1. He asked her what her name was.
2. He asked his son where he was going then.
3. She asked him whether he was coming home with her.
4. He asked his friend. Why he didn't get married.
5. The mother asked whether he had even seen such a naughty disobedient girl.
6. Aladdin asked the magician what he (Aladdin) had done to deserve so severe a blow.
7. She asked the bird, stroking its features, whether it (the bird) had come to comfort her in her sorrow.
8. She asked her sister whether she should get an ice-cream for her (sister).
9. The officer asked the young man why he was still waiting there.
10. When the Brahmin approached, the first thief asked why he carried a dog on his back, and added if he was not ashamed.

Assignment - 3**Change into Indirect Speech :**

1. "Sit down, boys", said the teacher.
2. I said to him, "Come again tomorrow".
3. "Please help me from starvation," said the beggar.
4. "Bring me a drink of milk," said the Swami to the villagers.
5. "Run away, children," said the mother.
6. "Go to the market. Bring me some vegetables and a dozen plantains," ordered his master.
7. The captain said, "soldiers, don't shoot until I give you the signal".
8. The Forest Minister said to the people, "Grow more trees and get better life".
9. Gandhi said, "My fellow men, follow the principle of Ahimsa and make the British quit India".
10. "Neither a borrower nor a lender be," said Polonius to his young son.

Answers :

1. The teacher asked the boys to sit down.
2. I told him to come again the day after.
3. The beggar requested to help him from starvation.
4. The Swami asked the villagers to bring him a drink of milk.
5. The mother told the Children to run away.
6. The master told(him) to go to market and bring him some vegetables, and a dozen plantains.

7. The captain ordered the soldiers not to shoot until he gave them the signal.
8. The Forest Minister advised the people to grow more trees and get better life.
9. Gandhi told his fellow men to follow the principle of Ahimsa and make the British quit India.
10. Polonius told his young son to be neither a borrower nor a lender.

Assignment - 4

Change into Indirect Speech :

1. He said, "Alas! I am undone"
2. He said, "How pretty she is!"
3. He said, "What a pity you did not come!"
4. The teacher said, "What a lazy boy you are!"
5. He said, "What an interesting story it is!"
6. "What a surprise to see you here!" he said.
7. "O! for a glass of wine!" said Omar Khayyam.
8. "Thank God!" the dying mother said, "All my children are safe in spite of the terrible accident".
9. "Oh, god! I have lost my necklace," said the young lady.
10. "What a terrible nuisance this T.V. is!" said the father.

Answers :

1. He exclaimed with grief that he was undone.
2. He remarked how pretty she was.
3. He observed that it was a pity he had not come.
4. The teacher exclaimed that he was indeed a lazy boy.
5. He remarked that it was a very interesting story.
6. He exclaimed that it was really a surprise to see him there.
7. Omar Khayyam wished longingly for a glass of wine.
8. The dying mother thanked God with a sign of relief and said that all her children were safe in spite of the terrible accident.
9. The young lady exclaimed bitterly that she had lost her necklace.
10. The father exclaimed in disgust that T.V. was indeed a terrible nuisance.

Assignment - 5

Change into Indirect Speech :

1. The teacher says "The Monkey is a clever animal".
2. The Headmaster will say "The school cricket team did not play well".
3. The teacher said "Ravi may stand first".
4. The servant said "It is raining hard outside".
5. My friend said "The guests have already arrived".
6. The driver said "The railway bridge has collapsed".
7. The doctor said "The patient recovered very soon".
8. The poetess said "I have written a new poem".

9. I said to him "Will you help me?"
10. She said to Venu "What are you writing?"
11. I said to Neetish "Do you like sweets?"
12. The beggar said to the lady "Have pity on me."
13. The Lecturer said to the students "Listen to me carefully"
14. My father said to me "Do not lose courage in any situation".
15. The captain said to the soldiers "Face the enemy bravely".

Answers :

1. The teacher says that the monkey is a clever animal.
2. The Headmaster will say that the school cricket team had not played well.
3. The teacher said that Ravi might stand first.
4. The servant said that it was raining hard outside.
5. My friend said that the guests had already arrived.
6. The driver said that the railway bridge had collapsed.
7. The doctor said that the patient had recovered very soon.
8. The poetess said that he had written a new poem.
9. I asked him whether he will help me.
10. She questioned Venu what he was writing.
11. I enquired Neetish whether he liked sweets.
12. The beggar begged the lady to have pity on him.
13. The Lecturer ordered the students to listen to him carefully.
14. My father advised me not to lose courage in any situation.
15. The captain commanded the soldiers to face the enemy bravely.

LET US SUM UP

In this unit, we have looked at adjectives and adverbs, formation of comparatives, inter change of degrees, use and form of active and passive voice and finally changing direct speech into indirect speech and the specific methods of changing assertive, interrogative, imperative and exclamatory sentences from direct to indirect speech.

EXERCISES

Choose the correct indirect speech of the following sentences :

1. "Do you want to come with me?" she said to him.
 1. She told him that she wanted to come with him.
 2. She asked him whether he wanted to come with her.
 3. She asked him whether she wanted to come with him.
 4. She asked him whether he wants come with her.
2. "I have seen this film twice", he said.
 1. He said that he had seen that film twice.
 2. He told that he has been seen that film twice.
 3. He said that he has seen that film twice.
 4. He said that he had seen this film twice.
3. "Have you done your home work?" said the teacher to the student.
 1. The teacher told the student that he had done his home work.
 2. The teacher asked the student if he has done this home work.
 3. The teacher asked the student whether he had done his home work.
 4. The teacher said to the student whether he had done his home work.
4. Neeraja said, "I will be here within a short time"
 1. Neeraja told that she would be there within a short time.
 2. Neeraja said that she will be there within a short time.
 3. Neeraja said that she would be there within a short time.
 4. Neeraja said that he would be there within a short time.
5. My grand father said, "The earth moves round the sun"
 1. My grand father said that the earth moves round the sun.
 2. My grand father said that the earth moved round the sun.
 3. My grand father asked if the earth moves round the sun.
 4. My grand father told that the earth moves round the sun.
6. "I wish I did not have to take the examinations" said mohan.
 1. Mohan said that he wished he did not have to take examinations
 2. Mohan wished that he hadn't had to take examinations
 3. Mohan wished that he did not have to take examinations.
 4. Mohan said that he wished he had not have to take examinations.
7. "How much chocolate do you eat every day?" the dentist asked the little boy.
 1. The dentist asked the little boy whether how much chocolate he ate everyday.
 2. The dentist asked the little boy how much chocolate he eats everyday.
 3. The dentist asked the little boy how much chocolate he had eaten everyday.
 4. The dentist asked the little boy how much chocolate he ate everyday.
8. "We shall be the playing cricket tomorrow evening" the children said.
 1. The children said that they would be playing cricket tomorrow evening.
 2. The children told that they should be playing cricket the next day evening.
 3. The children told we shall be playing cricket the next day evening.
 4. The children said that they would be playing cricket the next day evening.

6. "Will you accompany me?" he said to me.

1. He asked if I would accompany him.
2. He asked me whether I will accompany him.
3. He asked if he accompany me.
4. He asked me if he would accompany me.

10. He said to me, "Good morning"

1. He wished that was good morning.
2. He wished if it was good morning.
3. He wished me that morning was good.
4. He wished me good morning.

11. "What are you doing" Seeta said.

1. Seeta asked what you are doing.
2. Seeta asked what I was doing.
3. Seeta asked me what she was doing.
4. Seeta asked me what I am doing.

12. She said to me, "Is not your name Ahmed?"

1. She told me that my name was not Ahmed.
2. She asked me whether her name was Ahmed.
3. She enquired me whether my name was not Ahmed.
4. She asked me if your name was not Ahmed.

13. She said to me, "Congratulations"

1. She congratulated me.
2. She told me to congratulate.
3. She told me to congratulations.
4. She congratulate me.

14. "Trust in God and do the right", said the preacher.

1. The preacher said that trust in God and do the right.
2. The preacher asked trust in God and do the right.
3. The preacher asked to trust in God and did the right.
4. The preacher preached to trust in God and do the right.

15. "Don't waste your time but work hard", said the teacher.

1. The teacher advised not to waste our time but work hard.
2. The teacher asked to waste your time but work hard.
3. The teacher asked to not to waste our time but work hard.
4. The teacher asked don't waste our time but work hard.

16. I asked her, "Is your father in?"

1. I told her that her father was in.
2. I asked her if her father was in.
3. I asked her if her father is in.
4. I asked her father in.

17. She said to me, "I will do it now".
 1. She told me that she will do it then
 2. She told me that she would to it now
 3. She told me that she would do it then
 4. She told me that she is doing it then
18. She said to me, "I wrote two letters to you."
 1. She told me that she wrote two letters to me.
 2. She told me that she writes two letters to me.
 3. She told me that she had written two letters to me
 4. She told me that she has written two letters to me
19. The professor said, "The earth moves round the sun".
 1. The professor said that the earth moved around the sun.
 2. The professor said that earth will move round the sun.
 3. The professor said that the earth moves round the sun.
 4. The professor said that the earth is moving round the sun.
20. I told the girl, "Don't play with fire".
 1. I told the girl to play not with fire
 2. I asked girl not to play not with fire
 3. I warned the girl not to play with fire
 4. I requested the girl to not play with fire.

Choose the correct direct speech of the following sentences :

21. She asked her son where he was going.
 1. "Where you are going", she said to her son
 2. "Where were you going", she said to her son
 3. "Where are you going"? she said to her son
 4. "Where are you going?" her son said to her.
22. Neena asked John to come and see what she has found.
 1. Necna said, "John, come and see what I have found"
 2. Neena said to John, "Come and see what I have found"
 3. Neena said to John, "You must come and see what I have found"
 4. John said to Neena, "Come and see what I have found".
23. She asked whether English is easy to learn.
 1. She said, "English is easy to learn".
 2. She said, "Is English is easy to learn?"
 3. She said, "Is English easy to learn?"
 4. She said to him, "English is easy to learn".
24. The teacher advised not to sleep late
 1. "Sleep late", the teacher said
 2. "Sleep not late", the teacher said
 3. "You don't sleep late", said the teacher
 4. "Don't sleep late", said the teacher.

25. She thanked him
 1. She said to him, "Thank you"
 2. She asked him, "Thank you"
 3. She asked to her, "Thank you"
 4. She said to her, "Thank you"
26. The visitor requested to take him to the officer
 1. "Take him to the officer", said the visitor
 2. "Please take me to the officer", said the visitor
 3. "Take me to the officer" said the visitor
 4. The visitor shouted "Take me to the officer".
27. The boy told him that they were going for a country walk.
 1. "They are going for a country walk"
 2. "We were going for a country walk"
 3. The boy said to me, "We are going for a country walk"
 4. The boy said to him, "We are going for a country walk"
28. He suggested that they should wait for the award.
 1. He said, "Let us wait for the award"
 2. He said, "They are waiting for the award"
 3. He said, "I will wait for the award"
 4. He said, "We waited for the award".
29. I asked a policeman whether I would have to pay, if I had parked my car there
 1. I asked a policeman, "Do I have to pay, if I park my car there?"
 2. I said to a police man, "Will I have to pay, if I parked my car here?"
 3. I said to a police man, "Will you have to pay I parked my car here?"
 4. I asked a policeman, "Would I have to pay it he parked by car there?"
30. I prayed that his mother might soon recover.
 1. I told, "Your mother may soon recover".
 2. I said, "May your mother soon recover".
 3. I said, "You mother might soon recover"
 4. I said, "Might your mother soon recover".
31. She exclaimed sorrowfully that her husband was dead.
 1. She said, "Alas! my husband is dead".
 2. She cried, "Alas! her husband was dead".
 3. She wept, "Alas! my husband was dead".
 4. She shouted, "Alas! my husband has been dead".
32. He asked me what I was doing.
 1. He told me, "What you are doing?"
 2. He said to me, "What are you doing?"
 3. He asked me, "What I am doing?"
 4. He asked, "What I am doing?"
33. He urged them to be quiet and listen to his words.
 1. He said, "Be quiet and listen to my words."
 2. He told, "You listen to my words quietly".
 3. He insisted, "Be quiet and listen to my words."
 4. He urged, "Be quiet and listen to my words".

34. He told his friend to let him go home.
 1. He said, "You go home now"
 2. He said to his friend, "Let me go home now"
 3. He told, "You can go home now".
 4. He told his friend, "Go home".
35. I asked Vani if she would lend me a pencil.
 1. I said to Vani, "Would you lend me a pencil"
 2. I told to Vani, "Can you lend me a pencil"
 3. I said to Vani, "Will you lend me a pencil"
 4. I told Vani, "Could you lend me a pencil".
36. She says she likes going to the seaside.
 1. She said, "I am liking to go to seaside"
 2. She said, "I like to go the seaside".
 3. She says, "I like going to the seaside"
 4. She says, "I liked going to the seaside".
37. My mother told me that we could go for a picnic if it was fine.
 1. My mother informed me, "You may go for a picnic if it is fine.
 2. My mother has said to me, "You have to go for a picnic if it is fine.
 3. My mother told me, "You could go for a picnic if it was fine".
 4. My mother said to me, "You can go for a picnic if it is fine".
38. The captain applauded the goalkeeper.
 1. The captain said, "Bravo! Well done"
 2. The captain told, "Bravo! Done well"
 3. The captain shouted, "Bravo! Done well"
 4. The captain said to the goalkeeper, "Bravo! Well done"
39. He asked me when I would return.
 1. He told me, "When shall you return?"
 2. He said to me, "When will you return?"
 3. He stated, "When would you return?"
 4. He said, "When should you return?"
40. He asked me why I did not look for a job?
 1. He told me, "Why you do not look for a job?"
 2. He asked me, "Why don't you look for a job?"
 3. He said to me, "Why do you not look for a job?"
 4. He said to me, "Why are you not looking for a job?"

ANSWERS:

- 1.2 2.4 3.3 4.3 5.1 6.4 7.4 8.4 9.1 10.4 11.2 12.3 13.1 14.4 15.1 16.2 17.3
18.3 19.3 20.3 21.3 22.1 23.3 24.4 25.1 26.2 27.4 28.1 29.2 30.2 31.1 32.2
33.1 34.2 35.3 36.3 37.4 38.4 39.2 40.2

Exercises

1. She said that she was busy.
 - a. She says, "I am busy."
 - b. She said, "You are busy".
 - c. She said, "I am busy".
 - d. She said, "She is busy".
2. Madhavi said that the sun sets in the west.
 - a. Madhavi says, "The sun was set in the west".
 - b. Madhavi said, "The sun sets in the west."
 - c. Madhavi says, "The sun set in the west".
 - d. Madhavi says, "The sun sets in the west".
3. Ravi said that he would see me the next day.
 - a. Ravi said, "you will see me tomorrow".
 - b. Ravi said, "I will see you tomorrow".
 - c. Ravi said, "I saw you yesterday".
 - d. Ravi said, "I saw you tomorrow".
4. Latha said that she was working hard.
 - a. Latha said, "I was working hard".
 - b. Latha says, "I am working hard".
 - c. Latha said, "I am working hard".
 - d. Latha said, "I worked hard".
5. Latha said that I had written a novel.
 - a. Latha said, "I have written a novel".
 - b. Latha said, "You have written a novel".
 - c. Latha said, "He has written a novel."
 - d. Latha said, "She has written a novel."
6. Pavani asked where I was living.
 - a. Pavani said, "Where am I living?"
 - b. Pavani said, "Where are you living?"
 - c. Pavani said, "Where do you live?"
 - d. Pavani said, "Where did you live?"
7. Mohan asked if he taught English.
 - a. Mohan said, "Does he teach English?"
 - b. Mohan said, "Do you teach English?"
 - c. Mohan said, "Does she teach English?"
 - d. Mohan said, "Am I teaching English?"
8. Srinu asked who my father was.
 - a. Srinu asked, "Who is my father?"
 - b. Srinu asked, "Who is your father?"
 - c. Srinu asked, "Who my father is?"
 - d. Srinu asked, "Who my father was?"

9. Suresh asked which sweets I liked.
 - a. Suresh said, "Which sweets you like?"
 - b. Suresh says, "Which sweets are you liked?"
 - c. Suresh says, "Which sweets do I like?"
 - d. Suresh says, "Which sweets do you like?"
10. Mohini said that I was a good girl.
 - a. Mohini said, "You are a good girl".
 - b. Mohini said, "I am a good girl".
 - c. Mohini said, "I was a good girl".
 - d. Mohini said, "She is a good girl".

Answers with Explanations

1. c - I am - she was గా మారింది.
2. b - సత్య సత్యము. tense మారదు.
3. b - Rv-V₂ లో ఉన్నందున will-would గా మారును.
4. c - I am - she was గా మారింది.
5. b - Pre.perfect -past perfect గా మారును.
6. b - where are you -where I was గా మారును.
7. a - II type question. (Y/N)
8. b - Who.....was చివరికి వస్తుంది.
9. d - Simple present becomes simple past.
10. a - You..... I గా మారింది.

EXERCISE

1. Raju said, "I am a doctor".
 - a. Raju said that he was a doctor.
 - b. Raju said that he is a doctor.
 - c. Raju said that I am a doctor.
 - d. Raju said that I was a doctor.
2. He said, "What is your name?"
 - a. He asked what is your name.
 - b. He wanted to know what my name was.
 - c. He asked what is my name.
 - d. He asked what my name is.
3. He said to me, "My mother is ill"
 - a. He said that his mother is ill.
 - b. He told me my mother was ill.
 - c. He told me that his mother was ill.
 - d. He told me that my mother was ill.

4. Mohan said, "I lost my watch".
 - a. Mohan said that he lost my watch.
 - b. Mohan said that he lost his watch.
 - c. Mohan said that I lost my watch.
 - d. Mohan said that he had lost his watch.
5. Prakash said, "I am an active student".
 - a. Prakash said that he was an active student.
 - b. Prakash said that I was an active student.
 - c. Prakash said that he is an active student.
 - d. Prakash said that is he an active student.
6. Satyam said, "Latha is angry with me".
 - a. Satyam said that Latha is angry with me.
 - b. Satyam said that Latha was angry with me.
 - c. Satyam said that Latha is angry with me.
 - d. Satyam said that Latha was angry with me.
7. She says, "Tea is ready".
 - a. She says that tea is ready.
 - b. She says that tea was ready.
 - c. She said that tea was ready.
 - d. She said that tea is ready.
8. He said, "My mother is unwell".
 - a. He said that his mother is unwell.
 - b. He said that his mother was unwell.
 - c. He says that his mother is unwell.
 - d. He told that his unwell.
9. "Did you meet him last week?" The teacher asked.
 - a. The teacher asked if I had met him the previous week.
 - b. The teacher asked if I met him the previous week.
 - c. The teacher asked whether I met him the previous week.
 - d. The teacher asked if I meet him the previous week.
10. She said, "Take rest for a while".
 - a. She suggested to take rest for a while.
 - b. She suggested not to take rest for a while.
 - c. She advised to took rest for a while.
 - d. She said to take rest for a while.
11. "Will you please take the class?" The student asked.
 - a. The student asked to take the class.
 - b. The student asked to took the class.
 - c. The student asked to please take the class.
 - d. The student requested to take the class.

12. "Why have you gone to London?" She asked.

- She asked why I went to London.
- She asked why I have gone to London.
- She enquired why had I gone to London.
- She wanted to know why I had gone to London.

Answers with explanation

1. a - simple present becomes simple past.
2. b - Interrogative sentence
3. c - Pronoun changes నమనించాలి.
4. d - simple past - past perfect గా మారును.
5. a - simple present-- simple past లోనికి మార్చాలి.
6. b - simple present
7. a - Rv-present tense లో ఉంది. Tense మారదు.
8. b - simple present లో ఉంది. simple past లోనికి మార్చాలి.
9. a - past tense - past perfect గా (had + v₁)
10. a - suggestion - connective- 'to'
11. d - request.
12. d - Interrogative sentence.

Practice:-

1. "You should buy this book", said the teacher.
2. "Can you give me a lift to the college?" said Ashok.
3. "I will talk to the student immediately" The principal said.
4. "Close the door please" said Pushpa.
5. "You should have your own key to the room" said the wardens.
6. "You are lazy" the father said to his son.
7. "Don't cross the line" the coach said to the boys.
8. "I am not interested in science" the girl said.
9. "Are you going to college today?" Ajay asked his friend.
10. "Who won the match?" the boy said to his friend.
11. He asked her, "will you write to me tomorrow?"
12. She said to John, "I have been waiting for you"
13. "I don't believe you" Raghu said to Ramu.
14. "I broke the glass", said Ajitha.
15. "Clean the black board", the teacher said to me.
16. "Why are you standing there?", I said to her.
17. "Can you drive a car?", said Murthy to Rambabu.
18. "Why are you late?", asked the manager.
19. She said, "I am going home"
20. The farmer said, "I am going to home".
21. The station master says, "The train will be late"
22. Ms.Sujatha said to Mr.Rao, "I shall meet you tomorrow".
23. The teacher said to me, "What is your name?"
24. He said to me, "Will you come with me?"
25. She said "How intelligent you are!"
26. He said, "Please close the window"
27. Ramarao said to me, "I live in Guduru"
28. Tilak said, "Freedom is my birth right"
29. Devaki said to Krishna, "You trouble me alot with your mischievous deeds"
30. Lalitha's father said, "My daughter is not staying during these examination days"
31. Father said to me, "Don't waste your time"
32. Mother said to her daughter, "Drink the milk"
33. "You buy this book" said the teacher.
34. "Can you give me a pen?" said Ashok.
35. "I will take to you" said my mother.
36. "Close your shop" said the police man.
37. "You will go to the doctor" my friend said tome.
38. "You are working hard" the father said to his son.
39. "I am not eating any thing" said the girl.
40. "Don't come late again" the teacher said to the boys.
41. "Are you coming to my house?" Ajay asked my friend.
42. "Who has won the match?" the young boy said to his friend.
43. "Thank you very much" They said.
44. She said "Ah what a injustice it is!"

45. The people said, "What an incredible creature Kingkong is"
46. They said to me, "Congratulations on your grand success"
47. He said, "How nice she sings"
48. They said to me, "Happy Christmas"
49. The Queen said, "What an exciting moment it is!"
50. He said, "What a pity you did not come"
51. She said, "What a shame on you"
52. He said, "How cold it was last night"
53. They said, "What an excellent idea it is"
54. They said, "Hurrah we have won the match"
55. The teacher said, "Bravo! you have all done very well in the examinations"
56. She said, "Oh, God I have forgotten to bring my hallticket"
57. They said, "Alas we have lost our good old friend"
58. She said, "What a stupid you are to reject that officer!"
59. Ravi said that he had won the match.
60. Kiran told me that my father had invited him.
61. Srilu asked me whether I loved her.
62. Mahesh enquired me why I was asking such silly questions.
63. She requested me to give her Hundred rupees.
64. She scolded that I was rogue.
65. They said, "How beautiful the Taj Mahal is!"
66. She said, "How wonderful these flowers are!"
67. He said, "What a beautiful garden it is!"
68. He said to us, "Let us take him to the hospital"
69. He said to me, "Let him play Music"
70. He said, "Have a cup of coffee"
71. I say to her, "I don't like you"
 - 1) I tell her that I don't like her.
 - 2) I tell her that I did not like her.
 - 3) I told her that I did not like her.
 - 4) I asked her that don't like her.
72. Lord Krishna says, "I work incessantly because I love the world"
 - 1) Lord Krishna said that he worked incessantly because he loved the world.
 - 2) Lord Krishna says that he works incessantly because he loves the world.
 - 3) Lord Krishna said that he had been working incessantly because he was loving the world.
 - 4) Lord Krishna said that he had been working incessantly because he had loved the world.
73. She says, "I like flowers"
 - 1) She says that she likes flowers.
 - 2) She says that she like flowers.
 - 3) She says that she liked flowers.
 - 4) She said that she likes flowers.

74. I say, "I am sincere"

- 1) I say that I were sincere.
- 2) I say that I was sincere.
- 3) I say that I am sincere.
- 4) I say that I will be sincere.

75. "Search the house" said the police officer.

- 1) The police officer said that searching the house.
- 2) The police officer asked to search the house.
- 3) The police officer said that to searching the house.
- 4) Police officer searched the house.

76. She said, "My books are here"

- 1) She said that her books would be here.
- 2) She said that her books will be there.
- 3) She said that her books are there.
- 4) She said that her books were there.

77. She said, "I was in trouble"

- 1) She said that she is in trouble.
- 2) She said that she had been in trouble.
- 3) She said that she would be in trouble.
- 1) She said that she could be in trouble.

78. "Don't hurry", I said

- 1) I asked to hurry.
- 2) I told to hurry.
- 3) I ordered not to hurry.
- 4) I advised not to hurry.

79. "Is there any parcel for me?" He said.

- 1) He asked If there was any parcel for him.
- 2) He asked If there is any parcel for him.
- 3) He asked If there had been any parcel for him.
- 4) He asked If there would be any parcel for him.

80. "What games do you play" Ravi asked me

- 1) Ravi asked me what games did I play
- 2) Ravi asked me what games I did play
- 3) Ravi asked me what games I played
- 4) Ravi asked me what games I could play.

81. "Can our parents visit the school?" He asked.

- 1) He asked If their parents visiting the school.
- 2) He asked If their parents could visit the school.
- 3) He asked If their parents visited the school.
- 4) He asked If their parents would visit the school.

82. "Did you play for your school team?" She asked.

- 1) She asked if he to play for his school team.
- 2) She asked if he will play for his school team.
- 3) She asked if he play for his school team.
- 4) She asked if he had played for his school team.

83. "Would you like to join in our troop?" said he to them.

- 1) He asked them whether they had willing to join our troop.
- 2) He asked them whether they had like to join our troop.
- 3) He asked them whether they had liked to join our troop.
- 4) He asked them whether they would like to join their troop.

84. "Are you interested in acting?" He said to her.

- 1) He asked her that she was interested in acting.
- 2) He asked her if she was interested in acting.
- 3) He asked her to she was interested in acting.
- 4) He asked her that she is interested in acting.

85. "Will you have time to play regularly?" She asked.

- 1) She asked me that I would have time to play regularly.
- 2) She enquired me that I would have time to play regularly.
- 3) She asked me whether I would have time to play regularly.
- 4) She asked me that I will have time to play regularly.

86. "What are you going to study?" I asked.

- 1) I asked what he is going to study.
- 2) I asked what he was going to study.
- 3) I asked what he had been is going to study.
- 4) I asked what I was go to study.

87. "What did you learn in your school yesterday?" Said mummy to me.

- 1) Mummy told me that what I had learnt in my school.
- 2) Mummy asks me that what I had learnt in my school.
- 3) Mummy asked me that what I had learnt in my school.
- 4) Mummy asked me what I had learnt in my school.

88. "When was the climate changed?" She asked.

- 1) She asked when the climate changed.
- 2) She asked when the climate will changed.
- 3) She asked when the climate had been changed.
- 4) She asked when the climate changing.

89. "Please stop talking" said my friend to us.

- 1) My friend requested us to please stop talking.
- 2) My friend requested us that please stop talking.
- 3) My friend requested us stop talking.
- 4) My friend requested us to stop talking.

90. "The Sun is shining now" Said Vimala.

- 1) Vimala said the Sun is shining.
- 2) Vimala said the Sun had been shining.
- 3) Vimala said that the Sun was shining then.
- 4) Vimala said that the Sun is shining.

91. "Can you telephone me?" I asked him.

- 1) I asked him to telephone me.
- 2) I asked him that telephone him.
- 3) I asked him whether he telephoned him.
- 4) I asked him whether he telephones me.

92. "Let us go to movie" Said Hari to his girl friend.

- 1) Hari told his girl friend to go to movie.
- 2) Hari told his girl friend going to movie.
- 3) Hari suggested his girl friend they should go to movie.
- 4) Hari told his girl friend how about going to movie.

93. "Will you have a drink?" He said.

- 1) He asked if I would have a drink.
- 2) He asked if I will have a drink.
- 3) He asked if I am having a drink.
- 4) He asked if I am taking a drink.

94. He said, "Wish you all the best".

- 1) He said that I had wished all the best.
- 2) He convied that I had wished all the best.
- 3) He convied that best wishes to me.
- 4) He said that best of luck.

95. "Could I leave early on this Friday?" the clerk asked the manager.

- 1) The clerk asked the manager to permit him to leave early on that Friday.
- 2) The clerk asked the manager whether he could leave early on that Friday.
- 3) The clerk requested the manager to permit him to leave early on that Friday.
- 4) The clerk told the manager to permit him to leave early on that Friday.

96. He said, "You had better slow down".

- 1) He told me to slow down.
- 2) He asked me slow down.
- 3) He advised me to slow down.
- 4) He ordered me to slow down.

97. "Who wants a lift to home?" said the scooterist.

- 1) The scooterist offered us a lift to home.
- 2) The scooterist said that a lift to home.
- 3) The scooterist requested us a lift to home.
- 4) The scooterist asked us a lift to home.

98. Teacher said, "God saves the men"

- 1) Teacher said that God saved the men.
- 2) Teacher said that we should save the God.
- 3) Teacher said that God saves the men.
- 4) Teacher advised that God saved the men.

99. "For give him, He has changed" said the spirits to the God.

- 1) Spirits begged God that to forgive him he had changed.
- 2) Spirits begged God that to forgive him he has changed.
- 3) Spirits begged the God to forgive him he had changed.
- 4) Spirits begged God to forgive him that he had changed.

100. She said, "I am a dull student"

- 1) She said that she is dull student.
- 2) She said that she was dull student.
- 3) She said that she had been dull student.
- 4) She said that she would be dull student.

IF CONDITIONAL CLAUSES

Open conditional clause

If తో కలిసిన వ్రాయబడే వాక్యాలు If clauses. రెండు వాక్యాలు If తో కలుపబడతాయి. ఏటిల్ condition ఉంటుంది. Condition ఉండటం వలన If conditional clauses అంటారు.

ఇవి 3 రకాలు.

1. Open conditional clause
2. Improbable conditional clause

(or)

Imaginary conditional clause

3. Unfulfilled conditional clause.

1. Open conditional clause

ఇందులో condition open గా తెలుస్తుంది.

| | | | |
|------|-------------------|-------------|----------------|
| Ex : | If You invite me, | I will come | [Example only] |
| | If clause | main clause | |

2. Imaginary conditional clause.

ఇది నిజ జీవితంలో సాధ్యం కానిది. ఉహత్పకమైనది.

| | | |
|------|--------------------|--------------|
| Ex : | If You invited me, | I would come |
| | If clause | main clause |

3. Unfulfilled conditional clause

ఏటిల్ condition నెరవేర్చబడలేదని స్పష్టమౌతుంది.

| | | |
|------|------------------------|-------------------|
| Ex : | If you had invited me, | I would have come |
| | If clause | main clause |

Structure రూపంలో వ్రాసుకుంటే సులభంగా జ్ఞాపకం ఉంటుంది. Verb ఎలా మారుతుందో గమనించాలి.

1. If + sub + V_1 +, sub + will/can/may + V_1 +
2. If + sub + V_2 +, sub + would/could/might + V_1 +
3. If + sub + had + V_3 +, sub + would + have + V_3 +

If clauses లో 1 type వాక్యాలను unless తో కూడా వ్రాయవచ్చు.

Ex : 1st type: If you work hard, you will get good marks.

unless ఉపయోగించి దీనిని వ్రాస్తే ఇలా ఉంటుంది.

Unless you work hard you won't get good marks.

Unless వచ్చినప్పుడు main clause negative లో ఉండాలి. లేకుంటే వాక్యం యొక్క basic meaning మారుతుంది. sentence యొక్క transformation లో meaning మారకూడదు.

IF CONDITIONAL CLAUSES**-: Open conditional clause :-****Type - 1**

1. If you invite me, I will come.
2. If you work hard you will get good marks.
3. If you come to the class regularly, I will teach you.
4. If she works hard, she will get good marks.
5. If you come early, you can play for a while.
6. If you wake up early, you can study.
7. If you pay your fee, I will issue your hall ticket.
8. If you run fast, you will catch the train.
9. If she catches a taxi, she will be in time there.
10. If he works hard, he will get a good job.
11. If I have much money, I can buy a car.
12. If they come daily, they will get good marks.
13. If I go to Washington, I will visit the White house.
14. If my father gives me some money, I will buy a new dress.
15. If you show me your hall ticket, I will let you in.

If తో కలిపి వ్రాయమని అడిగితే దిగువ విధముగా చేయాలి.

Show me your hall ticket. I will let you in.

నెరవేర్చవలసిన condition కు ముందు if చేర్చి వ్రాయాలి.

A :- If you show me your hall ticket, I will let you in.

Improbable conditional clause**Type - 2**

16. If I were a bird, I would fly.
17. If I were a snake, I would crawl.
18. If I were a fish, I would swim.
19. If I were you, I would not do like that.
20. If I were the last person to live on the earth, I would travel to another planet.
21. If I saw a snake, I would run.
22. If a famous actor wanted to marry me, I would say no.

Unfulfilled conditional clause**Type - 3**

23. If you had worked hard, you would have got good rank.
24. If you had paid your fee, I would have issued your H.T.
25. If I had seen a snake, I would have called the zoo officials.
26. If I had taken a taxi, I would have caught the train.

27. If she had sung well, she would have got first prize.
28. If you had come on time, I would have allowed you in.
29. If she had practised well, she wouldn't have failed.
30. If I had shown my hall ticket, they would have permitted me.

Unless

31. Unless you work hard, you won't get good rank.
32. Unless I wake up early, I won't catch the bus.
33. Unless he runs fast, he won't catch the train.
34. Unless I see a snake, I won't run away.
35. Unless you come to the class regularly, I won't teach.
36. Unless she works hard, she won't get good marks.
37. Unless you come early, you can't play for a while.
38. Unless you wake up early, you can't study.
39. Unless you pay your fee, I won't issue your hall ticket.
40. Unless I go to Hyderabad, I won't visit Birlamandir.

EXERCISE

1. If I had gone there.
 - a. I will have seen him.
 - b. I would have seen him.
 - c. I would had seen him.
 - d. I will had seen him.
2. If he had passed the examination.
 - a. He will had got the job.
 - b. He will had get the job.
 - c. He would have got the job.
 - d. He will have get the job.
3. If you finish that exercise.
 - a. I agreed to help you.
 - b. I will agree to help you.
 - c. I am agreeing to help you.
 - d. I was agreeing to help you.
4. If I had got the book.
 - a. I would had read it.
 - b. I will had read it.
 - c. I would have read it.
 - d. I will have read it.
5. If we do not hurry.
 - a. We could missed the train.
 - b. We could missed the train.
 - c. We will missed the train.
 - d. We will miss the train.

6. If Hari had gone there.
- He will had met his friend.
 - He would have met his friend.
 - He will have met his friend.
 - He would had met his friend.
7. If train had not been late.
- We will not had caught it.
 - We would not had caught it.
 - We would not have caught it.
 - We will not have caught it.
8. If you go deep into the forest.
- The wild animals may attack you.
 - The wild animals may attacked you.
 - The wild animals might attacked you.
 - The wild animals might attack you.
9. If I had time.
- I would see the film on T.V.
 - I could had seen the film on T.V.
 - I can have seen the film on T.V.
 - I can have seen the film on T.V.
10. If you show me your hall ticket.
- I will let you in.
 - I will not let you in.
 - I would let you in.
 - I wouldnt let you in.
11. If he had taken a taxi to bus station.
- He will not had missed the bus.
 - He could not had missed the bus.
 - He will not have missed the bus.
 - He could not have missed the bus.
12. If you calm down before you jump.
- You would qualified easily.
 - You will qualified easily.
 - You will qualify easily.
 - You would qualify easily.
13. If you go on morning walk everyday.
- You did not got a heart-attack.
 - You did not get a heart-attack.
 - You do not got a heart-attack.
 - You may not get a heart-attack.
14. If she had been a graduate.
- She would have got the job in the office.
 - She would have get the job in the office.
 - She will have got the job in the office.
 - She will have get the job in the office.

15. If you are careful in your diet.
- You will kept good health.
 - You will keep good health.
 - You would keep good health.
 - You would kept good health.
16. If Ramu had not driven recklessly.
- He will not had been involved in an accident.
 - He will not have been involved in accident.
 - He would not have been involved in an accident.
 - He would not had been involved in an accident.
17. Unless he is punished.
- He would not changed his ways.
 - He would not change his ways.
 - He will not changed his ways.
 - He will not change his ways.
18. Unless I receive an invitation.
- I would not went to the wedding.
 - I will not go to the wedding.
 - I will not went to the wedding.
 - I could not go to the wedding.
19. Unless the girl agrees.
- We couldnot arranged her marriage.
 - We cannot arranged her marriage.
 - We cannot arrange her marriage.
 - We can arrange her marriage.
20. Unless you keep quiet.
- You would be punished.
 - You will be punished.
 - You will be punish.
 - You will not be punish.
21. If I had a car.
- I will drove it myself.
 - I will drive it myself.
 - I would drove it myself.
 - I would drive it myself.
22. If you send a telegram to Delhi now.
- You would got a reply in two days.
 - You would get a reply in two days.
 - You will get a reply in two days.
 - You will got a reply in two days.

23. He had money.
a. He would continued his studies.
b. He will continued his studies.
c. He will continue his studies.
d. He would continuc his studies.
24. If we had a garden.
a. We would grew flowers.
b. We would grow flowers.
c. We will grow flowers.
d. We will grew flowers.
25. If you work hard.
a. You could got more marks.
b. You can get more marks.
c. You can got more marks.
d. You could get more marks.
26. If you run.
a. You could caught the train.
b. You can caught the train.
c. You can catch the train.
d. You could catch the train.
27. If you work hard.
a. You would passed the examination.
b. You will passed the examination.
c. You would pass the examination.
d. You will pass the examination.
28. If she loves me.
a. I shall marry her.
b. I should marry her.
c. I should married her.
d. I shall married her.
29. If you write more.
a. Write became easier.
b. Writing will become easier.
c. Write become easier.
d. Writing become easier
30. If there is no bus strike.
a. I would came back tomorrow.
b. I will came back tomorrow.
c. I will come back tomorrow.
d. I would come back tomorrow.

ANSWERS

1. b If clause third type (would have + V_3)
2. c If clause third type (would have + V_3)
3. b If clause first type
4. c If clause third type
5. d If clause first type (will + V_1)
6. b If clause third type (would have + V_3)
7. c If clause first type (Negative)
8. a If clause first type (will + V_1)
9. a If clause second type (would + V_1)
10. a If clause type (will + V_1)
11. d If clause third type (would have + V_3)
12. c If clause first type (will + V_1)
13. d If clause first type (will + V_1)
14. a If clause third type (would have + V_3)
15. b If clause first type (will + V_1)
16. c If clause third type (would have + V_3)
17. d If clause first type unless ಛ (will/cannot + V_1)
18. b If clause first type unless ಛ (will / cannot + V_1)
19. c If clause first type unless ಛ (will/cannot + V_1)
20. b Unless you will be punished ಁ positive form
21. d If clause second type (would + V_1)
22. c If clause first type (will + V_1)
23. d If clause second type (would + V_1)
24. b If clause second type (would + V_1)
25. b If clause first type (will - V_1)
26. c If clause first type (will - V_1)
27. d If clause first type (will - V_1)
28. a If clause first type (will - V_1)
29. b If clause first type (will - V_1)
30. c If clause first type (will + V_1)

CONCORD

STRUCTURE

Objective : After going through this unit/lesson, you will be able to :

- (1) know the meaning of Concord
- (2) know the types of Concord
- (3) understand the rules of Concord
- (4) detect the grammatical errors and rectify them

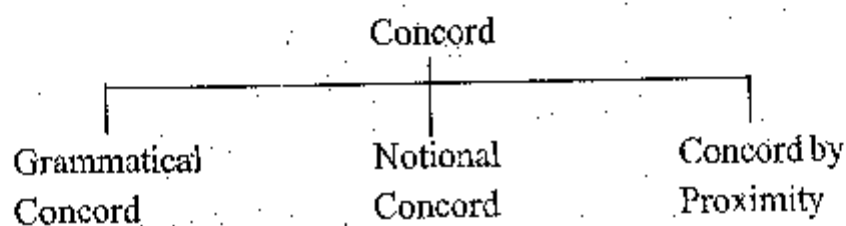
Introduction : Just as the subject nouns or pronouns have singular and plural number, verbs also have singular and plural forms. In a sentence, the verb should agree with its subject in number and persons, i.e., it must be the same number and person as its subject. When the subject is in the singular, the verb must also be in the singular; and when the subject is in the plural, the verb must be in the plural.

| Singular subject and Singular verb | Plural subject and Plural verb |
|------------------------------------|---|
| 1. <u>He is</u> reading (S) (V) | 1. <u>They are</u> reading (S) (V) |
| 2. <u>She sings</u> (S) (V) | 2. <u>They sing</u> (S) (V) |
| 3. <u>John has</u> a car (S) (V) | 3. <u>John and Mary have</u> cars (S) (V) |

Definitions

The agreement between the subject and the verb is known as Concord.

Kinds of Concord : Concord can be of three kinds as shown below :



1. **Grammatical Concord :** The traditional grammarians rigidly insisted upon grammatical concord, i.e., Concord by form of the subject and the verb. I

The subject is singular, verb should be singular. If the subject is plural, verb should be plural.

Eg :

1. Cow gives milk (Third person, singular, present tense)
2. Cow give milk (Third person, plural, present tense)
3. She is glad your success. (Third person, singular, present tense)
4. They are very helpful tous. (Third person, plural, present tense)

2. **Notional Concord :** Notional Concord is agreement of verb with subject according to how we look at the subject, either as singular or plural, depending on the contextual sense.

Eg :

The Committee is meeting next week (Singular).

The Committee were divided in their opinion (Plural)

Note : In American Usage, the singular verb is more common.

3. **Concord by Proximity :** It denotes agreement of the verb with whatever noun or pronoun which is closely precedes it (verb).

Eg :

Either the manager or the clerks are responsible for this mistake.

Either the clerks or the manager is responsible for this mistake.

It will be useful to remember the following Concord rules. Read them carefully.

1. The verb must agree with its subject in number and person.

I look }
We look } - I person

You look - II person

He looks
She looks
It looks } - III person
They look

2. If the subject is singular, the verb must be singular.

- i. The cow is white.
ii. He goes to college.

3. If the subject is plural, the verb must be plural.

- i. The cows are white.
ii. They go to college.

4. Two or more singular subjects connected by 'and' take a verb in the plural.

- i. Suresh and Siva are working in our factory.
ii. He and I have discussed the problem.

5. When the subject joined by 'or' / 'nor' are of different numbers, the singular must be placed first and the plural next (that is before the verb). The verb must be plural.

- i. Rama or her friends are responsible for this.
ii. Neither the principal nor the lecturers were there.
iii. Either the doctor or the patients have to be here.

6. When the subjects joined by 'or/nor' are of different persons, the verb agrees in person with the one nearest to it.

- i. Either he or I am to blame.
ii. Neither you nor she is responsible for it.

Some nouns appear to be plural in form but singular in meaning. Such nouns take a singular verb.

- i. Mathematics is her favourite subject.
 - ii. The news is too good to be true.
8. Words joined to a singular subject by 'along with', 'as well as', 'in addition to', 'together with' or 'with' take a singular verb.
- i. Siva along with his friends is at the playground
 - ii. Rajani as well as her sister likes sweets.
 - iii. Her pay in addition to the allowances was paid.
 - iv. Ranga Rao together with his friend was arrested for cheating an actor.
 - v. Mallik with his classmates has attended the function.
9. When the subject of the verb is a relative pronoun, the verb agrees in number and person with the antecedent of the relative pronoun.
- i. I, who am your friend, shall solve your problem.
 - ii. She, who is my enemy, always criticizes me.
 - iii. One of the books which have been missing in the library is in his house.
10. If two subjects express one idea, the verb shall be in the singular.
- i. Slow and steady wins the race.
 - ii. Time and tide waits for none.
 - iii. Early to bed and early to rise makes a man healthy.
11. If two singular subjects are preceded by 'each' or 'every' and connected by 'and', the verb shall be in the singular.
- i. Each hour and each day reminds us of our duty.
 - ii. Every man and every woman has the right to vote.
12. When the subject of a sentence is 'there', (dummy subject) the verb agrees with the noun that follows the verb.
- i. There was a king called Rama in Ayodhya.
 - ii. There is a book on the table.
 - iii. There are ten girls in the class.
 - iv. There were ten rooms in that house.
13. Phrases which express 'an amount', 'a period of time', 'a quantity' or a 'unit' take a singular verb.
- i. Two hundred rupees was paid for the taxi.
 - ii. Three months in prison was the punishment given to Soapy.
 - iii. Two miles is not a long distance.
 - iv. Five kilos of rice is needed.
- Note :** If the quantity is treated as separate units, the subject takes a plural verb.
- v. Two thousand rupees were paid to the workers.
 - vi. Ten acres of land were distributed to the poor in our village.

14. Phrases which are names of books, organisations or countries take a singular verb.
 - i. "The Three Musketeers" is an interesting book.
 - ii. The Bharat Scouts is a well known organization.
 - iii. The United States of America is a rich country.
15. A collective noun takes singular verb when the collection refers to one unit.
 - i. The committee has taken the decision unanimously.
 - ii. The majority is in favour of the bill.

Note : If the collection refers to individuals, the plural verb is used.

 - iii. The committee are divided on the issue.
 - iv. The crew were taken prisoners.
16. If two nouns refer to the same person or thing, the verb must be singular. The article is used only once.
 - i. The secretary and correspondent is no more.
 - ii. By the death of Radhakrishna, a great philosopher and patriot was lost to India.
 - iii. Her pet and companion is her little dog.

Note : If two nouns refer to different persons or things, the verb must be plural. The article is used before each noun.

 - iv. The secretary and the correspondent are no more.
 - v. The clerk and the typist are on leave.
17. Words like 'majority' 'lot' etc., are singular. They take a plural verb because each subject taken as a whole is plural in meaning.
 - i. A lot of trees have been cut in this forest.
 - ii. A large number of students have passed in our institutions.
18. If the subject is plural, the verb must be plural.
 - i. The students are in the class.
 - ii. They have attended the meeting.
19. When subjects differing in number or person are connected by 'and', the verb must be plural.
 - i. She and I are classmates.
 - ii. You and he are expected to do your duty.
20. The following words are plural and they take verbs in the plural number; a few, both, many, several
 - i. A few of us know French well.
 - ii. Both are interesting novels.
 - iii. Many are invited to the party.
 - iv. Several have passed in the test.

21. 'All', 'Most' and 'Some' take a singular verb if they stand for uncountable nouns and plural verb if they stand for countable nouns.
- All has been sold. (uncountable)
 - All have passed. (countable)
 - Most of the money was saved. (uncountable)
 - Most of the students have gone home. (countable)
 - Some of the milk was boiling. (uncountable)
 - Some of the apples were good. (countable)
22. Mathematical statements take a singular verb.
- Five times four is twenty.
 - Twenty minus five is fifteen.
23. Words such as spectacles, glasses, tongs, binoculars, gloves, shoes and scissors are regarded as plural and require plural verbs. They are called pair nouns.
- My spectacles are in my pocket.
 - My pants are torn.
 - If these words are preceded by the phrase 'pair off' the word 'pair' becomes the subject.
 - A pair of trousers is found in the cupboard.
24. Some words end in 's' and appear to be plural but they are really singular and require singular verbs. These are the words : Measles, news, mumps, billiards, gallows, innings and subjects like phonetics, politics, ethics, economics, and other words like barracks, and diseases like AIDS, rickets etc.
- Measles is an infectious disease.
 - The news from the desk is bad.
25. Phrases like 'half of', 'a part of', 'a percentage of', 'a majority of' are sometimes singular and sometimes plural depending on the meaning.
- One-third of the seats are reserved for women.
 - A large part of the army is placed at the border.
26. If a compound subject consists of one negative and one positive subject and one is plural and the other is singular, the verb should agree with the positive subject.
- It is the subjects not the principal who elect their leaders.
 - It was the minister, not the member that has raised the issue.
27. An indefinite pronoun 'none' can be either singular or plural and it often does not matter whether you use a singular or plural verb unless something else determines its number.
- None of the students have come.
 - None of the computers are working.
28. 'Each' is always followed by a prepositional phrase ending in a plural word.
- Each of the cars is well designed by the company
 - Each of the students is responsible for keeping the classroom clean.

29. 'D' not' is used for plural subject and 'does not' for singular subjects.
 - i. I do not agree with you.
 - ii. He does not like tea.
30. 'Did' is the past tense form of 'do' and 'does' and is used for all subjects both singular and plural.
 - i. They did not agree to the proposal.
 - ii. Raman did not inform his parents that he was going to be late.
31. Collective Nouns like equipment, machinery, stationery, scenery, baggage, luggage, furniture, clothing are singular nouns and take the Singular Verb.
 - i. The equipment was imported from the U.K.
32. Some Nouns like people, police, cattle, clergy, poultry, three-dozen are Singular in form but Plural in meaning. They take the Plural Verb.
 - i. The cattle are returning home.
33. In mathematical statements the rule is singular for plural subject with 'and'
 - i. Two and two is four. (or Two and Two are four).
 - ii. Two and two makes four (or Two and two make four) But
 - iii. Five plus three is eight.
 - iv. Three times four is twelve.
 - v. Six minus two is four.
34. All in the sense of 'everything', 'the whole of' takes a singular verb :
 - i. 'All that glitters is not gold'. All the food has been eaten.
 - ii. In the sense of 'everyone'. All takes a plural verb.
 - iii. All the dogs were barking furiously.
35. What, which, and who, used interrogatively are followed by the singular or the plural of the verb according to the speaker's intention:
 - i. What is your name? What are your reasons?
 - ii. Which of the books is/are yours? Who was/were with him?
36. Though more than one is notionally plural, it takes a singular verb :
 - i. 'More than one person is involved in this'.
37. The great/greatest part is singular when it refers to amount of quantity, plural when to number. The verb is used according to the context :
 - i. The greater part of the land is uncultivated.
 - ii. The greater part of the apples are bad.
38. In the case of specifications of sums of money, the singular generally refers to the amount, the plural to the coins, etc., concerned :
 - i. Here is five shillings (amount).
 - ii Here are five rupees (coins).

39. In formal style lot and lots present no agreement problem, since they are connected with singular and plural nouns respectively :

i. A lot of money was needed.

ii. There were lots of people.

But in colloquial speech this does not apply, and here the phrases take the singular of the verb with uncountable, and the plural with countables.

iii. There was heaps of fun.

iv. There was lots of fun.

v. There were lots of people.

vi. There is heaps more to say on this question.

vii. There are heaps of books on the subject.

40. If a fraction - half, a quarter, two-thirds, ten percent, etc., is related to a singular noun, it takes a singular verb. If it is related to a plural noun, it takes a plural, verb :

i. Half of the land is cultivated.

ii. Half of the apples are bad.

Sequences of Tense

(1) A Past Tense in principal clause follows a Past Tense in subordinate Clauses.

i. The patient said that he felt better.

ii. He worked hard that he might pass.

(2) A Past Tense in principal clause may be followed by a present in the subordinate if

i. Universal Truths are expressed.

ii. He said that two plus two is four.

(3) A past tense in principal clause may be followed by any Tense if the subordinate clause is introduced by "Than".

i. He came often than we expected

ii. He come often than we expect.

iii. He come often than we will expect.

(4) A principal clause in present / future may be followed by any Tense required by the sense.

i. He says that he is a teacher.

ii. He says that he was a teacher.

iii. He says that he will be a teacher.

iv. He will say that he is a Teacher.

v. He will say that he was a Teacher.

vi. He will say that he will be teacher.

Assignment - I :

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate verb forms, use auxiliary verbs if necessary.

1. The crowd - fighting among themselves then. (be)
2. Economics - not an easy subject. (be)
3. 'Pride and Prejudice' - written by Jane Austen. (be)
4. The best innings of the match - by Sachin. (play)
5. Politics - one of the subjects taught at college. (be)
6. The United Nations now - of nearly two hundred members (consists)
7. The audience - to get up when the chief guest started his speech. (began)
8. Thirty rupees - enough for the auto fare. (be)
9. Many people say that measles - dangerous. (be)
10. The tailor says that three metres - for the suit. (need)

Answers :

- (1) is, (2) is, (3) is, (4) are played, (5) is, (6) is consisting, (7) begin, (8) is, (9) is, (10) need

Assignment - II :

Correct the following sentences.

1. The news were broadcast by All India Radio.
2. Physics are an interesting subject.
3. My friend and philosopher are now here.
4. Bread and butter are her only food.
5. The crew were not large.
6. Five miles of this road needs repair.
7. The team were practicing hard in the stadium.
8. Neither he nor I were invited to dinner.
9. These spectacles belongs to me.
10. Many a wise man say so.
11. Vimala or Kamala are sure to be in the party.
12. Either the principal or the correspondent have to read the college report.
13. Neither you nor I are wrong.
14. The quality of the grapes are good.
15. The cow and the calf were the symbol of our party.

Answers :

- (1) was, (2) is, (3) is, (4) is, (5) was, (6) need, (7) was, (8) was, (9) belong
(10) says, (11) is, (12) has, (13) am, (14) is, (15) were

Assignment - III :

Correct the following sentences :

1. One of the soldiers were badly injured in the attacks.

3. Neither Shakespeare nor Milton belong to Greece.
4. One of my books are missing.
5. No one have contributed to the flood-relief fund.
6. Most of the students has voted for Manu.
7. Each of the governors have attended the conference.
8. Either the medals or the mementoes is to be given to the winners.
9. Varma as well as Vanitha are among the students selected for the scholarship.
10. The writer, who has been awarded the academy prize along with three more writers, are on the board.
11. The cost of all these apples have increased.

Answers :

1. One of the solders was badly injured in the attacks.
2. Neither Shakespeare nor Milton belongs to Greece.
3. One of my books is missing.
4. No one has contributed to the flood-relief fund.
5. Most of the students have voted for Manu.
6. Each of the governors has attended the conference.
7. Either the medals or the mementoes are go be given to the winners.
8. Varma as well as Vanitha is among the students selected for the scholarship.
9. The writer, who has been awarded the academy prize along with three more writers, is on the board.
10. The cost of all these apples has increased.

LET US SUM UP

We have seen in this unit, the three kinds of Concord - grammatical, notional and by proximity; and how grammatical Concord is interfered with by notionally and proximity principle. So we should aware of the formal and written contexts where grammatical forms are appropriate and the informal ones.

ARTICLES

The Adjectives *a* (or *an*) and *the* are usually called **Articles**. They are really *Demonstrative Adjectives*. Thus there are two types of Articles: *a* (or *an*) and *the*.

A (or *an*) is the weakened form of *one*, and is called **Indefinite Article** because it does not point out any definite or particular person or thing.

The is called the **Definite Article** because it points out some definite or particular person or thing.

As a general rule, an article is placed before a common noun in the singular number; as, This is a pen. Here is *an* umbrella.

I saw a jackal in *the* field. *The* boy fell dead.

‘A’ OR ‘AN’ USED ACCORDING TO SOUND

Whether to use *a* or *an* will depend on the sound of the word before which it is placed.

An is used :-

- (a) before a word beginning with a vowel sound; as,

Ex : *an* ass; *an* apple; *an* orange; *an* umbrella; *an* uncle.

- (b) before a word beginning with *h* which is not pronounced and therefore the beginning sound of the word becomes a vowel sound; as,

Ex : *an* hour; *an* honest man; *an* heir.

- (c) before a word beginning with *h* when the accent is on the second syllable; as, *an* historical novel; *an* heroic deed; *an* hotel.

Note: This rule is now becoming obsolete. It is more usual to write *a* hotel, *a* heroic deed, *a* historical novel, though the use of *an* will not be wrong.

- (d) before individual letters spoken with a vowel sound; as, Ex : *an* M.A. ; *an* M.P. *an* S.P. (M sounds as ‘em’, S as ‘es’. But before B.A., P.M., G.M., *a* is used).

A is used :

- (a) before a word beginning with a consonant sound; as, *a* woman; *a* yard; *a* horse; *a* man.

- (b) before a word beginning with consonant sound of ‘*yu*’; though it may begin with a vowel letter, as,

Ex : *a* university, *a* union, *a* usage, *a* useful thing, *a* European, *a* eulogy.

- (c) before a word with the sound of ‘*wu*’, even though it may begin with a vowel letter; as,

Ex : *a* one-rupee note; *a* one-eyed giant.

- (d) before a word beginning with a sounded *h*; as,

Ex : *a* horse; *a* hero; *a* holiday.

USE OF 'A' OR 'AN' ACCORDING TO CONTEXT

The Indefinite Article *a* (or *an*) is used in the sense of :-

- (a) *numerical one* : Give me a mango (one mango).
- (b) *a certain person* : I saw a beggar.
- (c) *a class* : A dog is a useful animal. (representing the whole class of dogs).
- (d) *the same* : Two of a trade seldom agree. (the same trade)
- (e) *any* : A child generally likes to play. (any child)
- (f) **When a proper noun is used in the sense of a common noun** : A Daniel (a very wise judge) comes to judgement.
- (g) *certain quantity* : a lot of; a great deal of; a great many; a couple; a dozen.
- (h) *certain numbers* : a hundred, a million.
- (i) *before 'half'* : one and a half kilos or a kilo and a half (but 1 kilo); a half-holiday; a half-share.
- (j) *Price, speed, ratio* : Rs 10 a dozen; 60 kilometres an hour; four times a day.
- (k) *exclamation* : What a long queue ! What a pretty girl ! Such a selfish man ! What a fine day !

USE OF 'THE' ACCORDING TO CONTEXT

The definite Article *the* is used :-

- (a) when we speak of a *particular* person or thing, or one *already mentioned* or one *well-known* to us; as,
 - i. Shut *the* box. Call *the* boy.
 - ii. He promised to use *the* medicine I gave him.
 - iii. A girl entered a house. In *the* house lived a man who loved *the* girl.
- (b) when a singular noun or an Adjective of Quality is meant to represent a whole class; as,
 - i. *The* lion is the king of beasts.
 - ii. *The* rich are not always happy.
- (c) before the names of rivers, seas, oceans, mountain ranges, groups of islands, gulfs, canals, plains, deserts, winds, seasons; as, *the* Ganga; *the* Arabian Sea; *the* Atlantic Ocean; *the* Himalayas; *the* Lakshadweep Islands; *the* Persian Gulf; *the* Upper Indus; *the* Canal; *the* Indo-Gangetic Plain; *the* Sahara; *the* monsoon; *the* winter; *the* west wind.
- (d) before certain geographical names; as,
Ex: *the* Punjab; *the* Deccan; *the* Highlands; *the* United States.
- (e) before the names of certain books and scriptures; as, Ex: *the* Vedas; *the* Puranas; *the* Ramayana; *the* Koran; *the* Gulistan; *the* Bible; *the* Gita.
But we say -
Firdausi's Shahnama; Valmiki's Ramayana.
- (f) before the names of ships, aeroplanes, well-known buildings and newspapers; as,
Ex: *the* Vikrant; *the* Red Fort; *the* Taj Mahal; *the* Indian Express; *the* Hindustan Times.
- (g) before superlatives; as,
Ex: He is *the* oldest man in our neighbourhood.
- (h) before names of things unique of their kind; Ex: *the* sun; *the* moon; *the* earth; *the* sky; *the* equator; *the* sea; *the* ocean; *the* King; *the* Governor; *the* Prime Minister; *the* Principal.

Note: *The* is also used before other similar titles; as, *the press, the army, the navy, the public, the bar.*

- (i) before the names of *important events*; as,
Ex: *the Reformation; the Mutiny; the French Revolution; the Great War.*
- (j) before an epithet attached to a *personal proper name*; as, Ex: *Alexander the Great; George the Fifth; Edward the Eighth.*
- (k) before an adverb with *Comparative*, as,
Ex: *The nearer the bone, the sweeter the meat.*
I am not a bit the worse for my defeat.
[Similarly we say - *All the best*].
- (l) in place of *Possessive Adjectives* before
Ex: *the names of parts of the body*; as,
I struck him on the head, (not his).
- (m) before a *noun* when *special emphasis* is needed; as,
Ex: *Now is the time to escape.*
He is the authority on the Vedas.
This is just the thing I wanted.
- (n) before the name of a *nation* and sometimes before the name of a *community* or a *class of people*; as,
Ex: *the Hindus; the English; the French; the Sikhs; the Jains.*
- (o) before the names of *directions* when such nouns are preceded by prepositions (*to, in, on, at, etc.*); as,
Ex: *the north, the south, the east, the west.*
Captain Cook went to the east. [Or, *Captain Cook went east.*]
- (p) before an adjective used to denote an *abstract quality*; as,
Ex: *We should always love the beautiful.*
- (q) before an adjective in the *Comparative degree* when not more than two persons or things are being compared; as,
Ex: *John is the wiser of the two.*
- (r) to make a *Proper Noun Common*; as,
Ex: *Kalidas is the Shakespeare of India.*
Mumbai is the London of the East.
- (s) before a *Common Noun* to give it the *meaning* of an *Abstract Noun*; as,
Ex: *At last the father (the fatherly love) in him was stirred.*
- (t) with the names of things *typical of their class*; as,
Ex: *The pen is mightier than the sword.*
Don't play the fool, man.
- (u) before *numeral adjectives* showing order; as,
Ex: *All the students of the fifth class were absent.*
- (v) before a *Proper Noun* preceded by a more or less permanent adjective; as,
Ex: *The late Mr Gokhale; the lovely Helen.*

(vi) before *same* and after *both*, *all* and *half*; as,

Ex: This is *the same* building.

Both *the* students belong to *the same* class.

All *the* world knows this.

Half *the* apples are rotten.

(vii) in many fixed phrases; as

Ex: On *the one* hand; on *the other* hand; on *the defensive*; in *the long run*; on *the march*; in *the way*; in *the wrong*; all *the same*; all *the more*; to *the utmost*; to *the contrary*; on *the way*.

A hard-working man is sure to succeed in *the long run*. children are always in *the way*.

OMISSION OF THE ARTICLE

The article is omitted :-

- (a) before *Proper, Material and Abstract Nouns* (used in a general sense); as,
London, gold, honesty, virtue.
- (b) before a *noun* used in its *widest sense*; as,
Man is mortal. Woman is tender-hearted.
- (c) in certain phrases consisting of a *preposition followed by its object*; as, On foot; in jail; underground; to school; at school; from head to foot; from top to bottom; at home; in hand; in bed; by day; by train; by car; in debt; on earth; at noon; at sight; in town; at tea; on board; in jest; at sunset; at daybreak; at best; at worst.
He is *in debt*. Mohan is *at school*. Rama is still *in bed*.
- (d) in certain phrases consisting of a *Transitive Verb followed by its object*; as,
Give ear, set sail, take heart, bring word, give battle, send word, catch fire, take offence, leave office, leave school, cast anchor, strike root, leave home, lay siege, keep house.
Don't take offence at my words. I leave office at 4 o' clock.
- (e) before nouns used as *complements*; as,
They made him *prisoner*. He became *king*.
- (f) before the names of single mountains or single islands; as,
Everest, Sri Lanka.
- (g) before the names of *continents, countries, capes, cities, towns, days, months, arts, languages, sciences, diseases and objects*; as,
January is a cold month. *English* is spoken by a very large number of people.
- (h) before a common noun in the *Vocative case*; as,
Come here, *boy*.
- (i) before common nouns when they *go in pairs*; as,
Both *husband and wife* received serious injuries.
- (j) before *plural nouns* used to denote a *class*; as,
Boys go to school every day at nine o'clock.
Camels are useful animals.
Warm clothes are necessary in cold climates.
But it is correct to say;
The boys who go to school every day at 9 o' clock return at 3.
The camels of Arabia are very strong.
Here particular '*boys*' and '*camels*' are meant.

- (k) before the nouns following *kind of*, as,
What *kind of* flower is it? (Not, *kind of a flower*).
(l) before meal-time (like dinner, supper, breakfast).
He was at *dinner*. *Breakfast* was served at eight.

SOME SPECIAL POINTS

The articles are used before Proper, Abstract and Material Nouns when they are used in a particular sense.

Dara Singh is known as *the* Hercules of India.

He is a second Edison.

The Mr. Bose who was killed in the Great War was my uncle.

The wisdom of Solomon is proverbial.

The cotton of Kathiawar is the best in India.

Note the use of *the* in the following sentences :-

- (a) Cloth is sold by *the* metre.
(b) Malayalam is *the* language of Kerala.
(c) My birthday falls on *the* third of September.
(d) I hope to return by *the* 3 o'clock train.
(e) *The* late Marshal Foch was a leader of repute.

REPETITION OF THE ARTICLE

Distinguish between the following sentences :-

- (a) I have a black and white cow. (one cow)
I have a black and a white cow. (two cows)
(b) *The* secretary and accountant is present. (one person)
The secretary and *the* accountant are present. (two persons)
(c) He was *the* poet and *the* statesman of his age. (one person, but the article is repeated for emphasis only).
(d) He is *a* better soldier than *a* scholar. (That is, he is more successful as a soldier than as a scholar - the same person).
We may say either:
The fifth and *the* sixth chapter.
(or) *The* fifth and sixth chapters.

POSITION OF THE ARTICLE

- (i) The article is generally placed before a *noun*; as,
a boy; *a* pen; *a* table.
(ii) If the *noun* is qualified by an *adjective*, the article is placed just before the *adjective*; as,
a good boy; *a* pretty flower.
(iii) If the *adjective* is modified by an *adverb*, the article is placed before the *adverb*; as,
a very good boy. (*a* + *adverb* + *adjective* + *noun*).

(iv) When *so*, *how*, *too*, *as* are placed before an adjective, *a* or *an* is placed between the adjective and the noun; as,
so large a tree; *so nice a carpet*; *how fine a picture*; *too difficult a sum*; *as cheap a horse*.

(v) when *both*, *all*, *half* and *double* are used before a noun *the* is placed immediately before the noun; as,

all the boys; *both the brothers*; *half the army*; *double the amount*.

Note the correct use of the Article :-

- (a) I heard *a noise*. (not *noise*)
- (b) It is *a quarter* to ten by my watch. (not *quarter*)
- (c) I have *a headache*. (not *headache*)
- (d) This is *news* to me. (not *a news*)
- (e) I am *of opinion* that he is a thief. (*of the opinion* is also accepted these days.)
- (f) I am in *a hurry*. (not *hurry*)

EXERCISES

Complete the following sentences by filling in 'a' or 'an' or 'the' as may be suitable :-

1. I have a cold in head.
2. The stone hit me on leg.
3. Go to post office.
4. Shamsher is smallest boy in class, but Janak is biggest.
5. I should like to buy pair of stockings and couple of shirts.
6. cobra never bites unless disturbed.
7. How small needle do you want?
8. Many flower is born to blush unseen.
9. I drank all milk.
10. He ate whole pudding.
11. Let us rest for quarter of hour.
12. Both girls are pretty.
13. perfume of this flower is delightful.
14. fire which raged in London, destroyed many houses.
15. best way to extinguish fire is to exclude air.
16. This man is Newton of his age.
17. banyan is kind of big tree.
18. whole class will attend school tomorrow.
19. I admire wisdom of Solomon.
20. There is bridge over Ganga at Varanasi.
21. current of river ran so swiftly that steamer could make hardly any way at all.
22. He is tall, strong man.
23. English conquered country.
24. Americans helped French in Great War.
25. higher you go, cooler it is.

26. Patna is capital of State of Bihar; it is centre of education.
27. Himalayas protect plains of India from cold winds of north.
28. A hundred paise make rupee.
29. elephant is largest of all land animals. It differs from other animals in having trunk. trunk is really very long nose at end of which two nostrils open.
30. few miles from Srinager river leaves valley and enters dark gorge.

EXERCISE - 2

Insert Articles where they are needed in the following sentences :-

1. Punjab is rich province.
2. Thames is most important English river.
3. Milk is sold by litre.
4. Silk cloth is sold by metre.
5. Mangoes are expensive today.
6. Mangoes of Saharanpur are very sweet.
7. I have heard with greatest delight of your safe arrival.
8. Cycle was punctured in vicinity of school.
9. Doctor has large practice.
10. Many man has died at sea.
11. Love is greatest virtue.
12. Beauty of that garden is great.
13. Boys are determined to make most of their time.
14. Umbrella is of no avail against heavy downpour.
15. Building could not be completed for want of funds.
16. How dark sky looks !
17. Crow sat on branch of tall tree.
18. Courage which he displayed was extraordinary.
19. Mount Everest is highest peak of Himalayas.
20. Indus flows through Punjab into Arabian Sea.
21. Breakfast is first meal of day.
22. Old palace of Moghul emperors is now called Fort.
23. Glow - worm belongs to group of animals that carry their own lamp.
24. Whole class was fined.
25. Cow is very gentle animal and very useful to man.
26. Sun rises in east and sets in west.
27. Wisdom is rare virtue.
28. Rice and wheat are grown in those parts of India where supply of water is abundant.
29. Have pity on poor.
30. He is honorary member of club.
31. Teacher gave advice to his students.

32. Taj Mahal is most beautiful tomb in world.
33. Good many students fail English.
34. Boy called out from distance.
35. I intend to go by car and return by train.
36. He is not ill. On contrary he is hale and hearty.
37. He is mad man.
38. Ramayana is great epic.
39. He is best teacher, even though he has least experience.
40. Honesty is best policy.
41. Late Sir Syed Ahmad was leader of Muslims.
42. I never saw such big place before.
43. All men of town came to see him.
44. This is news to me.
45. Democracy is government of people, by people, for people, where all citizens have equal political rights and voters elect representatives to administer government.

EXERCISE -1

1. Use a or an in the following sentences wherever necessary. Put X where Article is necessary. (Answers are given in the brackets)

1. _____ gold is _____ precious metal. (X; a)
2. _____ coffee is _____ popular drink. (X; a)
3. _____ umbrella is necessary in the rainy season. (An)
4. He has _____ ear for _____ music. (an; X)
5. _____ ant is _____ insect. (An; an)
6. _____ dog eats _____ meat. (A, X)
7. _____ guitar makes _____ music. (A, X)
8. _____ sugar is sweet. (X)
9. _____ bread costs two rupees _____ loaf. (X, a)
10. Please give me _____ pen. (a)
11. John hoped that he would go to _____ university. (a)
12. He will come in _____ hour. (an)
13. France is _____ European nation. (a)
14. He thinks it is _____ honour. (an)
15. This is _____ useful lesson. (a)
16. It is _____ exercise in grammar. (an)
17. A horse is _____ animal. (A; an)
18. London is _____ big city. (a)
19. My brother is _____ engineer. (an)
20. Such _____ incident never occurred. (an)

EXERCISE -2

Fill in the blanks in the following sentences with the words given in brackets. Add a or an if necessary in the right place. (Answers are given in the brackets).

1. He wants to be _____ engineer. (an)
2. Canada is _____ large country. (a)
3. My sister is _____ doctor. (a)
4. I never saw such _____ idiot. (an)
5. The ring is made of _____ gold. (x)
6. Shakespeare was _____ Elizabethan. (an)
7. Eliot was _____ poet. (a)
8. They had _____ long innings. (a)
9. Galileo was _____ Italian scientist. (an)
10. It is _____ pleasure to teach English. (a)

EXERCISE -3

Insert the articles wherever necessary:

1. He gave me _____ one rupee note. (a)
2. Brutus is _____ honourable man. (an)
3. There is _____ ugly scar on his face. (an)
4. He is _____ fool to say so. (a)
5. He visits Tirupati once _____ year. (a)
6. _____ higher you climb, _____ colder it gets. (The, the)
7. She can play _____ veena very well. (the)
8. She gave me nice _____ cup of tea. (a)
9. _____ bird can fly. (A)
10. There is bridge over _____ Godavari. (the)
11. Can you show _____ Philippines in this map? (the)
12. He came by _____ Grand Trunk Express. (the)

EXERCISE -4

Fill in the blanks with 'a', 'an' or 'the':

1. The earth revolves round _____ Sun.
2. Their leader is _____ unique person.
3. His grandfather always carries _____ umbrella.
4. Gandhi considered himself _____ ordinary man.
5. He ate _____ apple that was meant for the guest.
6. I cannot remember _____ story, which he told.
7. There is _____ African boy in our school.
8. He went to Egypt to see _____ Pyramids.
9. Gold is _____ precious metal.
10. The children found _____ egg in the nest.
11. The earth is _____ planet.
12. Mr. John Kerry is _____ American.
13. The Ramayana is _____ epic.

13. Lucknow is one of _____ biggest cities in India.
 14. He is _____ Gavaskar of our Cricket team.
 15. That girl is _____ orphan.
 16. There is _____ tremendous progress in Computer field.

ANSWERS

- 1) The 2) a 3) an 4) an 5) the 6) the 7) an 8) the 9) a 10) an 11) a 12) an
 13) an 14) the 15) the 16) an 17) a

EXERCISE -5

1. He reads _____ Bible everyday.
 2. Frank is _____ American but Robinson is _____ European.
 3. _____ Ganga is a holy river.
 4. _____ stitch in time saves nine.
 5. He has _____ ulcer on his leg.
 6. The Pacific is _____ ocean.
 7. There is _____ ox under the tree.
 8. I saw _____ one-eyed beggar.
 9. We should help _____ poor.
 10. This is _____ university.
 11. _____ Himalayas lie to the north of India.
 12. _____ Nile is long river.
 13. It is _____ historic occasion.
 14. _____ darkest cloud has _____ silver lining.

ANSWERS

- 1) the 2) an/a 3) The 4) A 5) an 6) an 7) an 8) a 9) the 10) a 11) The
 12) The 13) a 14) The, a

TEST - 1

Find the correct article for the following sentence

- We are studying _____ English.
 a) a b) an c) the d) no article
- I met him at _____ church.
 a) a b) an c) the d) no article
- Mr. Rao became _____ priciple of the college in 2005.
 a) a b) an c) the d) no article
- How blue _____ sky looks !
 a) a b) an c) the d) no article
- The musician was _____ old Musalman.
 a) a b) an c) the d) no article
- Yesterday _____ European called at my office.
 a) a b) an c) the d) no article

7. I was invited by ____ Reddys.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
8. ____ living dog is better than a dead lion.
a) A b) An c) The d) No article
9. He turned towards me with ____ cheerful look.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
10. ____ cement is used for building houses.
a) A b) An c) The d) No article
11. It was ____ coldest and driest day.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
12. ____ action will be taken against him.
a) A b) An c) The d) No article
13. January is ____ first month of the year.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
14. The sun rises in ____ east.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
15. Mount Everest is ____ highest peak in the world.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
16. It is ____ best of five matches.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
17. It was ____ unique choice.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
18. Poetry is ____ essence of humanity.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
19. Krishna is considered to be ____ ideal student.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
20. He has joined ____ three year course.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
21. Of Delhi and Mumbai, which is ____ hotter?
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
22. ____ little knowledge is a dangerous thing.
a) A b) An c) The d) No article
23. Among the politicians, who could be called ____ most honest?
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
24. ____ craftiness is essential for a politician.
a) A b) An c) The d) No article
25. He has been causing trouble since ____ day he came.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
26. ____ elephant is a huge animal
a) A b) An c) The d) No article
27. ____ earth goes round the sun.
a) A b) An c) The d) No article
28. It is ____ historical novel.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50.

90. _____ virtue is its own reward.
a) A b) An c) The d) No article
91. _____ Eskimos make houses of snow and ice.
a) A b) An c) The d) No article
92. When will _____ father be back?
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
93. It was _____ proudest moment of my life.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
94. What _____ beautiful scene this is!
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
95. He neglects attending church, though _____ church is only a few yards from his house.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
96. He is _____ M.P.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
97. There are hundred centimeters in _____ metre.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
98. I saw _____ book on the table.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
99. He is writing on _____ paper with a pen.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
100. He is _____ Ex.MLA.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
101. The harder you work, _____ better it will be.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
102. We can buy oranges by _____ dozen.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
103. _____ beauty is admired by all.
a) A b) An c) The d) No article
104. _____ beauty of Nur Jahan is famous all over the world.
a) A b) An c) The d) No article
105. He is a good poet but not _____ Shakespeare.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
106. I found _____ one rupee note.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
107. _____ Himalayas lie to the North of India.
a) A b) An c) The d) No article
108. _____ Cotton grows in India, America and Egypt.
a) A b) An c) The d) No article
109. He is not _____ honourable man.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
110. Have you ever seen _____ elephant?
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
111. His uncle is still in _____ hospital.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

TEST - 2

Find the correct article for the following sentence

1. _____ wisdom is the gift of Heaven.
a) A b) An c) The d) None
2. Mumbai is _____ very dear place.
1. a 2. an 3. the 4. none
3. She is _____ untidy girl.
1. a 2. an 3. the 4. none
4. The children found _____ egg.
1. a 2. an 3. the 4. none
5. Sanskrit is _____ difficult language.
1. a 2. an 3. the 4. none
6. You are _____ fool to say that.
1. a 2. an 3. the 4. none
7. Which is _____ longest river in India ?
1. a 2. an 3. the 4. none
8. He has come without _____ umbrella.
1. a 2. an 3. the 4. none
9. Benares is _____ holy city.
1. a 2. an 3. the 4. none
10. Aladdin had _____ wonderful lamp.
1. a 2. an 3. the 4. none
11. The world is _____ happy place.
1. a 2. an 3. the 4. none
12. He returned after _____ hour.
1. a 2. an 3. the 4. none
13. Rustum is _____ young Parsee.
1. a 2. an 3. the 4. none
14. Draw _____ map of India.
1. a 2. an 3. the 4. none
15. Her eldest boy is at _____ college.
1. a 2. an 3. the 4. none
16. I can't remember _____ date of storm.
1. a 2. an 3. the 4. none
17. _____ apples are sold by _____ pound.
1. A, none 2. An, a 3. None, the 4. None, a
18. It is quite _____ nice house.
1. a 2. an 3. the 4. none
19. _____ Nile is a long river.
1. a 2. an 3. the 4. none
20. He has been suffering for _____ last two days.
1. a 2. an 3. the 4. none

- | | | | | |
|--|---------------|--------------|------------|-------------|
| 15. We must attend upon _____ sick. | 1. a | 2. an | 3. the | 4. none |
| 16. _____ knowledge of Macaulay is good. | 1. a | 2. an | 3. the | 4. none |
| 17. _____ writing of that man is good. | 1. a | 2. an | 3. the | 4. none |
| 18. He broke _____ leg in _____ skying accident. | 1. a, the | 2. an, the | 3. the, a | 4. none |
| 19. I am having _____ few friends. | 1. a | 2. an | 3. the | 4. none |
| 20. Many _____ fool thinks he is wise. | 1. a | 2. an | 3. the | 4. none |
| 21. My brother is _____ engineer. | 1. a | 2. an | 3. the | 4. none |
| 22. _____ book you want is out of print. | 1. a | 2. an | 3. the | 4. none |
| 23. At last _____ warrior in him was aroused. | 1. a | 2. an | 3. the | 4. none |
| 24. This is _____ best book. | 1. a | 2. an | 3. the | 4. none |
| 25. He was _____ first man to arrive. | 1. a | 2. an | 3. the | 4. none |
| 26. He can play _____ flute. | 1. a | 2. an | 3. the | 4. none |
| 27. I first meet him _____ year ago. | 1. a | 2. an | 3. the | 4. none |
| 28. Yesterday _____ European called at my office. | 1. a | 2. an | 3. the | 4. none |
| 29. _____ more they get, _____ more they want. | 1. A, a | 2. The, the | 3. A, the | 4. The, a |
| 30. _____ bird in hand is worth two in _____ bush. | 1. A, the | 2. The, a | 3. A, a | 4. The, the |
| 31. _____ pupil should obey his teacher. | 1. a | 2. an | 3. the | 4. none |
| 32. _____ gold is _____ precious metal. | 1. None, None | 2. None, the | 3. None, a | 4. A, none |
| 33. This is _____ only medicine available. | 1. a | 2. an | 3. the | 4. none |
| 34. He called me from _____ distance. | 1. a | 2. an | 3. the | 4. none |

One underlined article in the following sentences is wrong. Find out the correct Article.

41. They wanted an information.
1. the 2. an 3. some 4. a piece of information
42. The machine is made of a copper and the steel.
1. a, a 2. the, a 3. the, the 4. x, x
43. He bought the ox, an horse and the buffalo.
1. a, the, a 2. an, a, a 3. the, a, the 4. the, the, the
44. She met with a accident.
1. an 2. the 3. a 4. no article
45. It is a very hot today.
1. a 2. the 3. an 4. no article

Which of the following is correct as per the rules of articles

46. 1. The more I hear pop music, the less I like it.
2. The more I hear pop music, less I like it.
3. A more I hear pop music, the less I like it.
4. More I hear pop music, less I like it.
47. 1. Honest men never tell the lies. 2. Honest men never tell a lies.
3. Honest men never tell lies. 4. Honest men never tell an lies.
48. 1. The French is easy language. 2. The French is an easy language
3. French is the easy language. 4. French is an easy language.
49. 1. The bird in the hand is worth two in an bush.
2. An bird in the hand is worth two in a bush.
3. A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush.
4. A bird in the hand is worth two in a bush.
50. 1. An happy man leads the happy life. 2. A happy man leads a happy life.
3. An happy man leads the happy life. 4. The happy man leads a happy life.

ANSWERS TEST - 1

1.d 2.c 3.d 4.c 5.b 6.a 7.c 8.a 9.a 10.d 11.c 12.b 13.c 14.c 15.c 16.d 17.a 18.c 19.b
20.a 21.c 22.a 23.c 24.d 25.c 26.c 27.c 28.b 29.d 30.c 31.d 32.c 33.a 34.c 35.b
36.a 37.a 38.a 39.b 40.c 41.c 42.d 43.c 44.a 45.a 46.c 47.d 48.b 49.b 50.c

ANSWERS TEST - 2

1.4 2.1 3.2 4.2 5.1 6.1 7.3 8.2 9.1 10.1 11.1 12.2 13.1 14.3 15.4 16.3 17.3 18.1 19.3
20.3 21.3 22.3 23.3 24.1 25.1 26.1 27.2 28.3 29.3 30.3 31.3 32.3 33.1 34.1 35.2 36.1
37.1 38.3 39.3 40.1 41.4 42.4 43.2 44.1 45.1 46.1 47.3 48.4 49.3 50.2

OBJECTIVE TYPE QUESTIONS

1. Copper is _____ useful metal.
1. a 2. an 3. the 4. none
2. He is not _____ honourable man.
1. the 2. a 3. an 4. none
3. Varanasi is _____ holy city.
1. a 2. an 3. the 4. no article
4. Honest man speak _____ truth.
1. an 2. a 3. the 4. no article
5. Allauddin had _____ wonderful lamp.
1. a 2. an 3. the 4. no article
6. _____ able man has not always a distinguished look.
1. an 2. a 3. the 4. no article
7. _____ reindeer is a native of Norway.
1. the 2. a 3. an 4. no article
8. Rustum is _____ young parsee.
1. a 2. an 3. the 4. no article
9. Do you see _____ blue sky?
1. a 2. an 3. the 4. no article
10. The world is _____ happy place.
1. a 2. an 3. the 4. no article
11. He returned after _____ hour.
1. a 2. an 3. the 4. no article
12. _____ school will shortly close for the pongal holidays.
1. a 2. an 3. the 4. no article
13. _____ Sun shines brightly.
1. a 2. an 3. the 4. no article
14. I first met him _____ year ago.
1. a 2. an 3. the 4. no article
15. Yesterday _____ european called at my office.
1. a 2. an 3. the 4. no article
16. Sanskrit is _____ difficult language.
1. a 2. an 3. the 4. no article
17. _____ Ganga is _____ sacred river.
1. a, an 2. the, an 3. the, a 4. the, the
18. _____ lion is _____ king of beasts.
1. a, an 2. an, a 3. the, a 4. the, the
19. You are _____ fool to say that.
1. a 2. an 3. the 4. no article
20. French is _____ easy language.
1. a 2. an 3. the 4. no article
21. Who is _____ girl sitting there?
1. a 2. an 3. the 4. no article

22. Which is _____ longest river in India?
 1. a 2. an 3. the 4. no article
23. Rama has come with out _____ Umbrella.
 1. a 2. an 3. the 4. no article
24. Mumbai is _____ very costly place to live in.
 1. a 2. an 3. the 4. no article

ANSWERS

1.1 2.3 3.1 4.4 5.1 6.1 7.1 8.1 9.1 10.1 11.2 12.3 13.3 14.1 15.1 16.1 17.3
 18.4 19.1 20.2 21.3 22.3 23.2 24.1

FILL IN THE BLANKS WITH SUITABLE ARTICLE:-

- His brother is _____ real Hercules. 2. Leela is _____ ugly girl.
- _____ horse is _____ useful animal.
- _____ largest city in _____ India is _____ Kolkata.
- _____ Everest is _____ highest peak in _____ Himalayas.
- Sumith is _____ Austrilian.
- What _____ beautiful shirt it is made of _____ silk.
- _____ wisdom is better than riches.
- Bombay is _____ Manchester of India.
- There is _____ public meeting in _____ city hall.
- _____ Kalidas is _____ Shakespeare of India.
- After _____ year or two _____ question can be reconsidered.
- _____ Iron is heavier than _____ wood.
- She sent _____ word to her brother.
- He takes rest at _____ noon.
- _____ more one has _____ more one wants.
- Call him to _____ dinner.
- She became _____ actress.
- _____ English is _____ difficult language.
- _____ Licoln was _____ nobelman.
- We should help _____ blind.
- John is _____ honest businessman.
- Copper is _____ useful metal.
- Honesty is _____ best policy.
- Honest men speak _____ truth.
- Benares is _____ holy city.
- The little boy likes _____ apple.
- I have not met him since he was _____ child.
- _____ stone was lying on _____ road.
- _____ birds fly in _____ sky.
- _____ water is precious. Don't waste it.
- _____ Music can change our lives.

33. I don't like _____ way he's playing with us.
34. Shiva is _____ vegetarian. He does not eat _____ meat.
35. Do you drink _____ milk in _____ morning.
36. She bought _____ XL 150 Scooter.
37. The president suspended _____ M.P.
38. Sita was _____ accountant during 2001-2003.
39. Vijay is _____ oldest boy in the class.
40. _____ Deccan Chronicle is _____ popular news paper.
41. Once upon _____ time there lived _____ king.
42. Ramesh is _____ best worker in the factory.
43. _____ man you are talking about is my uncle.
44. They are in _____ small hut.
45. The naxalite used _____ automatic Pistol.
46. _____ Titanic collided with _____ ice breg.
47. He is too silly _____ guy to avoid the work.
48. That was _____ inhcxplicable experience.
49. Veerappan was _____ notorious decoit.
50. He gets _____ honarorium.
51. We want _____ help of _____ few volunteers.
52. There is _____ historic occasion.
53. _____ Amazon is _____ longest river in _____ world.
54. He reads _____ Bible every day.
55. He has been appointed for _____ year in the first instance.
56. There was _____ ugly scar on _____ face of _____ prisoner.
57. A contest in _____ Presidential elections appears inevitable.
58. They are different from _____ rest.
59. She found _____ egg in the nest.
60. I saw _____ orphen boy.
61. He feels that he is _____ Tendulkar.
62. I saw _____ accident, on _____ Road.
63. Mussolini was _____ Hitler of Italy.
64. _____ higher you climb _____ cooler it gets.
65. There was _____ ugly, scar on _____ face of _____ prisoner.
66. We should have compassion for _____ poor.
67. This diagram shows _____ classification.
68. Think of all _____ different kinds of workers.
69. He can play _____ guitar very well.
70. This is _____ book I want.

Practice Test :

1. He has joined in _____ three years course. []
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
2. Of Delhi and Mumbai, which is _____ hotter? []
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
3. _____ little knowledge is a dangerous thing. []
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
4. Among the politicians, who could be called _____ most honest. []
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
5. _____ craftiness is essential for a politician. []
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
6. Queen Elizabeth is not _____ richest of all persons on the earth. []
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
7. It was _____ unique choice. []
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
8. Poetry _____ essence of humanity. []
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
9. Krishna is considered to be _____ ideal student. []
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
10. _____ living dog is better than a dead lion. []
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
11. He turned towards me with _____ cheerful looks. []
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
12. _____ cement is used for building houses. []
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
13. It was _____ coldest and driest day. []
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
14. _____ action will be taken against him. []
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
15. January is _____ first month of the year. []
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
16. The sun rises in _____ East. []
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
17. Mount Everest is _____ highest peak in the world. []
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
18. It is _____ best of five matches. []
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
19. Tendulkar is _____ better batsman than bowler. []
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
20. _____ Pen and the gun have their own merits. []
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
21. He has been causing trouble since _____ day he came. []
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

- | | | | | |
|---|------|-------|--------|---------------|
| 22. _____ elephant is a huge animal. | a) a | b) an | c) the | d) no article |
| 23. _____ Earth goes round the Sun. | a) a | b) an | c) the | d) no article |
| 24. It is _____ historical novel. | a) a | b) an | c) the | d) no article |
| 25. _____ virtue is its own reward. | a) a | b) an | c) the | d) no article |
| 26. _____ Eskimos make houses of snow and ice. | a) a | b) an | c) the | d) no article |
| 27. When will _____ father be back? | a) a | b) an | c) the | d) no article |
| 28. It was _____ proudest moment of my life. | a) a | b) an | c) the | d) no article |
| 29. What _____ beautiful scene this is! | a) a | b) an | c) the | d) no article |
| 30. He neglects attending church, though _____ church is only a few yards from his house. | a) a | b) an | c) the | d) no article |

1. The first part of the text discusses the importance of education in the development of a nation. It states that education is the key to progress and that a well-educated population is essential for a country to become a developed nation. The text also mentions that education helps in the formation of a citizenry and that it is a fundamental right of every individual.

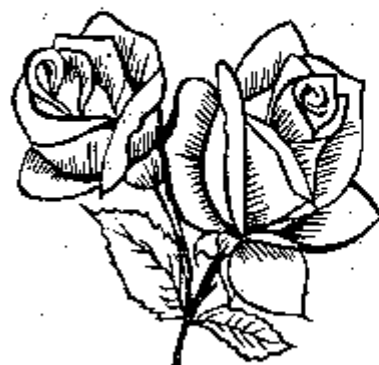
2. The second part of the text talks about the role of the government in providing education. It states that the government has a responsibility to ensure that every child has access to quality education. This can be achieved by increasing the budget for education, improving the infrastructure of schools, and training teachers. The text also mentions that the government should encourage private education and should ensure that it is regulated and monitored.

3. The third part of the text discusses the challenges faced by the education system. It states that there is a shortage of teachers, especially in rural areas. There is also a lack of infrastructure, such as classrooms and laboratories. The text also mentions that the quality of education is often poor, and that there is a need for reforms in the curriculum and the assessment system.

4. The fourth part of the text talks about the future of education. It states that with the advancement of technology, there are many opportunities to improve the education system. For example, online education can provide quality education to students in remote areas. The text also mentions that there is a need for a focus on vocational education and skill development, as this will help in the creation of jobs and the growth of the economy.

INDEX

| | |
|---------------------------|---------|
| Prepositions | 163-192 |
| Degrees of Comparison | 193-204 |
| Clauses Phrases Sentences | 205-222 |
| Types of Sentences | 223-230 |
| Simple Complex Compound | 230-247 |
| Letter Writing | 248-256 |
| Comprehension Passage | 257-274 |
| Composition | 275-279 |
| Vocabulary | 280-315 |
| Key | 316-326 |





333333

19

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

333333

PREPOSITIONS

STRUCTURE

Objectives : After going through this lesson, you will be able to :

- (1) know about prepositions which show relationship between words in sentences and their usage in daily life.
- (2) know about conjunctions which connect words, phrases, clauses and sentences and their usage in daily life.

A. PREPOSITIONS

Introduction : Our English is judged by the prepositions we use. Prepositions are key words in sentences. They like articles, are structural words. To know them in detail has many difficulties, since many prepositions function in different ways. Certain verbs and adjectives take preposition after them. They are also used to serve a variety of purposes as adverbs, as conjunctions, and as nominalized phrases. They are small words and occur as single words or groups before a noun, a pronoun or a gerund. Some times they are separated from their object and occur at end position. They pose a problem to the foreign learners and need a careful observation and practice.

Preposition : It is a word placed before a noun or pronoun to show its relation to some other word in the sentence.

Eg : The pen on the table.

She is in the house.

Prepositional phrase : The preposition along with its object is called a prepositional phrase. It has the following structure - preposition + noun phrase.

Eg : on the roof, in the desk, at the party.

The preposition is the 'head' of the phrase, the following noun or pronoun is the object of the preposition. It is always in the objective case. Sometimes a preposition comes after the word which it governs.

Eg : What are you thinking of?

Who did you give the book to?

I found her with him,

He gave the book to me.

Kinds of prepositions : Prepositions are broadly divided into 4 kinds -

1. Simple prepositions.
2. Compound prepositions.
3. Phrase prepositions/ Complex prepositions.
4. Participial prepositions :

(1) Simple Prepositions :

Eg : At, by, for, from, in, of, off, on, out, to, till, up, with through.

(2) Compound Preposition :

They are generally formed by prefixing a Preposition (a=on, be=by) to a Noun or an Adjective or an Adverb.

Eg : Above, about, across, along, amidst, among, around, before, behind, below, beneath, beside, between, beyond, inside, outside, within, without.

- (3) **Phrase Prepositions** : They are groups of words used with the force of a single preposition.

Eg :

| | | |
|--------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| according to | for the sake of | in order to |
| along with | except for | in favour |
| apart from | in accordance with | in place of |
| away from | | in spite of |
| because of | on behalf of | owing to |
| by dint of | in case of | with a view to |
| by means of | in course of | with reference to |
| by virtue of | in comparison to | with regard to |
| by way of | in consequence of | instead of |

- (4) **Participial prepositions** : Some present participles which will do the functions of prepositions in sentences are called the 'participial prepositions'.

Eg : regarding (a discussion regarding the proposal), pending (an order pending enquiry), concerning (a report concerning the paper leakage), and the other participial prepositions are barring, considering, during, excepting, including, notwithstanding etc.

Meaning of Prepositions : Prepositions have both "a local" or literal and a figurative or metaphorical meaning.

- (i) **The Local meaning** : It expresses relations in space and time, movement on position of an object.

Eg : (1) The show begins at 6.30 p.m and it lasts till 9.00 p.m (time)
 (2) He went to the office and returned from the office (movement)
 (3) The book is on the table (position)

- (ii) **Metaphysical meaning** : It has inner implied meaning :

Eg : (1) Mary is in a fix (confusion)
 (2) The hut is on fire (burnt)
 (3) I am going through the book (reading)
 (4) She fell into trouble (difficulties)

Differentiating Prepositions from other Parts of Speech :

Many prepositions such as after, but, for, and since are also used as other parts of speech, adverbs, adjectives, or conjunctions, e.g., after

1. They came out one after another. (Preposition)
2. We slept after dinner. (Preposition)
3. Jill came after. (Adverb)
4. They lived happily ever after. (Adverb)
5. The after dinner speeches were dull. (Adjective)
6. She came after I had left. (Conjunction)

The prepositional phrases in the above can be identified by their structure of prep+(pro) noun as in 1, 2, 5 and 6.

Position of prepositions :

1. A preposition is usually placed before the noun or the noun phrase it governs.

Ex : He is in the room.

They are at the market.

2. A preposition is placed after the infinitive.

Ex : This is a good pen to write with.

This is a good hotel to stay at.

3. A preposition can occur at the end of a relative clause or question.

Ex : This is the book that I asked for.

What is she looking at ?

4. Sometimes prepositions can be placed at the beginning of some questions.

Ex : With whom did he go to the market ?

For which bus are you waiting ?

5. When the indirect object comes after the direct object, a preposition is placed before the indirect object.

Ex : I sent a present to my brother.

Note : present - direct object
 to - preposition
 my brother - indirect object

6. When the indirect object comes before the direct object, a preposition is not necessary.

Ex : I sent my brother a present.

He lent me some money.

Objects of Prepositions :

1. Nouns as objects

Ex : There is a book on the table.

The boys are playing in the garden.

2. Infinitives as objects

Ex : The match is about to start.

The chief guest is about to begin his speech.

3. Gerunds as objects

Ex : She is fond of reading novels.

He is good at hunting.

4. Adverbs and adverbial phrases as objects

Ex : The train starts from here.

I waited for some time.

He was here till a few minutes ago.

5. A clause as object

Eg : Listen to what I say.

This is the book about which he was telling us yesterday.

Classification :

Prepositions express a wide range of meaning and the same preposition performs quite a few functions. But we can define some of the relations indicated by them.

- (a) Time
- (b) Place
- (c) Agency and Instrumentality
- (d) Motion and Direction
- (e) Possession
- (f) Causes, Reason and Purpose

(a) Prepositions of Time :

- at He gets up at 5 'O' clock.
- on I will come on Sunday.
- in You can meet the officer in the evening
- during Boys are happy during holidays
- for He has been working here for five years.
- by Submit your application by next Monday.
- before Post this letter before 5 'O' clock.
- within You must pay the fees within a week.
- since He has been ready since morning.
- till You have time till Tuesday.
- after He left for Madras after his father's death.

(b) Prepositions of Place:

- at I met him at the market.
- in Jhon lived in New York.
- on London is on the Thames.
- besides She sat besides me.
- by He stood by the temple.
- against He was learning against the wall.
- between Copal stood between Hari and Ramu.
- up He climbed up the ladder.
- towards He traveled towards Madras
- over He held the umbrella over his head.

(c) Prepositions of Agency and Instrumentality:

- by He sent the parcel by post.
- The thief was arrested by the police.
- with He felled the tree with an axe.
- through He heard the news through a friend.

(d) Prepositions of Motion and Direction:

- into She came into the room.
- out of He walked out of the room.
- about The tourist went about the city.
- round The earth moves round the sun.
- to He is going to Madras.

(c) **Preposition of Possession:**

- by There was no money by her.
 with I saw a boy with red hair.
 of He is the king of Persia.

(d) **Preposition of Cause, Reason and Purpose:**

- For He worked for the good of humanity.
 He took medicine for a cold.
 From She suffers from fever.
 Of He died of cholera.
 Through He lost his money through negligence.

Use of certain simple and compound prepositions:**'At' is used**

- (a) for a certain point in time.
at 3.45 p.m., at noon, at midnight, at night, at the end of the play, at the beginning of the lesson.
- (b) for festivals which mark a point in the year.
at Christmas, at Easter, at Diwali, at the New Year.
- (c) for age.
at sixteen, at seventeen.
- (d) for a state or condition at rest, at war, at peace.
- (e) for rate.
at twenty rupees a dozen.
at a loss, at a profit, at cost.
- (f) for activity.
at work, at play, at dinner.
- (g) for a place.
at the market, at college, at the meeting.
- (h) for a particular house or place or residence.
He stayed at Apsara hotel.
The Prime Minister lives at No. 1, Safdarjung road.
- (i) for villages and smaller towns.
Shakespeare was born at Stratford-on-Avon.
- (j) For a particular place of work.
John works at the Public Library.
Gopi works at the General Hospital.
- (k) For expressing motion towards something.
Throw stones at somebody, shoot at the birds, rush at the enemy.
- (l) In certain expressions.
Good at chess, clever in maths, at all times, at last, at first etc.

'In' is used

- (a) to indicate a period of time.
In 1994, in summer, in the morning.
- (b) To show the total length of time taken for the completion of an activity.
The horse ran the distance in two minutes.

- (c) To indicate the kind of place when the reference is general and no specific place is named.
He spent the summer in the country.
Most people like to live in cities.
- (d) For names of countries, continents, large areas, capital cities and large towns.
They live in America.
Thomas lives in London.
- (e) For residence when no specific place is mentioned.
in a bungalow, in a mansion, in a modern house, in a hotel, in a flat.
- (f) For places of work (if it is a building)
John works in a bank.
Ravi works in a shop.
- (g) For dress
She was dressed in silk.
The officer came in disguise.
- (h) For circumstances, surroundings, conditions
Go out in the rain, stand in the sun, in sorrow, in tears
- (i) It is used in the following expressions :
write in ink, in fact, in any case, in truth, speak in English, be in a hurry, in addition to, in the circumstances.

'On' is used

- (a) for a specific day (i) date, (ii) day of the week, (iii) special day
Indira Gandhi was born on November 19th, 1917.
I will come on Monday.
We went to London on Christmas day.
- (b) for a specific part of any day.
They came here on Friday afternoon.
He left for Madras on the night of August 4th.
- (c) to indicate position in relation to another object.
The book is on the table.
The boy sat on the bench.
- (d) to indicate membership
John is on the committee, (a member of the committee)
- (e) for cause of something
There is no tax on printed books.
He acted on my advice.
(similarly on this account, arrest on a charge)
- (f) condition
Vinoba went to Hyderabad on foot.
He is on duty
(similarly on holiday, on sale, on fire etc.)
- (g) with the sense 'about!' 'concerning'

Speak on India's foreign policy

Write on Milton

Note: If a noun giving a time is preceded by an adjective, the preposition is not used.

She met me last Sunday. (not on last Sunday)

She will be sixteen next December (not in next December)

Similarly every morning, every week, next week, next month, next year, next Sunday, next Christmas, last Christmas.

But, though we say next Monday, if we reverse the order of the noun and the adjective, we have to use 'on'.

On Sunday next, On Monday next.

No preposition is used before yesterday, today and tomorrow.

I will meet you tomorrow (not on tomorrow)

Mary met John yesterday (not on yesterday)

Gopi will come today. (not on today)

(Similarly yesterday afternoon, yesterday evening, yesterday morning, a week ago)

A note on 'on', 'in', and 'at'

(1) On time, in time

On time = at the time arranged, not before, not after

The 9.30 bus started on time. It started at 9.30.

In time = not late

The passengers should be in time for their bus.

(2) At the beginning, in the beginning

At the beginning = exactly at the beginning

At the beginning of the book you find a table of contents.

In the beginning = in the early stages.

It implies that later on there was a change.

In the beginning our company had a scooter. Later we had a car.

(3) At the end, in the end

at the end = exactly at the end

At the end of the book there is the index.

In the end = after sometime (eventually)

At first he did not like to work here but in the end he changed his mind.

'By' is used

(a) to mean near, at the side of

Come and sit by me

(b) in the passive voice

The snake was killed by him.

(c) in the sense of 'during'

He travels by night.

Look for me by moonlight.

- (d) to denote the latest time by which something is to be done.
The work should be finished by next Sunday.
You must be home by 8 'O' clock.
- (e) for mode of travel.
By bus, by train.
- (f) in the sense of past (passing by).
She goes by my college daily.
- (g) in the sense of, because of.
By his rash actions he invites many troubles.
- (h) through the means of / in the manner or method of.
an engine driven by electricity, a city destroyed by an earthquake, making living by teaching.

'Of' is used

- (a) to express cause.
She died of fever.
- (b) To indicate relief or deprivation.
He was cured of fever.
- (c) To express partition or measure.
One of my friends is in Bombay.
I want a sheet of paper.
(similarly a piece of, some of, many of, a metre of, a kilo of).
- (d) To express relation or possession.
fear of war, writer of books, the death of a leader, the poems of Wordsworth.
- (e) To form adjectival phrases.
A man of ability (an able man); a deed of courage (a courageous deed);
a story of adventure (an adventure-telling story).
- (f) With the sense 'called'.
The city of Bombay; the Isle of Wight.
- (g) To denote a subjective relation.
The death of Gandhi; the works of Shakespeare.
- (h) With the meaning 'about', 'concerning'.
News of success; tell someone of an event.
- (i) In such constructions as :
How stupid of me to forget it.

'For' is used

- (a) to show the lapse of time.
It rained for three hours.
I have not seen her for a week.
- (b) to express purpose/ aim.
He shouted for help.
Let us go for a walk.

- (c) to indicate direction/destination.
They started for Madras.
We sailed for Ceylon.
- (d) to express cause.
It is for this reason he came here.
I want some money for my pocket expenses.
- (e) after anxious, fit, inclined, ready.
He is anxious for promotion.
- (f) in the sense of (in place of).
He will act for you.
Margarine is a substitute for butter.
- (g) 'For' has various other uses.
He asked for twenty rupees.
She paid ten rupees for the ticket.
I left it for you.
- (h) in the sense 'in spite of'.
For all her wealth, she is unhappy.
- (i) In some expressions.
Trust for knowledge, good for your health, suffer for one's sins.

'To' is used

- (a) to express motion (in the direction of).
Come to me.
Let us go to the park.
- (b) to indicate direction.
He turned his chair to the sun.
They walked to the park.
(similarly - to the right of me, to the left of him, to the north of the Himalayas)
- (c) to indicate extent.
The national debt runs to thousands of crores of rupees.
- (d) to express the ideas of comparison and reference.
Ten to one he will get success.
India won by six goals to three.
- (e) To indicate time.
Five to ten, two minutes to five.

'From' is used

- (a) The starting point (place).
From the top, from Delhi to Hyderabad.
- (b) The starting of a period of time.
From her childhood, from beginning to end.
- (c) The giver or the sender.
From my brother, from her father.

- (d) The source.
From the well, from Milton.
- (e) Reason/cause.
From starvation, from what we hear.

Towards

Towards means in the direction of but not necessarily reaching a place.
He walked towards the bus stand.
(It means he walked in the direction of the bus stand).

Along

Along means in the direction of or the length of.
He walked along the road.

Against

Against denotes opposition of some kind.
One should not act against the orders.

Beyond

Beyond means out of.
This is beyond my understanding.

Through

Through denotes across the interior of anything.
She has passed through many troubles.
That is the mountain through which a tunnel is being bored.

Than

Than is usually a conjunction but it is sometimes used as a preposition.
He does not accept less than five hundred rupees for his radio.
I speak of Milton than whom there is no one greater as an epic poet.

But

But is a conjunction. When used as a preposition it means 'except'.
None but the brave deserve the fair.
He solved all the problems but one.

Across: Movement from one side of a line or surface to the other.

Eg: We walked across the road.
He drew a line across the map.

within: Before the end of a certain period.

Eg: Within two days,
Within a month etc.

Till/Until: to mark the end of a period.

Eg: I shall be here till 8 A.M.
He will not come home till 9 P.M.

During : Event through something from the beginning to end.

Eg : A noise during the night.

About : Relates to the subject matter of thought, speech, feeling etc., The common verbs are argue, complain, joke, speak, worry, boast, dream, quarrel, talk, writer, and adjectives angry, anxious, happy, excited etc.

- By : They are arguing about art.
 We are happy about the result.
 Don't worry about health.

As : relates to the function which something performs or the role it plays.
 Eg : As a lawyer, he is a flop.

Over : is used in the sense of about.

Eg : The three sisters quarrelled over the division of property.

It is used in the sense of Above.

Eg : The plane flew over the building.

After : In the sense of later in time than

Eg : The guests sang songs after the dinner.

In the sense of resemble.

Eg : She takes after her father.

Above : 'Above' is used in the sense of

- higher than
above the clouds, above a captain
- more than
above all, above life

Against : 'Against' is used to indicate

- opposition : against the proposal, against time.
- support : against the wall, against the tree.

Amidst : Amidst means in the middle of and it indicates quality.

He entered the town amidst great joy.

Around : 'Around' is used in the sense of 'on every side' all around, around a lot.

Before : 'Before' is used in the sense of.

- earlier than.
before Monday, the year before last.
- in front of (with reference to order or arrangement).
April comes before May.
Her name comes before yours.

Behind : 'Behind' is used in the sense of.

- to the rear of / hidden.
behind a tree, behind the clouds.
- not having made so much progress as others'.
behind other students, behind her neighbours.
- remaining after leaving a place / death.
debts behind him, destruction behind it.

Below : 'Below' is used in the sense of.

- lower than.
below the knees, below the horizon.
- unworthy of (replacement by beneath).
below the dignity.

Beyond : 'Beyond' is used in the sense of.

- (a) the farther side of (distance).
beyond the bridge, beyond the state boundary.
- (b) later than (time).
beyond nine, beyond the present.
- (c) out of reach of (exceeding).
beyond all our hopes, beyond all praise.

Off : 'Off' is used in the sense of 'away from'.

Fall off a tree.
A lane off the main road.

Out : 'Out' is used in the sense of 'away from'.

out of date, out of town, out of fashion, out of control.

Outside : 'outside' is used in the sense of.

- a) at
outside the house, outside the compound.
- b) beyond the limits of
outside the evidence, outside his office work.

Till (until) : 'Till / until' is used to refer to 'upto the time'.

Till ten, until ten.

Under : Represents vertically below.

The book is under the table.
He sat under a tree.

Up : 'Up' is used to indicate 'to a higher place'.

up the mountain, up the road.

Without : 'Without' is used in the sense of 'not having' or 'free from'.

without ticket, without being caught.

Prepositions often confused

By, with : 'By' is used to indicate the agent of an action; 'with' indicates the instrument.

The tree was cut by him with an axe.

In, Into : 'In' signifies that something is within something else.

'Into' signifies motion or direction to a point.

He jumped into the well.

The frog lived in the well.

Beside, besides : 'Beside' means by the side of.

He sat beside his friend.

'Besides' means in addition to.

He has many problems besides this.

Between, among :

'Between' is used when we refer to two persons or things.

I stood between John and Smith.

'Among' is used when we refer to more than two persons or things.

The boys quarreled among themselves.

For, Since :

'For' is used for a period of time.

He has been waiting for three hours.

'Since' is used for a point in time.

He has been waiting since 7 'O'clock.

From Since

'From' is used for both time and place. It can indicate time in both past and future.

He came from the college (place).

He waited here from 8 'O' clock to 10 'O' clock. (time).

'Since' is used to indicate a time from the past, till now.

It is used with the perfect tense and the perfect continuous tense.

I have known him since 1970.

He has been working here since 1980.

In - At

'In' is used before cities, states, countries, continents and large areas.

'At' is used before villages and small towns.

at Tambaram in Madras

at Uppal in Hyderabad

In - Within

'In' refers to 'at the end of the time'

'Within' refers to 'before the end of the time'

in an hour within an hour

in ten days within ten days

Till - To

'Till' is used to indicate 'time'

'To' is used to refer to 'place'

till Monday to the park

till then to the end of the street.

Some words require specific Prepositions to connect them with the noun or pronoun that follows them. Such combinations have to be committed to memory since they are not governed by any rules. Some of them are given below :

1. Accede to - He *acceded to* my request.
2. Accuse of - He was *accused of* murder.
3. Act upon - He *acted upon* my advice.
4. Addicted to - He is *addicted to* gambling.

5. Admit to - He was *admitted to* the 9th class.
6. Afraid of - I am not *afraid of* death.
7. Agree with, on - We all *agree with* you on this point.
8. Agree to - Do you *agree to* this proposal?
9. Angry with - He is *angry with* me.
10. Angry at - The teacher was *angry at* your misconduct.
11. Apologize to, for - He *apologized to* me *for* his rude behaviour.
12. Appeal to, for - He *appealed to* the judge for mercy.
13. Apply to, for - He *applied to* the headmaster for leave.
14. Arrive at - He *arrived at* Jalandhar at 6 'O'clock.
15. Ashamed of - He feels *ashamed of* his conduct.
16. Astonished at - I was *astonished at* his failure.
17. Attend on - You should *attend on* your ailing mother.
18. Attend to - *Attend to* your lesson.
19. Avail of - *Avail* yourself of this opportunity.
20. Aware of - I am *aware of* my shortcomings.
21. Believe in - I do not *believe in* ghosts.
22. Belong to - He *belongs to* a rich family.
23. Bent on - He is *bent on* mischief.
24. Beware of - *Beware of* thieves.
25. Blind of - The beggar was *blind of* one eye.
26. Blind to - You are *blind to* your shortcomings.
27. Boast of - Do not *boast of* your riches.
28. Born in - He was *born in* a poor family.
29. Born of - She was *born of* rich parents.
30. Born to - A son was *born to* her.
31. Borrow from - I *borrowed* a book *from* my friend.
32. Busy with - I was *busy with* my work.
33. Call at - I *called at* his house this morning.
34. Call on - Tomorrow I shall *call on* you.
35. Care for - He does not *care for* his studies.
36. Collide with - My cycle *collided with* a tonga.
37. Complain of - She *complains of* headache.
38. Complain against, to - I *complained against* him *to* the officer.
39. Confidence in - I have no *confidence in* you.
40. Confident of - He is *confident of* his success.
41. Congratulate on - I *congratulate* you *on* your success.

42. **Consist of** - The class *consists of* forty boys.
43. **Cure of** - The doctor *cured* him *of* his disease.
44. **Deal in** - His father *deals in* cotton.
45. **Deal with** - I know how to *deal with* you.
46. **Depend on** - You can always *depend on* me.
47. **Desire for** - I have no *desire for* name or fame.
48. **Die of** - He *died of* cholera.
49. **Differ from** - This pen *differs from* that.
50. **Differ with** - I *differ with* you on this point.
51. **Different from** - This book is *different from* that.
52. **Dismiss from** - He was *dismissed from* service.
53. **Eligible for** - You are not *eligible for* this post.
54. **Familiar to** - His face is *familiar to* me.
55. **Familiar with** - I am not *familiar with* him.
56. **Famous for** - Ludhiana is *famous for* hosiery goods.
57. **Feed on** - Cows *feed on* grass.
58. **Feel for** - We should *feel for* the poor.
59. **Fond of** - Children are *fond of* sweets.
60. **Free from** - Nobody is *free from* worries.
61. **Full of** - The glass is *full of* milk.
62. **Good at** - He is *good at* Mathematics.
63. **Grateful to** - I shall be *grateful to* you for this kindness.
64. **Guilty of** - He was found *guilty of* theft.
65. **Honest in** - He is *honest in* his dealings.
66. **Hope for** - Let us *hope for* better results this time.
67. **Inferior to** - This pen is *inferior to* that.
68. **Injurious to** - Smoking is *injurious to* health.
69. **Insist on** - He *insisted on* going with me.
70. **Interest in** - He has no *interest in* his studies.
71. **Interfere with** - Do not *interfere with* my work.
72. **Introduce to** - He *introduced* me *to* his friend.
73. **Invite to** - He *invited* me *to* dinner.
74. **Jealous of** - I am not *jealous of* his good fortune.
75. **Junior to** - He is *junior to* me in service.
76. **Kind to** - Be *kind to* the poor.
77. **Knock at** - Who *knocked at* the door?
78. **Known to** - He is *known to* everybody.

79. Key to - Hard work is the *key to* success.
80. Lame of - He is *lame of* one leg.
81. Laugh at - Do not *laugh at* the poor.
82. Listen to - *Listen to* what I say.
83. Live on - He *lives on* milk and fruit.
84. Married to - Rama was *married to* Sita.
85. Match for - Pakistan is no *match for* India.
86. Obedient to - Be *obedient to* your teacher.
87. Object to - He *objected to* my proposal.
88. Part from - I was sorry to *part from* my friends.
89. Part with - I cannot *part with* this book.
90. Pleased with - The teacher is *pleased with* her.
91. Polite to - Be *polite to* all.
92. Prefer to - I *prefer* death to dishonour.
93. Prevent from - He *prevented me from* going there.
94. Pride in - She takes *pride in* her beauty.
95. Proud of - She is *proud of* her beauty.
96. Quarrel with - Do not *quarrel with* others over trifles.
97. Related to - She is *related to* me.
98. Remind of - He *reminded me of* my promise.
99. Respect for - He has no *respect for* his elders.
100. Satisfied with - I am not *satisfied with* his work.
101. Search for - What are you *searching for*?
102. Send for - We *sent for* a doctor.
103. Shock at - I was *shocked at* this sad news.
104. Short of - We ran *short of* funds.
105. Sick of - He is *sick of* his son.
106. Similar to - This knife is *similar to* that.
107. Sorry for - I am *sorry for* the delay.
108. Succeed in - He *succeeded in* getting a job.
109. Stand by - Will you *stand by* me in trouble?
110. Suffer from - He *suffered from* malaria.
111. Superior to - My cap is *superior to* yours.
112. Sure of - I am *sure of* my success.
113. Surprised at - I am *surprised at* your behaviour.
114. Sympathetic to - Our teacher is *sympathetic to* poor students.
115. Sympathize with - Always *sympathize with* the poor.

16. Sympathy for - He has no *sympathy for* me.
 17. Taste for - I have no *taste for* films.
 18. Thankful to - I am *thankful to* you for your kindness.
 19. Trust in - *Trust in* God and do the right.
 20. True to - I am *true to* my friends.
 21. Useful for - Exercise is *useful for* health.
 22. Useful to - This book is very *useful to* me.
 23. Warn of - He *warned* me *of* the danger.
 24. Wish for - I *wish for* your success in life.
 25. Wonder at - We *wondered at* her intelligence.

Exercises / Assignments with their answers.

Assignment - I

Fill in the blanks with suitable prepositions.

- He started _____ six _____ the morning.
- The train arrives _____ five _____ the morning and departs _____ the station _____ noon.
- She was born _____ a small village _____ Andhra.
- My son came _____ bus _____ Friday.
- They were married _____ 1st Jan 1995 and divorced _____ April.
- The money lender was shot dead _____ the thief _____ a pistol.
- This portrait was painted _____ the Italian artist _____ fifteenth century.
- The thief hanged himself _____ a rope _____ the prison.
- Students don't go _____ school _____ Sundays.
- My brother came _____ Tuesday.

Answers :

- (1) at, in (2) at, in, from, at, (3) in, in, (4) by, on, (5) on, in, (6) by, with, (7) by, in
 (8) with, in, (9) to, on, (10) on

Assignment - II :

Identify the underlined words in the following whether preposition, adverb, adjective or conjunction.

- As your lawyer, I may advise you.
- He is not a lawyer, but he speaks like a lawyer.
- As he was ill, he could not play.
- He has been waiting since morning.
- Since he is rich, he need not work.
- He got off the bus and ran away quickly.

Answers :

- (1) Preposition, (2) Preposition, (3) Conjunction, (4) Preposition, (5) Conjunction,
 (6) adverb

Assignment - III :

(A) Make sentences from the following table choosing the correct preposition from column 2.

| | 1 | 2 | 3 |
|---|-------------------------|-----------|-----------------------|
| 1 | May I sit | among | you. |
| 2 | They shared the cake | between | themselves. |
| 3 | Ann sat | beside/by | Tom and Henry. |
| 4 | There was an argument | | Jane and her husband. |
| 5 | The mill is | | the bus stop. |
| 6 | Sweets were distributed | | the children. |

Answers :

- (1) May I sit beside you.
- (2) They shared the cake among themselves.
- (3) Ann sat between Tom and Henry.
- (4) There was an argument between Jane and her husband.
- (5) The mill is by the bus stop.
- (6) Sweets were distributed among the children.

(B) Make sentence from the following table choosing correct preposition from column 2.

| | 1 | 2 | 3 |
|---|---------------|---------|--------------|
| 1 | The dog ran | through | the square |
| 2 | We got safely | across | the road. |
| 3 | The road runs | along | the sea. |
| 4 | We drove | | the gate |
| 5 | They moved | | the fence. |
| 6 | We walked | | the library. |

Answers :

- (1) The dog ran across the square.
- (2) We got safely across the road.
- (3) The road runs along the sea.
- (4) We drove through the gate.
- (5) They moved along the fence.
- (6) We walked through the library.

Assignment - IV

Correct the following sentences.

- (1) She cut her finger by a knife.
- (2) Beside English, he knows Telugu.
- (3) He was born in Mangapuram, a village at Andhra.
- (4) I was standing besides her.

- (5) He is ambitious with fame.
- (6) He tried to a job with many places.
- (7) We can't go for train. We will go with foot.
- (8) The poor man died with TB.
- (9) She put out her new dress and went for a stroll.
- (10) There is no exception for the new rule.

Answers :

- (1) with a knife, (2) Besides English, (3) at Mangapuram, (4) beside her,
 (5) ambitions of, (6) for a job at many places, (7) by train, on foot, (8) died of,
 (9) put on, (10) to the rule.

Assignment - V :

Fill in the following blanks with suitable prepositions.

- (1) He refused to give _____ the idea of going for the higher studies.
- (2) The young lady had done her interview well, and was looking forward _____ receiving a favourable reply from the Board.
- (3) He is planning to make _____ his loss with a new marketing venture.
- (4) As he has finished his exams he started to think _____ his future.
- (5) The time has come for Ramesh to pay _____ his past mistakes.
- (6) You must trust _____ your self to achieve success.

Answers :

- (1) up, (2) for, (3) up, (4) of, (5) for, (6) in

Assignment - VI :

Fill in the blanks with suitable prepositions.

- (1) The cook has a strong desire _____ delicious food.
- (2) Nehru was fond _____ children.
- (3) The leader has developed greed _____ money.
- (4) It was their interest _____ Indian culture that brought people from various countries here.
- (5) Developing countries have great need _____ economic reforms.
- (6) Participation _____ games and sports should be made compulsory in schools.
- (7) The reason _____ slow production of cotton is lack of irrigation.
- (8) One should have respect _____ one's own parents.
- (9) I wish for your success _____ the examinations.
- (10) The team has an understanding _____ the plan to be executed in the next game.

Answers :

- (1) for, (2) of, (3) for, (4) in, (5) for, (6) in, (7) for, (8) for, (9) in, (10) of

Assignment - VII :

Fill in the blanks with suitable prepositions.

- (1) Durga is fond _____ sweets.
- (2) Meena is jealous _____ Fatima's fortune.

- (3) I am very happy _____ your success in business.
- (4) The carpet is made _____ expensive wool.
- (5) Lalitha is married _____ Mohan.
- (6) The president said that he was proud _____ the Indian scientists who made India self-reliant in launching satellites.
- (7) He is feeling sorry _____ his short comings.
- (8) The marketing Manager is doubly sure _____ making profits this year.
- (9) Uma is retired _____ requesting people; not to be late to the dance rehearsal.
- (10) Venu is worried _____ his parents who are on the train which derailed this morning.

Answers :

- (1) of, (2) of, (3) about, (4) of, (5) to, (6) of, (7) for, (8) of, (9) of, (10) about

Assignment - VIII :

Choose the correct preposition and fill in the blanks.

- (1) I have stayed here _____ six days.
(a) since (b) in (c) for (d) from
- (2) The old man dies _____ heart failure.
(a) from (b) with (c) by (d) of
- (3) You must cope _____ the demands of the emerging society.
(a) upon (b) up with (c) with (d) up
- (4) I was going _____ on the road.
(a) in (b) through (c) along (d) on
- (5) I turn _____ the TV when I don't like the programme.
(a) off (b) down (c) up (d) for
- (6) The lecturer went _____ to explain the next point.
(a) off (b) about (c) from (d) on
- (7) The sun had already set before we could arrive _____ the place.
(a) in (b) at (c) on (d) from
- (8) His friends congratulated Ravi _____ his winning the first prize.
(a) on (b) for (c) with (d) over
- (9) The committee failed to agree _____ a proper method of working.
(a) to (b) for (c) of (d) on
- (10) Your success depends _____ the efforts you put in.
(a) for (b) in (c) on (d) at
- (11) The child has been missing _____ yesterday.
(a) on (b) before (c) from (d) during
- (12) She walked _____ the end of the street.
(a) at (b) to (c) along (d) till

(13) I backed the car _____ the garage.

- (a) by (b) of (c) into (d) in

(14) Country life abounds _____ many kinds of labour.

- (a) with (b) in (c) at (d) among

(15) I congratulated her _____ her success.

- (a) for (b) on (c) of (d) in

Answers :

(1) c, (2) d, (3) c, (4) c, (5) a, (6) d, (7) b, (8) a, (9) a, (10) c, (11) c, (12) b, (13) c, (14) a, (15) b

EXERCISES

1. We travelled _____ train.
2. John lives _____ New York.
3. He shouted _____ help.
4. She has been living here _____ 1990.
5. Gitanjali was written _____ Tagore.
6. He has been suffering _____ fever.
7. He came _____ bus.
8. He yielded _____ superior force.
9. He despaired _____ success.
10. He supplies the poor _____ clothing.
11. His friends disagreed _____ him on that point.
12. He acceded _____ my request.
13. He abstains _____ liquor.
14. He was found guilty _____ man's laughter.
15. He is incapable _____ doing good work.
16. He is married _____ my cousin.
17. He is sensible _____ your kindness.
18. He is true _____ his king.
19. He is involved _____ difficulties.
20. The auditor is entitled _____ his remuneration.
21. I prefer tea _____ coffee.
22. I don't concur _____ you _____ that opinion.
23. There is no exception _____ this rule.
24. I am obliged _____ you _____ your kindness.
25. I am not envious _____ his success.

ANSWERS

1. by 2. in 3. for 4. since 5. by 6. from 7. by 8. to 9. of 10. with 11. with
12. to 13. from 14. of 15. of 16. to 17. of 18. to 19. in 20. to 21. to
22. with, in 23. to 24. to, for 25. of

OBJECTIVE TYPE EXERCISES

1. Exercise is good _____ health.
1. to 2. at 3. for 4. into
2. We lived in Hyderabad _____ two years.
1. for 2. since 3. at 4. upon
3. Suresh travelled _____ foot.
1. by 2. for 3. on 4. to
4. Mr. Shastri knows hindi _____ telugu.
1. beside 2. besides 3. between 4. among
5. She is very careful _____ her appearance.
1. in 2. about 3. for 4. on
6. He has arrived _____ Mumbai.
1. for 2. from 3. beside 4. upon
7. Do you take sugar _____ your coffee?
1. at 2. up 3. in 4. on
8. The blackboard is _____ the teacher.
1. besides 2. behind 3. upon 4. on
9. If you leave the hotel, please leave the key _____ reception.
1. at 2. for 3. from 4. on
10. Dr. Hari's house is the white one _____ the end of the street.
1. for 2. at 3. on 4. upon
11. He took _____ his gloves.
1. of 2. for 3. off 4. on
12. They parked the cars _____ the function hall.
1. to 2. for 3. outside 4. with
13. The boat sank _____ the waves.
1. beside 2. behind 3. of 4. beneath
14. He sat _____ me.
1. beside 2. besides 3. of 4. off
15. The Bangalore express flies _____ Kacheguda and Bangalore.
1. beside 2. between 3. among 4. in front of
16. The cat lay _____ the table.
1. upon 2. on 3. under 4. in
17. The helicopter hovered _____ our heads.
1. by 2. over 3. of 4. off
18. He climbed _____ the ladder.
1. on 2. upon 3. up 4. of
19. The army marched _____ the town.
1. beside 2. through 3. by 4. up

20. The ship toured _____ the world.
1. by 2. on 3. round 4. for
21. The bus fell _____ a ditch.
1. on 2. in 3. of 4. into
22. Sir Arthur cotton built a bridge _____ the Godavari.
1. along 2. across 3. among 4. by
23. The visitor walked _____ the corridor.
1. at 2. along 3. of 4. on
24. The parrot flew _____ the cage.
1. out 2. of 3. out of 4. at
25. The stone rolled _____ the hill.
1. besides 2. down 3. on 4. by
26. He came running _____ me.
1. of 2. at 3. to 4. off
27. Abraham Lincoln came _____ a poor family.
1. for 2. from 3. of 4. at
28. He died _____ cancer.
1. of 2. from 3. on 4. at
29. I congratulated Mohan _____ getting the first rank.
1. for 2. on 3. at 4. of
30. He prefers juice _____ coffee.
1. in 2. to 3. of 4. out

Answers :

1.3 2.1 3.3 4.2 5.2 6.1 7.3 8.2 9.1 10.2 11.3 12.3 13.4 14.1 15.2
16.3 17.2 18.3 19.2 20.3 21.4 22.2 23.2 24.3 25.2 26.3 27.2 28.1
29.2 30.2

EXERCISE

Choose the correct Prepositions :

1. Do you go to college bicycle or foot ?
1. on, by 2. by, on 3. on, on 4. by, by
2. He doesn't read night.
1. in 2. at 3. of 4. till
3. I saw him the morning.
1. in 2. on 3. at 4. of
4. He hit the dog stone.
1. with 2. on 3. by 4. at
5. We travelled train.
1. by 2. on 3. with 4. in

6. She takes her mother.
1. after 2. to 3. with 4. of
7. Tanmai is married Mohan.
1. to 2. with 3. for 4. of
8. The carpet is made expensive wool.
1. in 2. with 3. of 4. for
9. They live the same roof.
1. in 2. at 3. under 4. on
10. He broke the jug hundred pieces.
1. to 2. into 3. with 4. for
11. Let us hope the best.
1. for 2. to 3. with 4. of
12. He deals foreign goods.
1. in 2. with 3. for 4. of
13. Look the picture.
1. on 2. at 3. of 4. for
14. Nights are cool summer.
1. on 2. in 3. for 4. about
15. She is eligible the post.
1. for 2. at 3. with 4. of
16. This contrary all rules.
1. to 2. over 3. above 4. of
17. The reason slow production of cotton is lack of irrigation.
1. of 2. for 3. at 4. about
18. The moon doesn't shine its own light.
1. with 2. by 3. from 4. to
19. God is good me.
1. at 2. by 3. on 4. to
20. I shall do it pleasure.
1. in 2. for 3. with 4. to
21. Don't argue the man.
1. on 2. for 3. with 4. of
22. I am thankful God.
1. to 2. for 3. at 4. with
23. I saw him the morning tenth.
1. in, on 2. on, in 3. on, of 4. of, on
24. We listened his speech the radio.
1. to, on 2. on, to 3. on, on 4. to, to
25. We have been playing yesterday.
1. for 2. since 3. on 4. of

26. The price depends demand.
1. on 2. for 3. at 4. out
27. We were tired waiting.
1. of 2. for 3. at 4. out
28. He is good Mathematics.
1. in 2. at 3. for 4. over
29. She died cancer.
1. with 2. of 3. off 4. from
30. He climbed the wall.
1. to 2. on 3. over 4. by

The underlined Prepositions in the following sentences are wrong. Find out the correct Prepositions.

31. I sympathize to you for your misfortune.
1. at 2. by 3. with 4. to
32. You are responsible on the faults.
1. in 2. to 3. for 4. with
33. I hope to reach the railway station for an hour.
1. in 2. by 3. to 4. of
34. Vinay takes pride with doing great things.
1. on 2. in 3. for 4. of
35. They were angry on me for nothing.
1. to 2. by 3. for 4. with
36. We congratulated her to her success.
1. at 2. on 3. with 4. in
37. She insisted over seeing the files.
1. in 2. for 3. on 4. about
38. Television was invented at J.L. Baird.
1. with 2. by 3. on 4. to
39. He has not recovered by illness.
1. from 2. in 3. with 4. over
40. The mother brought to the child with care.
1. at 2. with 3. up 4. for

Answers :

- 1.2 2.2 3.1 4.1 5.1 6.1 7.1 8.3 9.3 10.2 11.1 12.1 13.2 14.2 15.1 16.1 17.2
18.2 19.4 20.3 21.3 22.1 23.1 24.1 25.2 26.1 27.1 28.2 29.2 30.3 31.3 32.3
33.1 34.2 35.4 36.2 37.3 38.2 39.1 40.3

EXERCISE

I. Fill in the blanks with appropriate Prepositions :

1. He was born _____ a village _____ Rajasthan.
2. We started _____ six _____ the morning.
3. He hanged himself _____ a piece of cloth.
4. We must start _____ dawn to reach the station in time.
5. He killed two birds _____ one shot.
6. The child has been missing _____ yesterday.
7. The mail train is due _____ 7 p.m.
8. He travelled seven miles _____ two hours.
9. He doesn't leave his house _____ 7 'o' clock.
10. I received this message _____ eight _____ the morning.
11. _____ rice they had curry.
12. He has spent his life _____ Calcutta.
13. Come and sit _____ me.
14. While I was _____ Delhi, he was _____ Bombay.
15. He was killed _____ the robber _____ a pistol.
16. Divide this sum of money _____ Manu and Misha.
17. He did not die _____ cholera.
18. This shopkeeper deals _____ oils.
19. He didn't deal honestly _____ me.
20. A drowning man will catch _____ a straw.
21. Always be prepared _____ the worst.
22. Aim _____ doing your duty.
23. I cannot agree _____ you _____ this matter.
24. _____ Manu and Mukesh, there were three other boys present.
25. Get out! I am sick _____ the sight of you!

II. Correct the following sentences :

1. I have known him since twenty years.
2. He prefers coffee than tea.
3. He has been working in this factory since a long time.
4. He died from over-work.
5. Ice-cream is made from milk.
6. She is married with a doctor.
7. Calcutta is different to Bombay.

8. Divide these sweets among the two children.
9. This cloth is superior than that.
10. We have not seen him since a month.
11. It is quicker to travel by air than in train.
12. Every morning the sun rises from the east.
13. The teacher is angry at the student.
14. She is at England these days.
15. We sat under the shade of a tree.
16. There is no harm to do this.
17. She takes great pride of her children.
18. He didn't listen my advice.
19. She has been working from morning.
20. They invited me for dinner.

ANSWERS:

- I. 1. in, of 2. at, in 3. with 4. before 5. with 6. since 7. at 8. in 9. after 10. at, in 11. Besides 12. in 13. by/beside 14. at, in 15. by, with 16. between 17. of 18. in 19. with 20. up 21. for 22. at 23. with, in 24. Besides 25. of
- II. 1. him for twenty years 2. coffee to tea 3. factory for a long time 4. died of over work 5. is made of milk 6. married to a doctor 7. different from Bombay 8. sweets between the two children 9. superior to that 10. him for a month 11. than by train 12. rises in the east 13. angry with the student 14. is in England 15. sat in the shade 16. harm in doing 17. pride in her children 18. listen to my advice 19. working since morning 20. me to dinner.

practice Test:-

1. Vikram is not afraid _____ any thing.
2. I am sorry _____ getting angry _____ you yesterday.
3. Nani is very good _____ telling stories.
4. Buji is not interested _____ studies.
5. She goes to work _____ car.
6. What do you know _____ your country.
7. Can you recognize that man _____ a long moustache?
8. We watched the news _____ television.
9. The child sat _____ her father's lap.
10. I have joined a college _____ my aunt's house.
11. I sympathise _____ you for the loss you suffered.
12. Please refrain _____ smoking in the room.
13. All the workers congratulated me _____ my success.
14. The examination will be held _____ 10 a.m. and 1 p.m.
15. She sat calmly _____ our conversation.
16. My father left _____ Hyderabad.
17. Exercise is good _____ health.
18. The stone rolled _____ the hill.
19. Sir Arthur Cotton built a bridge _____ the Godavari.
20. He is good _____ singing.
21. Children find pleasure _____ reading short books.
22. She cut the fruit _____ knife.
23. Gopal has been working in SBH _____ 1998.
24. David was suffering _____ fever.
25. He lives _____ Avanigadda, Krishna District.
26. I heard a lot of noise _____ the night.
27. The four brothers quarrelled _____ themselves.
28. They will have completed the work _____ January.
29. I have been working here _____ a long time.
30. He was accused _____ murder.
31. He spoke to me _____ Urdu.
32. Every day he goes to college _____ foot.
33. He was killed _____ the robber _____ a knife.
34. I travel _____ Train.
35. She has been living here _____ 1990.
36. Radha was absent _____ 5 days.
37. Gitanjali was written _____ Tagore.
38. Rajini sat _____ me.
39. Prabu has been suffering _____ fever.
40. He came _____ the room.
41. John lives _____ New York.
42. She died _____ Cholera.
43. He shouted _____ help.
44. The four thieves divided the money _____ themselves.
45. He is _____ the committee.
46. _____ Raju and Ravi, three other boys were present.

47. The children shared the chocolates _____ themselves.
48. The poor old man died _____ T.B.
49. I am sorry _____ what I have said.
50. Don't sit _____ the chair its broken.
51. The train leaves _____ 7 o'clock.
52. He does want to sit _____ those girls.
53. Vanu is an old friend of _____ mine.
54. Mr. Ravi knows Hindi _____ Telugu.
55. She has been doing this _____ January.
56. I saw Chandra _____ the bus stop.
57. Please translate this _____ Hindi.
58. I parked the car _____ the function hall.
59. Chandra is a man _____ principles.
60. They arrived _____ time.
61. I have known her _____ three years.
62. She is careful _____ her appearance.
63. Latha looks _____ her mother.
64. To the surprise of all Rahim gave _____ cating meat.
65. Please comply _____ my request.
66. Don't boast _____ your riches.
67. The soldiers fought _____ all his courage.
68. The Moon moves _____ the Earth.
69. She was burst _____ tears.
70. She is known _____ me.
71. He has not recovered _____ illness.
- a) In b) From c) with d) by []
72. Jenny is married _____ Mohan.
- a) To b) With c) For d) of []
73. The carpet is made _____ expensive wool.
- a) In b) with c) of d) on []
74. They live _____ same roof.
- a) In b) at c) under d) on []
75. He broke the Jug _____ hundred picce.
- a) To b) into c) with d) for []
76. Meet me _____ 4 p.m.
- a) On b) Of c) At d) to []
77. Do you go to college _____ bicycle or _____ foot.
- a) On, by b) by, in c) on, on d) by, by []
78. He hit the dog _____ stone.
- a) of b) for c) with d) by []
79. He listened _____ his speach _____ radio.
- a) to, on b) on, to c) on, on d) off, on []
80. I was good _____ Maths.
- a) above b) of c) After d) At []
81. I Prefer coffce _____ tea.
- a) to b) of c) After d) At []

82. He is seated ____ her. []
a) by b) beside c) at d) for
83. Let us hope ____ the best. []
a) for b) to c) with d) of
84. I am thankful ____ god. []
a) to b) for c) at d) with
85. She is eligible ____ the post. []
a) for b) at c) with d) of
86. We have been playing ____ yesterday. []
a) Since b) for c) After d) At
87. She takes ____ her mother. []
a) to b) of c) After d) At
88. The mail train is due ____ 3 P.M. []
a) to b) on c) at d) by
89. Don't walk ____ the wall. []
a) on b) of c) After d) At
90. I have known him ____ a long time. []
a) to b) of c) After d) for
91. Children are fond ____ sweets. []
a) to b) of c) After d) At
92. I stood ____ Latha and Leela. []
a) by b) Between c) among d) for
93. We finished the work ____ two hours. []
a) of b) off c) by d) in
94. The dog ran ____ the road. []
a) On b) of c) across d) along
95. Are you interested ____ modern art. []
a) to b) of c) After d) in
96. We have class again ____ Sunday. []
a) to b) of c) on d) At
97. We have lived in house ____ last April. []
a) for b) in c) since d) At
98. I will finish the work ____ one hour. []
a) in b) within c) After d) At
99. He will join the school ____ tomorrow. []
a) by b) of c) After d) At
100. She waited ____ 9 o'clock. []
a) to b) of c) till d) on

DEGREES OF COMPARISON

KINDS OF DEGREES

The three different forms are positive, comparative and superlative. They are known as the three degrees of comparison.

(1) **Positive Degree** : An adjective which indicates a certain degree of quality and is used without comparison is said to be in positive degree.

Eg : Sunil is a clever boy.

America is a rich country.

(2) **Comparative Degree** : Comparative degree is used to compare two persons, places or things. The words indicate a high degree of quality. Generally "than" follows the comparative Adjective/ Adverb.

Eg : Sunil is cleverer than Anil.

A cheetah runs faster than a tiger.

(3) **Superlative Degree** : It indicates the highest degree of quality and is used to compare more than two persons, places or things.

Eg : Sunil is the cleverest boy in the class.

America is the richest country in the world.

When the comparison is among a minimum of 3 persons/ things that can be expressed in all the three degrees. To the compared persons are two only, the superlative degree is not possible. When we talk of the quality, quantity of a single item, only positive degree is possible.

FORMATION OF COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES

1. Adjectives, which do not end in e, add -er/-est to the Positive.

| Positive | Comparative | Superlative |
|----------|-------------|-------------|
| sweet | sweeter | sweetest |
| soft | softer | softest |
| clever | cleverer | cleverest |

2. For the Adjectives ending in -y preceded by a Consonant, -y is changed into -i and -er/-est is added.

| | | |
|-------|---------|----------|
| easy | easier | easiest |
| holy | holier | holiest |
| happy | happier | happiest |

3. If the -y is preceded by a Vowel, it is not changed into -i

| | | |
|------|--------|---------|
| gay | gayer | gayest |
| grey | greyer | greyest |

4. For the Adjectives ending in -e only -r/-st is added

| | | |
|-------|--------|---------|
| large | larger | largest |
| fine | finer | finest |
| noble | nobler | noblest |

5. For the Adjectives ending in a single Consonant, the last letter is doubled and **-er/-est** added

| | | |
|-----|--------|----------|
| big | bigger | biggest |
| fat | fatter | fattest |
| dim | dimmer | dimmiest |

6. For most Adjectives of two syllables and all Adjectives of more than two syllables, **more/most** is put in front.

| | | |
|-----------|----------------|----------------|
| careful | more careful | most careful |
| beautiful | more beautiful | most beautiful |
| honest | more honest | most honest |

7. -Irregular Comparisons

| | | |
|-----------|-------------|---------------|
| good/well | better | best |
| bad/ill | worse | worst |
| old | older/elder | oldest/eldest |
| little | less | least |
| much/many | more | most |
| far | farther | farthest |

8. Some Adverbs like fast, hard, high, near, long, late, early have the same form as an Adjective, **-er/-est** is added to these Adverbs to form Comparative and Superlative.

| | | |
|------|--------|---------|
| fast | faster | fastest |
| hard | harder | hardest |
| high | higher | highest |

When one thing or person is to be compared with many other things or persons of the same kind, we can use any Degree - Positive, Comparative or Superlative. Study the following sentences carefully :

| Superlative Degree | Comparative Degree | Positive Degree |
|---|--|--|
| Shakespeare was the greatest dramatist of England. | Shakespeare was greater than any other dramatist of England. | No other dramatist of England was so great as Shakespeare. |
| The Himalayas are the highest mountains in the world. | The Himalayas are higher than any other mountain in the world. | No other mountain in world is so high as the Himalayas. |
| Mohan is not the richest of the village. | Mohan is not richer than some other men of the village. | Some men of the village are at least as rich as Mohan. |
| Radha is not the most intelligent of all the girls in the class. | Radha is not more intelligent than some other girls in the class. | Some girls in the class are at least as intelligent as Radha. |
| Calcutta is one of the largest seaports in India. | Calcutta is larger than most other seaports in India. | Very few seaports in India are so large as Calcutta. |
| Ashoka was one of the greatest of Indian rulers | Ashoka was greater than most other Indian rulers. | Very few Indian rulers were so great as Ashoka. |

He is not one of the **cleverest** boys of the class.

Some other boys of the class are **cleverer than** he (is).

He is not so clever as some other boys of the class.

Delhi is not one of the **biggest** cities of India.

Some other cities of India are **bigger than** Delhi.

Delhi is not so big as some other cities of India.

Keep in mind the following table while changing the Degree of Comparison in a sentence :

| Superlative | Comparative | Positive |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| the best | better than any other | No other ... so good as |
| not the best | not better than some others | Some at least as good as |
| one of the best(of) | better than most others | very few so good as |
| not one of the best | some others better than | not so good as some others. |

TEST - 1

Change the following into comparative degree.

- Raju is as clever as Ravi.
 - Ravi is cleverer than Raju.
 - Ravi was clever than Raju.
 - Ravi is not cleverer than Raju.
 - Ravi is so clever as Raju.
- The stars are not so bright as the moon.
 - The moon was bright than any other stars.
 - The moon is brightest than stars.
 - The moon is brighter than stars.
 - The moon is bright than stars.
- Very few places are as sacred as Tirupati.
 - Tirupati is more sacred than most other places.
 - Tirupati is one of the most sacred places.
 - Tirupati is the most sacred place.
 - Tirupati is the sacred.
- Wealth is not so good as wisdom.
 - Wisdom is more good than wealth.
 - Wisdom is the most better than wealth.
 - Wisdom is better than wealth.
 - Wisdom was better than wealth.
- The tiger is the most ferocious of all animals.
 - No other animals are so ferocious as the tiger.
 - The tiger is more ferocious than any other animals.
 - The tiger is the more ferocious animal.
 - The tiger is more ferocious than some other animals.

6. Kishen is not so tall as Kiran.
 a. Kiran is the tallest than Kishen.
 c. Kiran is taller than Kishen.
 b. Kishen is very taller than Kiran.
 d. Kiran is tall than Kishen.
7. Akbar was one of the greatest kings.
 a. Akbar was greater than most other kings.
 c. Akbar was greater than other kings.
 b. Very few kings were as great as Akbar.
 d. Akbar was greater king.
8. Hyderabad is not so big as Mumbai.
 a. Hyderabad is the biggest than Mumbai.
 b. Mumbai is biggest than Hyderabad.
 c. Hyderabad is big than Mumbai.
 d. Mumbai is bigger than Hyderabad.
9. No other state in India is so thickly populated as Kerala.
 a. Kerala is the most thickly populated state in India.
 b. Kerala is more thickly populated than other state in India.
 c. Kerala is thickly populated state in India.
 d. Kerala is more populated state than all other states.
10. Telugu is one of the most beautiful languages.
 a. Telugu is more beautiful than most other languages.
 b. Very few languages are as beautiful as Telugu.
 c. Telugu is the most beautiful language.
 d. Telugu is more beautiful language.

Change the following into superlative degree.

11. No other man was so honest as Karthik.
 a. Karthik was more honest any other man.
 b. Karthik was more honest man.
 c. Karthik was most honest man.
 d. Karthik was the honest man.
12. The rose is more beautiful than any other flower.
 a. The rose is more beautiful flower.
 b. The rose was the most beautiful flower.
 c. The rose is the most beautiful flower.
 d. No other flower is so beautiful as the rose.
13. Very few boys in the class are as industrious as Rama.
 a. Rama is more industrious than other boys in the class.
 b. Rama is one of the most industrious boys in the class.
 c. Rama is one of industrious boy in the class.
 d. Rama is the most industrious boy in the class.
14. Sunil is more courageous than any other man.
 a. Sunil was the more courageous man.
 b. Sunil is the most courageous man.
 c. No other man is so courageous as Sunil.
 d. Sunil is one of the most courageous men.
15. He is better than any other man for the job.
 a. No other man for the job is so good as he.
 b. He is the best man for the job.
 c. He is most better than anyother for the job.
 d. He is one of the best for the job.

16. Very few articles of food are nutritious as milk.
- Milk is one of the most nutritious food articles.
 - Milk is more nutritious than most other food articles.
 - Milk is most nutritious food.
 - Milk is one of the most nutritious food articles.
17. No other exercise is so healthy as swimming.
- Swimming is the healthiest of all exercises.
 - Swimming is healthier than any other exercise.
 - Swimming is healthy than any other exercise.
 - Swimming is healthiest of all exercises.
18. No other novel I have read is so interesting as this.
- This is most interesting novel I have read.
 - This is the more interesting novel I have read.
 - This is more interesting than any other novel I have read.
 - This is the most interesting novel I have read.
19. The Ganges is longer than any other river in India.
- The Ganges is more longer than other river in India.
 - No other river in India is so long as the Ganges.
 - The Ganges is the longest river in India.
 - The Ganges is longest river in India.
20. Vijayawada is hotter than many other towns in Andhra Pradesh.
- Vijayawada is one of the hottest towns in Andhra Pradesh.
 - Vijayawada is the hottest town in Andhra Pradesh.
 - Vijayawada is the hotter town in Andhra Pradesh.
 - Vijayawada is one of the hottest town in Andhra Pradesh.

Change the following into positive degree.

21. Sakuntala is the best drama in Sanskrit.
- Sakuntala is better than any other drama in Sanskrit.
 - No other drama in Sanskrit is so good as Sakuntala.
 - Sakuntala is the better than any drama in Sanskrit.
 - No other drama in Sanskrit is good as Sakuntala.
22. The pen is mightier than the sword.
- The sword is not so mighty as the pen.
 - The pen is mightier of the sword.
 - The sword is not mighty as the pen.
 - The pen is not so mighty as the sword.
23. President Kennedy is abler than most other American Presidents.
- President Kennedy is one of the ablest of American President.
 - President Kennedy is abler than other American.
 - Very few American Presidents are so able as President Kennedy.
 - Very few American Presidents were so able as President Kennedy.

24. A wise enemy is better than a foolish friend.
 - a. A foolish friend is not good as a wise enemy.
 - b. A wise enemy is the better than a foolish friend.
 - c. A foolish is not good as a wise enemy.
 - d. A foolish enemy is not so good as a wise friend.
25. Gold is more precious than silver.
 - a. Silver is not precious than gold.
 - b. Silver is more precious than gold.
 - c. Silver is not so precious as gold
 - d. Gold is most precious than silver.
26. Pandit Nehru's Autobiography is one of the most interesting books I have ever read.
 - a. Very few books I have ever read are so interesting as Pandit Nehru's Autobiography
 - b. Pandit Nehru's Autobiography is more interesting than most other books I have read
 - c. Pandit Nehru's Autobiography is interesting than most other books I have ever read
 - d. Very few books I have ever read are very interesting as pandit Nehru's Autobiography
27. Prevention is better than cure.
 - a. Cure is not so good as prevention.
 - b. Cure was not better than prevention.
 - c. Cure is so good as prevention.
 - d. Cure does not so good as prevention.
28. India is hotter than America.
 - a. America is not so hot as India.
 - b. America was so hot as India.
 - c. America is most hotter than India.
 - d. America was not so hot as India.
29. David runs faster than Raju.
 - a. Raju did not run as fast as David.
 - b. Raju does run so fast as David.
 - c. Raju is more ran the fast as David.
 - d. Raju does not run so fast as David.
30. The Japanese are the most courteous people in the world.
 - a. The Japanese are courteous than any other people in the world.
 - b. The Japanese are courteous than some other people in the world.
 - c. No other people in the world are so courteous as the Japanese.
 - d. No other people in the world are courteous as the Japanese.

Find out the correct sentences as per the degree :

31.
 - a. Raghu is not greater than some musicians.
 - b. Raghu is not the greater of musicians.
 - c. Raghu is not greater than some other musicians.
 - d. Some musicians are least as great as Raghu.
32.
 - a. Iron is the most useful of all metals.
 - b. Iron is the useful of all metals.
 - c. No other metal is useful as iron.
 - d. Iron is the more useful than all other metals.

33. a. No other man was so strong as Bhim.
 b. Bhim was the strongest man.
 c. Bhim was stronger than some man.
 d. Bhim was strongest man.
34. a. America is one of the rich countries in the world.
 b. America is rich than most other countries in the world.
 c. Very few countries in the world are rich as America.
 d. America is richer than most other countries in the world.
35. a. Solomon is wisest than any other in the world.
 b. Solomon was one of the wisest men in the world.
 c. Very few men in the world was as wise as Solomon.
 d. Solomon was wiser than other men in the world.

Find out the Incorrect sentences as per the degree :

36. a. Gandhi is the most honest man.
 b. No other man was so honest as Gandhi.
 c. Gandhi was the most honest man.
 d. Gandhi was more honest than any other men.
37. a. Akbar was one of the greatest kings.
 b. Very few kings were as great as Akbar.
 c. Very few kings was as great as Akbar.
 d. Akbar was greater than most other kings.
38. a. He is taller than many other boys.
 b. He is more tallest boy.
 c. He is one of the tallest boys.
 d. Very few boys are as tall as he.
39. a. Very few newspapers are as good as The Hindu.
 b. The Hindu is one of the best newspapers.
 c. The Hindu is better than most other newspapers.
 d. The Hindu is best than any other newspaper.
40. a. Murthy works harder than any other clerk in the office.
 b. Murthy works hard than any other clerk in the office.
 c. Murthy works the hardest of all clerks in the office.
 d. No other clerk in the office works as hard as Murthy.

ANSWERS : TEST -1

1.c 2.c 3.a 4.c 5.b 6.c 7.a 8.d 9.b 10.a 11.d 12.c 13.b 14.b 15.b 16.a 17.a
 18.d 19.c 20.a 21.b 22.a 23.c 24.a 25.c 26.a 27.a 28.a 29.d 30.c 31.c 32.a
 33.b 34.d 35.b 36.a 37.c 38.b 39.d 40.b

EXERCISES

1. Japan is one of the richest Countries in the world. (Change into P.D)
 a. No other Country is as rich as Japan.
 b. Japan is not at all rich.
 c. No other country in the world is as rich as Japan.
 d. Very few countries in the world are as rich as Japan.

2. Iron is the most useful metal. (Change into C.D.)
 - a. Iron is more useful than any other metal.
 - b. Iron is more useful metal.
 - c. No other metal is as useful as Iron.
 - d. Very few metals are as useful as Iron.
3. The pen is mightier than the sword.
 - a. The sword is as might as the pen.
 - b. The sword is not so might as the pen.
 - c. The sword is the mightiest of the pen.
 - d. The pen is not mightier the sword.
4. Ashoka was one of the greatest kings. (Change into P.D.)
 - a. Ashoka was no doubt, a great king.
 - b. No other king was so great as Ashoka.
 - c. Very few kings were as great as Ashoka.
 - d. Ashoka was greater than any other king.
5. She is not so intelligent as industrious.
 - a. She is more industrious than intelligent.
 - b. She is as industrious as intelligent.
 - c. She is more industrious than intelligent.
 - d. She is the most intelligent than more industrious.
6. No other girls in the class is so intelligent as sarala. (Change into S.D.)
 - a. Sarala is the most intelligent girl in the class.
 - b. Sarala is one of the most intelligent girls in the class.
 - c. Sarala is the least intelligent girl in the class.
 - d. Very few girls in the class as intelligent as sarala.
7. Chamori was one of the most hard working men. (Change into P.D.)
 - a. No other man worked hard as Chamori.
 - b. Few other man worked as hard as chamori.
 - c. Chamori worked hard.
 - d. Like others chamori did not work.
8. No other peak is as high as Mt. Everest. (Change into S.D.)
 - a. Mt. Everest is the highest peak.
 - b. Some Mountains peaks are higher than Mt. Everest.
 - c. There are Mountains higher than Mt. Everest.
 - d. Very few Mountains peak are as high as mt. Everest.
9. Ooty is cooler than Hyderabad. (Change into C.D.)
 - a. Ooty is not so cool as Hyderabad.
 - b. Ooty is not cooler than Hyderabad.
 - c. Hyderabad is not so cool as Ooty.
 - d. Hyderabad is as cool as Ooty.
10. India is one of the biggest countries in the world. ((Change into P.D.)
 - a. India is more bigger than many other countries in the world.
 - b. India is not more bigger than many other countries in the world.
 - c. Very few countries in the world are as big as India.
 - d. Very few countries in the world is as big as India.

11. Few other hill stations are as beautiful as Nainatal. (Change into S.D.)
 a. Nainatal is one of the most beautiful hill stations.
 b. Nainatal is the most beautiful hill stations.
 c. No other hill stations is as beautiful as Nainatal.
 d. Nainatal is more beautiful than many other hill stations.
12. Neela is not as tall as Leela. (Change into C.D.)
 a. Leela is taller than Neela.
 b. Leela is not taller than Neela.
 c. Leela is as tall as Neela.
 d. Neela is taller than Leela.
13. Very few painters are as famous as Ravi Varma. (Change into S.D.)
 a. Ravi Varma is more famous than many other painters.
 b. Ravi Varma is one of the most famous painters.
 c. Ravi Varma is not one of the most famous painter.
 d. Very few painters not so famous as Ravi Varma.
14. No other girl in the college is as charming as Vasundhara. (Change into S.D.)
 a. Vasundhara is the most charming girl in the class.
 b. Vasundhara is not more charming girl in the class.
 c. Vasundhara is more charming than any other girl in the class.
 d. Vasundhara is not a charming girl.
15. He is the brightest boy in the class. (Change into C.D.)
 a. He is one of the brightest boy in the class.
 b. He is brighter than any other boy in the class.
 c. He is brighter than many other boy in the class.
 d. He is not brighter than any other boy in the class.

Answers :

1.d 2.a 3.b 4.c 5.a 6.a 7.b 8.a 9.c 10.c 11.b 12.a 13.b 14.a 15.b

Exercises

71. I am the strongest man on the Earth. (change into positive)
 1) No other man on the Earth is so strong as I.
 2) Some other men on the Earth are as strong as I.
 3) Few other men on the Earth are as strong as I.
 4) No other man on the Earth is as strong as me.
72. I work harder than you. (change into positive)
 1) You work harder than me.
 2) You don't work harder than me.
 3) You don't work so hard as I.
 4) I don't work harder than you.
73. Sumathi one of the best girls in the village. (into comparative)
 1) Sumathi is better than any other girls in the village.
 2) Sumathi is better than some other girls in the village.
 3) Sumathi is better than most other girls in the village.
 4) Sumathi is better than other girls in the village.

74. The deer runs faster than the leopard. (into positive)
- 1) The deer runs as fast as leopard.
 - 2) The leopard runs as fast as the deer.
 - 3) The leopard does not run as fast as the deer.
 - 4) The deer does not run as fast as leopard.
75. I suspect you are not cleverer than Gopi. (into positive)
- 1) Gopi is not so clever as you is suspected by me.
 - 2) Gopi is not so clever as you was suspected by me.
 - 3) Gopi is so clever as you is suspected by me.
 - 4) You are not so clever as I is suspected by me.
76. No other flower is so sweet as the Jasmine. (into superlative)
- 1) Jasmine is not the sweetest of all flowers.
 - 2) Jasmine is the sweetest flower.
 - 3) Jasmine is one of the sweetest flowers.
 - 4) Jasmine is the sweetest of all flowers.
77. I was the shortest boy in my family. (into comparative)
- 1) I was shorter than some other boys in my family.
 - 2) I was shorter than any other boy in my family.
 - 3) I was shorter than many other boys in my family.
 - 4) I was shorter than other boys in my family.
78. India is larger than many other countries in the world. (into superlative)
- 1) India is the largest of all countries in the world.
 - 2) India is the largest country in the world.
 - 3) India is one of the largest countries in the world.
 - 4) India is one of the largest of all country in the world.
79. Very few kings were as kind as Ashoka. (into comparative)
- 1) Ashoka was not kinder than some other kings.
 - 2) Ashoka was kinder than many other king.
 - 3) Ashoka was not kinder than few other kings.
 - 4) Ashoka was kinder than few other kings.
80. Some persons are atleast as lazy as Suresh. (into superlative)
- 1) Suresh is the laziest persons.
 - 2) Suresh is one of the laziest persons.
 - 3) Suresh is the laziest person.
 - 4) Suresh is not the laziest of all. persons.
81. I am not the craziest guy in my college. (into positive)
- 1) Some guys are atleast as lazy as I.
 - 2) Some guys are not atleast as lazy as I.
 - 3) No other guy is as lazy as I.
 - 4) Few other guys are as lazy as I.
82. Gopal is as strong as his brother. (into comparative)
- 1) His brother is stronger than Gopal.
 - 2) His brother is stronger than many other.
 - 3) His brother is stronger than any other.
 - 4) His brother is not stronger than Gopal.
83. She is one of the loveliest women. (into comparative)
- 1) She is lovelier than any other women.
 - 2) She is loveier than most other women.
 - 3) She is loveier than some other women.
 - 4) She is not loveier than any other women.

84. I am not the duller of all boys in our class. (into positive)

- 1) some boys are atleast as dull as I.
- 2) some boys are not atleast as dull as I.
- 3) Very few boys are atleast as dull as I.
- 4) Few other boys are as dull as I.

85. Some poets are atleast as great as shakespeare. (into comparative)

- 1) Shakespeare is greater than any other poet.
- 2) Shakespeare is not greater than any other poet.
- 3) Shakespeare is not greater than some other poets.
- 4) Shakespeare is greater than many other poets.

86. I am not as old as Karim. (into comparative)

- 1) Karim is not older than me.
- 2) Karim is not older than I.
- 3) Karim is older than me.
- 4) Karim is older than I.

87. I throw smoother than she. (into positive)

- 1) She throws as smooth as I.
- 2) She do not throw as smooth as I.
- 3) She does not throw as smooth as I.
- 4) She throw as smooth as I.

88. Very few animals are as dangerous as tiger. (into superlative)

- 1) Tiger is one of the most dangerous animal.
- 2) Tiger is the most dangerous animal.
- 3) Tiger is not the most dangerous animal.
- 4) Tiger is one of the most dangerous animals.

89. There is no vice as bad as drink. (into comparative)

- 1) Drink is worse than any vice.
- 2) Drink is worse than few vice.
- 3) Drink is worse than some vice.
- 4) Drink is worse than no vice.

90. Niagara is not the greatest of all water falls. (into positive)

1. No other water fall is as great as Niagara.
2. Some other water falls are as great as Niagara.
3. Few other water falls are as great as Niagara.
4. some other water falls are atleast as great as Niagara.

91. The dictionary is the best used book in the library. (into comparative)

- 1) the dictionary is better than any other used books in library.
- 2) the dictionary is not better than any other used books in library.
- 3) the dictionary is better than many other used books in library.
- 4) the dictionary is better than any other used book in library.

92. She is not so fat as her mother. (into comparative)

- 1) Her mother is not fatter than she.
- 2) Her mother is fatter than she.
- 3) Her mother is so fat as she.
- 4) Her mother is not so fatter than she.

93. Kiran's shirt is more expensive than Arun's. (into positive)
- 1) Arun's shirt is not expensive that of Kiran.
 - 2) Arun's shirt is not so expensive as that of Kiran.
 - 3) Arun's shirt is not as expensive that of Kiran.
 - 4) Arun's shirt is not so expensive that of Kiran.
94. We are the best family. (into Positive)
- 1) Some families are as good as we.
 - 2) Few families are as good as we.
 - 3) No families are as good as we.
 - 4) No family is as good as we.
95. She is the cleverest girl. (into comparative)
- 1) She is not cleverer than any other girl.
 - 2) She is cleverer than any other girl.
 - 3) She is not cleverer than any other girls.
 - 4) She is not cleverer than many other girl.
96. My cell phone is cheaper than yours. (into positive)
- 1) Your cell phone is as cheap as that of mine.
 - 2) Your cell phone is as not cost as that of mine.
 - 3) Your cell phone is as cost as that of mine.
 - 4) Your cell phone is not as cheap as that of mine.
97. I drink more water than you. (into positive)
- 1) You drink more water than me.
 - 2) You don't drink more water than me.
 - 3) You don't drink as much water as I.
 - 4) You drink more water than I.
98. Very few boys are as naughty as Kiran. (into comparative)
- 1) Kiran is naughtier than many other boys.
 - 2) Kiran is naughtier than many other boy.
 - 3) Kiran is naughtier than any other boy.
 - 4) Kiran is naughtier than some other boys.
99. I like you better than him. (into positive)
- 1) I don't like him as good as you.
 - 2) I like you as good as him.
 - 3) I like him as good as you.
 - 4) I don't like you as good as him.
100. I am the worst fellow. (change into positive)
- 1) No fellow is as bad as I.
 - 2) No fellow are as bad as I.
 - 3) I am not a bad fellow.
 - 4) I am a bad fellow.

ANSWERS : 71.1 72.3 73.3 74.3 75.- 76.2 77.2 78.3 79.- 80.4 81.2 82.1 83.2
84.1 85.1 86.4 87.1 88.4 89.4 90.1 91.3 92.3 93.2 94.4 95.2 96.4
97.2 98.1 99.1 100.4

PHRASES AND ITS KINDS

A group of words that makes sense, but not complete sense, is called a **Phrase**; as,

In the morning.

After an hour.

On the table.

With my brother.

Each of the above groups of words has some sense, but not complete sense. In order to express complete sense, some more words are required. Such a group of words having incomplete sense is called a **Phrase**.

It follows, therefore, that a **Phrase cannot contain a Predicate**.

In the following sentences, the groups of words in italics are **Phrases** :

The sun rises *in the east*.

The cat sat *on a wall*.

There came a giant to my *door*.

The tops *of the mountains* were covered with snow.

It was a sunset *of great beauty*.

THE ADJECTIVE PHRASE

A group of words that does the work of an Adjective is called an **Adjective Phrase**. Examine the following pairs of sentences :

- (a) The doctor was a *kind* man.
(b) The doctor was a *man with a kindly nature*.
- (a) The landlord was a *wealthy* man.
(b) The landlord was a man *of great wealth*.
- (a) They lived in a *stone* house.
(b) They lived in a house *built of stone*.
- (a) I like to see a *smiling* face.
(b) I like to see a face *with a smile on it*.
- (a) She was wearing a *gold chain*.
(b) She was wearing a chain *made of gold*.

In each of the above pairs of sentences, we have first a single word describing a noun, and then a group of words describing the same noun.

For example, the group of words 'with a kindly nature' tells us what sort of man the doctor was. It qualifies the noun 'man' just as an adjective does. Thus it does the work of an adjective, and is therefore called an **Adjective Phrase**.

Study the following Adjectives and the Adjective Phrases that have the same meaning:

Adjectives

A *red* shirt

A *white* elephant

A *jungle* track

A *blue-eyed* boy

A *blank* page.

The *Indian* flag

A *heavy* load

Adjective Phrases

A shirt *of red colour*

An elephant *with a white skin*

A track *through the jungle*

A boy *with blue eyes*

A page *with no writing on it*

The flag *of India*

A load *of heavy weight*

EXERCISE-1

I. Pick out the Adjective Phrases in the following sentences :

1. He is a person of very noble nature.
2. A man in great difficulties came to me for help.
3. My uncle is a man without an enemy.
4. A stitch in time saves nine.
5. A friend in need is a friend indeed.
6. A bird in hand is worth two in the bush.
7. Do you know the story of the noble Padmini.
8. This is the best book on English grammar.
9. Wild beasts in small cages are a sorry sight.
10. Only a man with plenty of money can buy such a car.

II. Fill in the blanks with suitable Adjective Phrases :

1. The water _____ is very deep.
2. The door _____ was closed.
3. Draw a map _____.
4. She is a woman _____.
5. Children like books _____.
6. She lost a ring _____.
7. The leaves _____ are dry.
8. The teachers _____ are very hard-working.
9. We heard the roar _____.
10. The road _____ is very muddy.

III. In each of the following sentences replace the Adjective in italics by an Adjective Phrase of the same meaning :

1. A grey cloud spread over the sky.
2. He lived in a wooden hut.
3. He had a bald head.
4. I lost a valuable ring.
5. Brave deeds are always praised.
6. The Indian people are very brave.
7. I have passed two sleepless nights.
8. It was a horrible night.
9. I met a village girl.
10. The Negroes have black skin.

IV. In each of the following sentences replace the Adjective Phrase in italics by an Adjective of the same meaning :

1. He wore a turban made of silk.
2. He has done a deed of shame.
3. He is a man without a friend.
4. I met a girl from a cottage.
5. John was a man with plenty of wealth.
6. Our leader was a person full of hope.

7. Nelson was a boy without fear.
8. The tops of the mountains were covered with snow.
9. She is a girl of great courage.
10. I have lost my ring made of gold.

Answers :

- I. 1. of very noble nature 2. in great difficulties 3. without an enemy
4. in time 5. in need 6. in hand 7. of the noble Padmini 8. on English grammar
9. in small cages 10. with plenty of money
- II. 1. in the river 2. of the room 3. of India 4. of noble nature 5. of stories
6. made of gold 7. of this tree 8. of our school 9. of a lion
10. in front of our school.
- III. 1. A cloud of grey colour 2. a hut made of wood 3. a head with no hair on it
4. a ring of great value 5. Deeds of bravery 6. The people of India 7. two nights
without sleep 8. a night full of horror 9. a girl from a village 10. skin of black colour.
- IV. 1. a silk turban 2. a shameful deed 3. a friendless man 4. a cottage girl 5. a wealthy
man 6. a hope full person 7. a fearless boy 8. the mountain tops 9. a courageous girl
10. my gold ring

V. Write five Sentences containing Adjective Phrases.

THE ADVERB PHRASE

A group of words that does the work of an Adverb is called an Adverb Phrase. An Adverb is often a word that answers 'How?', 'When?' and 'Where' questions. Examine the following pairs of sentences :

- | | |
|--|-----------|
| 1. (a) John ran quickly. | (How?). |
| (b) John ran with great speed. | (How?). |
| 2. (a) She answered rudely. | (How?). |
| (b) She answered in a rude manner. | (How?). |
| 3. (a) He does his work carelessly. | (How?). |
| (b) He does his work without any care. | (How?). |
| 4. (a) We didn't live here then. | (When?). |
| (b) We didn't live here in those days. | (When?). |
| 5. (a) He is coming now. | (When?). |
| (b) He is coming at this very moment. | (When?). |
| 6. (a) The arrow fell here. | (Where?). |
| (b) The arrow fell on this spot. | (Where?). |
| 7. (a) He fell down. | (Where?). |
| (b) He fell to the ground. | (Where?). |
| 8. (a) You can get it everywhere. | (Where?). |
| (b) You can get it at every place. | (Where?). |

In each of the above pairs of sentences we have first a single word (an Adverb), and then a group of words doing the same work.

For example, the group of words 'with great speed' answers the question 'How?' Thus **it does the work of an Adverb**, and is therefore called an **Adverb Phrase**.

Study the following Adverb and the Adverb Phrases that have the same meaning :

| Adverbs | Adverb Phrases |
|-------------|---|
| Bravely | In a brave manner, or with bravery. |
| Unwisely | In an unwise manner, or without wisdom. |
| Swiftly | In a swift manner, or with swiftness. |
| Beautifully | In a beautiful style. |
| Recently | Just now, or at a recent date. |
| Soon | Before very long, or at an early date. |
| There | At that place. |
| Away | To another place. |

EXERCISE - 2

I. Pick out Adverb Phrases in the following sentences :

1. A lion lived in a forest.
2. Nothing can live on the moon.
3. Come into the garden.
4. Honesty is written on his face.
5. She was standing in the middle of the bridge.
6. They fought to the last man.
7. The shepherd shouted to them at the top of his voice.
8. It must be done at any price.
9. Keep him at arm's length.
10. The shoe is pressing on my toe.

II. Fill in the blanks with suitable Adverb Phrases :

1. He failed _____
2. Do not hit the ball _____
3. I agree _____
4. He treated his relatives _____
5. The monkey climbed _____
6. He reached school _____
7. He does his homework _____
8. The child was playing _____
9. That happened _____
10. She sang _____

III. In each of the following Sentences replace the Adverb in italics by an Adverb Phrase of the same meaning :

1. The pigeon flies *swiftly*.
2. Did Misha behave *well*?

13. We will pitch the tents just *here*.
4. We hope to finish it *soon*.
5. Go *away*.
6. She spoke to us *gently*.
7. He was standing *there* with his father.
8. We passed our days *joyfully*.
9. Do your work *honestly*.
10. My sister paints very *beautifully*.

IV. In each of the following sentences replace the Adverb Phrase in italics by an Adverb of the same meaning :

1. Let us stop work *from this very moment*.
2. I thank you *with all my heart*.
3. He arrived just *at that moment*.
4. He was wounded *in a terrible manner*.
5. It was *on this spot* that he died.
6. I answered his questions *in a polite manner*.
7. I hope that he will come *at a very early date*.
8. The wind blew *with great violence*.
9. Send him *to another place*.
10. Our soldiers fought *in a brave manner*.

ANSWERS :

- I. 1. in a forest 2. on the moon 3. into the garden 4. on his face 5. in the middle of the bridge 6. to the last man 7. at the top of his voice 8. at any price 9. at arm's length 10. on my toe.
- II. 1. in the examination 2. on your head 3. on this point 4. with kindness 5. up the tree 6. at the right time 7. in a neat manner 8. on the road 9. a year ago 10. at the party.
- III. 1. with a swift speed 2. in a good manner 3. at this place 4. before very long 5. to another place 6. in a gentle manner 7. at that place 8. with joy 9. in an honest manner 10. in a beautiful style.
- IV. 1. immediately 2. heartily 3. then 4. terribly 5. here 6. politely 7. soon 8. violently 9. away 10. bravely

V. Write five sentences containing *Adverb Phrases*.

THE NOUN PHRASE

A group of words that does the work of a Noun is called a Noun Phrase. Examine the following sentences :

1. The boy wants *something*.
2. The boy wants *to go home*.

In sentence 1, the word 'something' acts as the Object of the verb 'wants'. Thus it does the work of a Noun.

In sentence 2, the group of words, 'to go home', acts as the Object of the verb 'wants'. Thus it *does the work of a Noun*, and is therefore called a *Noun Phrase*.

A group of words that acts as the Subject or the Object of a verb, is a Noun Phrase :

Here are some examples of Noun Phrases, Study them carefully :

To win a prize is my ambition. (Subject)

Early to bed is my habit. (Subject)

Working all night will do you no good. (Subject)

We enjoy *playing cricket*. (Object)

He hopes *to win the first prize*. (Object)

I tried to *help my friend*. (Object)

EXERCISE-3

I. Pick out Noun Phrases in the following sentences :

1. His father wished to see the principal.
2. He refused to answer my question.
3. I dislike mixing with bad boys.
4. To tell lies is disgraceful.
5. Thinking good thoughts ennoble our character.
6. Promise to come again.
7. Your doing such a thing surprises me.
8. He denied stealing the money.
9. Working on Sundays gives me no pleasure.
10. Have you ever tried climbing a coconut palm?

II. Supply a Noun Phrase :

1. I want _____
2. _____ delights me.
3. We all hope _____
4. He presented _____
5. _____ is my ambition.
6. Do you wish _____?
7. _____ is not easy.
8. I don't expect _____.
9. He wishes _____
10. Cats like _____

III. Use the following (Adjective / Adverb / Noun) Phrases in sentences :

1. in our class
2. to go home
3. in a loud voice
4. with my friends
5. at nine o' clock.

6. to help my friends.
7. on the top of the hill
8. in the twinkling of an eye
9. with a smile
10. reading short stories

ANSWERS:

1. to see the principal 2. to answer my question 3. mixing with bad boys 4. to tell lies
5. Thinking good thoughts 6. to come again 7. Your doing such a thing 8. stealing the money
9. working on Sundays 10. climbing a coconut palm.
1. to go home 2. Reading short stories 3. to get through 4. to win the first prize
5. to become a doctor 6. Learning English grammar 7. to see him again 8. to see the Principal
9. to drink milk

CLAUSES AND ITS KINDS

We have learnt that a phrase is a group of words which makes sense but not complete sense. *A phrase does not have a predicate.*

Examine the group of words in italics in the following sentence :

He has a chain *which is made of gold.*

Here '*which is made of gold*' is not a phrase since it has a **Subject** (which) and a **Predicate** (is made of gold).

Since it has a Subject and a Predicate, it looks like a complete sentence; yet it is not a complete sentence because it forms only part of a sentence.

Such a group of words which forms part of a sentence, and contains a Subject and a Predicate, is called a **Clause**.

In the following sentences, the groups of words in italics are **Clauses** :

People *who are honest* are respected.

We cannot start *while it is raining.*

I think *that you have made a mistake.*

With respect to Clause there are three kinds of sentences :

1. **Simple Sentence**
2. **Compound Sentence**
3. **Complex Sentence**

A sentence that has only *one Clause* (one Subject + one Predicate) is called a **Simple Sentence**:

The boy broke his leg.

She washed her clothes.

Manu stood first in his class.

I wrote a letter to my father.

A sentence that has two *Independent Clauses* is called a **Compound Sentence**.

Misha saw Manu, and she became happy.

You must work hard, or you will fail.

Many were called, but few were chosen.

The sun rose, and the fog disappeared.

A compound Sentence is really two simple sentences which are separated by a Conjunction (and, or, but, etc.) and a comma.

A Sentence that has one *Independent Clause* and one or more *Dependent Clauses* is called a **Complex Sentence**.

The *Independent Clause* is also known as the *Principal Clause*.

The *Dependent Clause* is also known as the *Subordinate Clause*.

The Subordinate Clause depends on the Principal Clause for its meaning. A *Subordinate Clause cannot stand alone*. It does not make good sense by itself.

Study carefully the following examples of complex sentences. The group of words in italics in each sentence is a Subordinate Clause.

He lost the book *that I had given him*.

Those *who came late* were punished.

I like the boys *who work hard*.

I went to the place *where I had lost my pen*.

I want to know *if he has passed*.

EXERCISE-4

I Mark the correct circle with a '□' if you think the given item is a Phrase (P), Clause (C) or a complex Sentence (S) :

- | | P | C | S |
|--|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Because she was unwell. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2. Under the tree. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3. Who stood first in the examination. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4. I wrote a letter to my father. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5. With my brother. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6. She left her books on the table. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 7. Although he was rich. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 8. Of the people. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 9. I enjoy watching television. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 10. While we were sitting there. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 11. Seeing the boys. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 12. Children were playing in the park. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 13. That he was a good student. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 14. To the meeting. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 15. Do you like to swim ? | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 16. Which I had lost. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 17. This is a very interesting exercise. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 18. In the morning. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

II. State whether the following sentences are Simple, Compound or Complex :

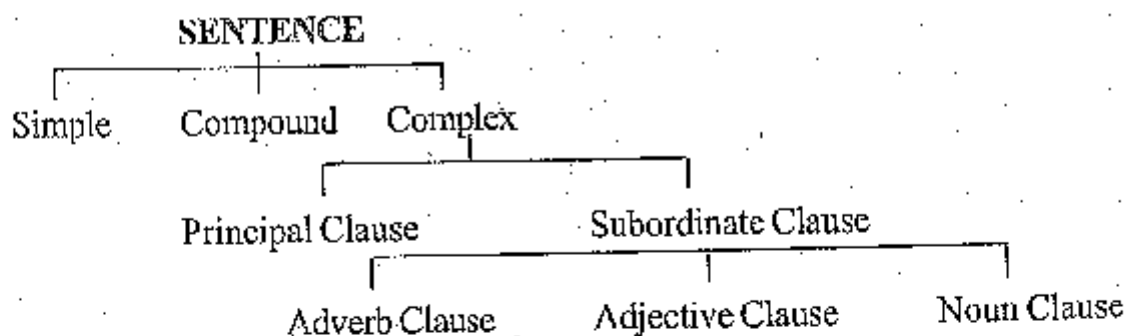
1. A widow is one whose husband is dead.
2. We hope to see him back soon.
3. Make haste, or else you will be late.
4. He placed his chair next to hers.
5. You will get what you want.
6. This coat cannot be mine, for it is too long.
7. The people who live here are simple and hard working.
8. He finished his exercise, and put away his books.
9. Take a lamp because the night is dark.
10. We went to the cinema last night.
11. My partners as well as I were ruined.
12. He is very poor, but he does not complain.
13. I shall help you if you work hard.
14. I invited her to the party, but she did not come.
15. I was very happy to see you.
16. We must eat, or we cannot live.
17. We shall wait until you come.
18. He seems contented with his lot.

ANSWERS:

I. 1.C 2.P 3.C 4.S 5.P 6.S 7.C 8.P 9.S 10.C 11.P 12.S 13.C 14.P 15.S 16.C 17.S 18.P

II. 1. Complex 2. Simple 3. Compound 4. Simple 5. Complex 6. Compound 7. Complex 8. Compound 9. Complex 10. Simple 11. Simple 12. Compound 13. Complex 14. Compound 15. Simple 16. Compound 17. Complex 18. Simple

The following chart shows the classification and structure of the sentence :



THE ADVERB CLAUSE

An Adverb Clause is a group of words which contains a Subject and a Predicate of its own, and does the work of an Adverb.

An Adverb indicates the *Time, Place, Reason, Purpose, Result, Condition*, or the *Manner* of an action.

The group of words in italics in each of the following sentences is an Adverb Clause :

| | |
|--|---------------------|
| I will do it <i>when I think fit</i> . | (Showing Time) |
| <i>As soon as he heard the news</i> he came to me. | (Showing Time) |
| I have put it <i>where I can find it again</i> . | (Showing Place) |
| They can stay <i>where they are</i> . | (Showing Place) |
| <i>Because I like you</i> , I shall help you. | (Showing Reason) |
| He failed <i>because he didn't work hard</i> . | (Showing Reason) |
| We eat <i>so that we may live</i> . | (Showing Purpose) |
| Walk fast <i>so that you may catch the train</i> . | (Showing Purpose) |
| It was so cold <i>that many died</i> . | (Showing Result) |
| He is so good a man <i>that all respect him</i> . | (Showing Result) |
| You may do <i>as you please</i> . | (Showing Manner) |
| It all ended <i>as I expected</i> . | (Showing Manner) |
| You will succeed <i>if you work hard</i> . | (Showing Condition) |
| <i>If I like it</i> , I shall buy it. | (Showing Condition) |

EXERCISE-5

I. Pick out the Adverb Clauses in the following sentences :

1. You may sit wherever you like.
2. When I was younger, I thought so.
3. We shall wait here until you come.
4. I shall remain where I am.
5. I forgive you since you repent.
6. Because you have done this, you will be punished.
7. As he was not here, I spoke to his brother.
8. If you eat too much you will be ill.
9. He finished first though he began late.
10. He does not always speak as he thinks.
11. Take a lamp because the night is dark.
12. I shall help him because he is my friend.
13. If I make a promise I keep it.
14. When the sun had set he returned home.
15. As soon as I saw the cobra I ran away.

II. Supply suitable Adverb Clause :

1. He is so busy _____
2. Do not go _____
3. He ran so fast _____
4. Nobody likes him _____
5. Make hay _____
6. He will succeed _____
7. I shall do nothing _____
8. The bell had rung _____
9. He didn't go to school _____
10. We have come _____

ANSWERS:

- I. 1. Whereever you like 2. When I ws younger 3. untill you come 4. Where I am
 5. Since you repent 6. because you have done this 7. as he was not here 8. if you eat
 too much 9. though he began late 10. as he thinks 11. because the night is dark
 12. because he is my friend 13. if I make a promise 14. When the sun had set
 15. as soon as I saw the cobra

- II. 1. That he can't accompany you 2. until I come 3. that he won the racc. 4. because he
 is dishonest 5. while the sun shines. 6. if he works hard. 7. if you like so. 8. before
 I reached the school 9. because he was unwell 10. where you wanted.

THE ADJECTIVE CLAUSE

An **Adjective Clause** is a group of words which contains a Subject and a Predicate of its own, and does the work of an Adjective.

An **Adjective** qualifies a Noun or Pronoun.

The group of words in italics in each of the following sentences is an **Adjective Clause**

The umbrella *which has a broken handle* is mine.

(*which umbrella*)

He *that climbs too high* is sure to fall.

(*which 'he'*)

I know the place *where he was born*.

(*which place*)

EXERCISE-6

I. Pick out the Adjective Clauses in the following sentences :

1. Mary had a little lamb whose fleece was as white as snow.
2. The house that I live in belongs to my father.
3. I have a little shadow that goes in and out with me.
4. The dog that bites does not bark.
5. I remember the house where I spent my childhood.
6. He died in the village where he was born.
7. He never does anything that is silly.
8. Here is the book you want.
9. God helps those who help themselves.
10. People who live in glass houses should not throw stones.
11. The house we lived in has been sold.
12. All that glitters is not gold.
13. I forgot to tell you the date when I shall return.
14. The story that you are telling is not true.
15. I have seen the house where Nchru was born.

II. Supply suitable Adjective Clauses :

1. I know the place _____
2. He is the man _____
3. The house _____ is a hundred years old.

4. Where is the book _____?
5. Boys _____ will be punished.
6. The girl _____ won the first prize.
7. She is the woman _____.
8. No man _____ shall suffer in any way.
9. I found the pen _____.
10. That was the reason _____.

ANSWERS:

- I. 1. whose fleece was as white as snow 2. that I live in 3. that goes in and out with me
4. that bites 5. where I spent my childhood 6. where he was born 7. that is silly
8. that you want 9. who help themselves 10. who live in glass houses 11. that we lived in
12. that glitters 13. when I shall return 14. that you are telling 15. where Nehru was born
- II. 1. where he lives 2. who helped me in need 3. that I live in 4. I had lent you
5. who pluck flowers 6. who is our class leader 7. who has bought our house
8. who stands by us 9. that I had lost 10. why I was late.

THE NOUN CLAUSE

A **Noun Clause** is a group of words which contains a Subject and a Predicate of its own, and does the work of a Noun.

A **Noun** usually acts as a Subject or Object in a sentence.

The group of words in italics in each of the following sentences is a **Noun Clause** :

- | | |
|--|-----------|
| I hope <i>that I shall get a prize.</i> | (Object) |
| <i>That you have come</i> pleases me. | (Subject) |
| I fear <i>that I shall fail.</i> | (Object) |
| <i>That you should say this</i> is very strange. | (Subject) |

EXERCISE-7

I. Point out the Noun Clauses in the following sentences :

1. I wonder how she has won the first prize.
2. I fear that I shall fail.
3. Do you deny that you stole my watch?
4. I thought that it would be a fine day.
5. That you should cheat me hurts me.
6. How this has come to pass is not known to me.
7. That he will come back soon is certain.
8. We asked her how old she was.
9. I always do whatever is right.
10. Tell me where she lives.
11. What we can do about it I do not know.
12. How long she stayed there is not known.
13. I don't know what I will do.

14. It is uncertain whether he will come.
15. Can you guess what it is?
16. I don't understand how it all happened.

II. Supply suitable Noun Clauses :

1. I cannot understand _____
2. They all said _____
3. I think _____
4. This is just _____
5. He told me _____
6. _____ is a well-known fact.
7. Do you know _____?
8. I don't know _____
9. Please show me _____
10. _____ is quite uncertain.

ANSWERS:

- I. 1. how she has won the first prize 2. that I shall fail 3. that you stole my watch
4. that it would be a fine day 5. that you should cheat me 6. How this has come to pass
7. That he will come back soon 8. How old she was 9. whatever is right 10. where she
lives 11. what we can do about it 12. How long she stayed there 13. what I will do
14. whether he will come 15. what it is 16. how it all happened.
- II. 1. what you want 2. that he was a liar 3. (that) he won't come 4. what I wanted
5. that he won't go there 6. That he is a rogue 7. where he lives 8. why she has come
here 9. what you have in your hand 10. That he will succeed.

We have seen that there are **three kinds of Clauses**

1. **Adverb Clauses** which do the work of Adverbs.
2. **Adjective Clauses** which do the work of Adjectives.
3. **Noun Clauses** which do the work of Nouns.

Now examine carefully the following sentences, and notice the work done by the italicized Clause in each :

1. I knew *where he had gone*.
2. I went to the place *where he had gone*.
3. I went *where he had gone*.

In sentence 1, the Clause does the work of a Noun. It acts as the Object of the verb 'knew'.

In sentence 2, the Clause does the work of an Adjective. It qualifies the Noun 'place'.

In sentence 3, the Clause does the work of an Adverb. It indicates the place of action.

We thus see that the same clause may be a Noun Clause in one sentence, an Adjective Clause in another, and an Adverb Clause in yet another.

It is, therefore, clear that we cannot say what kind of clause a Clause is unless we carefully examine *the work it does in a sentence*.

EXERCISE-8

- I. Pick out the Clause in each of the following sentences, and say what kind of Clause (Noun, Adjective or Adverb) it is :

(There are six Clauses of each kind)

1. That Mohan was a thief was not known to me.
2. When the cat is away the mice will play.
3. The company that supplied goods has failed.
4. The fact is that he knows nothing.
5. Wait here till I return.
6. The boys who are playing there are my friends.
7. I asked her how old she was.
8. As soon as she saw her father, she began to cry.
9. The complaint which he made against me is false.
10. You can go wherever you like.
11. She married the doctor whom you know.
12. It is true that he has left his job.
13. He ran fast lest he should miss the train.
14. I told her the reason why she had failed.
15. The house where my brother lives has been sold.
16. How she reached here is not known to anybody.
17. If you work hard, you will succeed.
18. He was told that he must not be late again.

ANSWERS :

- I. 1. That Mohan was a thief (Noun Clause) 2. When the cat is away (Adverb Clause)
 3. That supplied goods (Adjective Clause) 4. That he knows nothing (Noun Clause)
 5. till I return (Adverb Clause) 6. who are playing there (Adjective Clause) 7. how old she was (Noun Clause) 8. As soon as she saw her father (Adverb Clause) 9. which he made against me (Adjective Clause) 10. wherever you like (Adverb Clause) 11. whom you know (Adjective Clause) 12. that he has left the job (Noun Clause) 13. lest he should miss the train (Adverb Clause) 14. why she had failed (Adjective Clause) 15. where my brother lives (Adjective Clause) 16. How she reached here (Noun Clause) 17. If you work hard (Adverb Clause) 18. that he must not be late again (Noun Clause)

Practice-1

1. I want to visit the Tajmahal.
 a. Noun phrase. b. Adverb phrase.
 c. Adjective phrase. d. Noun clause.
2. My father hates playing cricket
 The underlined part is _____
 a. adjective phrase. b. Noun phrase.
 c. adverb phrase. d. Adv. clause.

3. He loves to issue harsh orders.

The underlined part is

- a. Noun clause
- b. Noun phrase
- c. Adverb clause
- d. Adverb phrase

4. The warrior fought with great courage.

- a. Noun clause
- b. Noun phrase
- c. Adverb phrase
- d. Adjective phrase

5. She failed in her duty.

- a. Noun phrase
- b. Adverb phrase
- c. Adjective phrase
- d. Adj clause

6. The crowd stopped in the bazaar.

- a. Noun phrase
- b. Adverb clause
- c. Adverb phrase
- d. Noun clause

7. The English flag 'English' is.

- a. Adjective clause
- b. Adjective phrase
- c. Noun clause
- d. Adjective

8. The longest day, 'Longest' is _____.

- a. Adverb
- b. Adjective phrase
- c. Noun Clause
- d. Adjective

9. A body with blue eyes It is.

- a. Adjective
- b. Adjective phrase
- c. Adjective clause
- d. Adverb phrase

10. A Jungle track this is.

- a. Adjective
- b. Adjective phrase
- c. Adjective clause
- d. Adverb phrase

11. He likes to see a smiling face.

The adjective phrase is

- a. a smiling face
- b. to see a smiling face
- c. a face with a smile on it
- d. a face smiling

12. A friend in need is a friend in deed.

The adjective phrase is _____

- a. in need
- b. a friend
- c. indeed
- d. no adjective phrase

13. A stitch in the time saves nine.

The adjective phrase is

- a. a stitch
- b. a stitch in the time
- c. saves
- d. nine

14. A person in great difficulties came to my father for help. The adjective phrase is

- a. a person
- b. came to my father
- c. for help
- d. in great difficulties

15. A man without an enemy is a man with few friends. The adjective phrases in this sentence are _____

- a. man and enemy
- b. without an enemy and friends
- c. without an enemy and with few friends
- d. without an enemy and is a man

16. She fell to the ground. The adverb phrase is
 - a. to the ground
 - b. she fell
 - c. she fell to the ground
 - d. ground
17. She arrived at that moment.
 - a. now
 - b. there
 - c. here
 - d. then
18. Meghana succeeded in the long run.
 - a. ultimately
 - b. in the end
 - c. fast
 - d. in the closing
19. I love teaching English.
The underlined part is
 - a. Noun
 - b. Noun phrase
 - c. Adjective
 - d. Adjective phrase
20. My brother likes girls with long hair.
The underlined part is
 - a. Adjective
 - b. Adjective clause
 - c. Adjective phrase
 - d. Noun clause

Answers :

1.a 2.b 3.b 4.c 5.b 6.c 7.d 8.d 9.b 10.a 11.c 12.a 13.b 14.d 15.c
16.a 17.d 18.a 19.b 20.c

Practice -2

1. A white horse-the adjective phrase is.
a. a horse of any colour
b. a horse with a white skin.
c. a horse in white limbs
d. a white horse
2. Raghava is a boy without fear. Write the adjective
a. a fearful boy
b. a fearless boy
c. a boy of fear
d. a boy who doesn't feel fear
3. This is of no use - write the adjective.
a. useful
b. useless
c. usefulness
d. usage
4. I met a little boy from a cottage.
a. a cottage boy
b. a boy in cottage
c. a boyish one
d. a boy born in cottage
5. The shortest night the adjective.
a. the night of shortest time
b. the shortest night
c. the shorter night
d. the night of any time
6. A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush. The adjective phrases are
a. in the hand
b. in the bush
c. in the hand, in the bush
d. worth two in the bush
7. You can buy the book everywhere adjective phrase is
a. in all places
b. in book shops
c. in a few book shops
d. in some places

9. She answered me rudely.
The adverb phrase is _____
a. in a pleasant way
b. in a very rude manner
c. in a swift manner
d. not swift
10. A person with a bad temper _____ the adjective is _____
a. a person of bad temper
b. a bad tempered person
c. a person having not temper
d. a person without any temper
11. The adverb phrase of the adverb 'there' is _____
a. to another place
b. at that place
c. all the places
d. everywhere
12. The adverb phrase of the adverb 'away' is _____
a. all the places
b. every where
c. any place
d. to another place
13. Abroad _____ the adverb phrase is _____
a. to (in) a foreign country
b. in our country
c. very broad
d. not broad
14. The adverb of at an early date is _____
a. fast
b. quickly
c. slowly
d. soon
15. The adverb of once upon a time is _____
a. early
b. in former times
c. formerly
d. recently
16. I want something.
The word something is _____
a. noun phrase
b. noun
c. noun clause
d. adjective phrase
17. My father wanted to talk to the principal. The noun phrase is _____
a. to the principal
b. to talk to the principal
c. my father
d. wanted to talk
18. No one can live on the moon. The adverb phrase is _____
a. no one
b. can live
c. on the moon
d. no one can live
19. They sat for a while on the bank of the river.
Find the adverb phrases _____
a. for a while
b. on the bank
c. for a while and on the bank
d. They sat and of the river.
20. Keep her at arm's length.
The underlined one is _____
a. adverb
b. adverb phrase
c. noun
d. noun phrase

Answers :

1.b 2.b 3.b 4.a 5.b 6.c 7.a 8.c 9.a 10.b 11.b 12.d 13.a 14.d 15.c 16.b
17.h 18.c 19.c 20.b

Practice - 3

- Our teacher speaks like a born orator. The underlined part is
a. adverb phrase b. adverb
c. adjective phrase d. adjective
- You do not talk like that. The underlined part is
a. adverb b. adverb phrase
c. noun d. adjective phrase
- I don't see the point of the story.
a. adjective b. adverb
c. adjective phrase d. adverb phrase
- She did it against her will. The underlined part is
a. adverb b. adjective
c. adverb phrase d. adjective phrase
- We enjoy walking in the meadows. The underlined part is
a. noun b. noun phrase
c. adjective d. adjective phrase
- She is a person of no importance. The underlined part is
a. adjective phrase b. adjective
c. adverb d. adverb phrase
- Show me how to do it. The noun phrase is
a. how to do it b. do it
c. show me d. show me how to do it.
- I have forgotten how to draw the money.
a. noun b. noun phrase
c. adjective d. adverb phrase
- Make yourself at home. The adverb phrase is
a. make b. yourself
c. home d. at home
- He comes now. It takes
a. how b. where
c. when d. which

Answers :

1.a 2.b 3.c 4.c 5.b 6.a 7.a 8.b 9.d 10.c

TYPES OF SENTENCES

వ్యాకర్ణపంతమైన పదముల సముదాయమును sentence అని అంటారు. దాని స్వభావమును బట్టి sentence విధాలు.

1. Assertive sentence
2. Interrogative sentence
3. Imperative sentence
4. Exclamatory sentence

1. Assertive Sentence :

దీనినే Affirmative sentence అనియు Declarative sentence అనియు అంటారు.

A Sentence that makes a statement or an assertion is called an Assertive sentence.

Statements ను తెలియజేసే వాక్యాలు Assertive sentences.

Ex :-

1. The cow eats grass.
2. Ashoka was a great king.
3. She is my classmate.
4. Apsara is dancing well.
5. The earth is round.
6. This chair is mine.
7. Barking dogs seldom bite.
8. The sun rises in the east.
9. All that glitters is not gold.
10. India is our mother land.

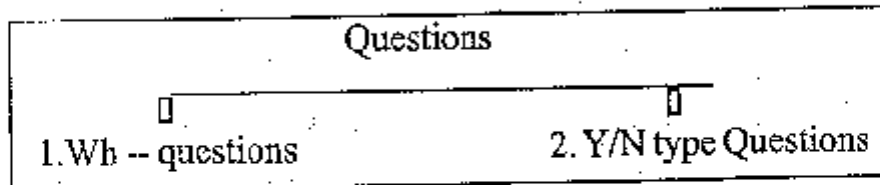
పాఠ్యపుస్తకాలలో అధిక భాగం వాక్యాలు Assertive sentences.

2. Interrogative sentence :

An Interrogative sentence is a sentence which asks questions.

ప్రశ్నలు అడగడానికి ఉపయోగపడే వాక్యాలన్నింటిని Interrogative sentences అంటారు.

ఇవి 2 విధాలు :



1. Wh-Questions :- ఇవి wh- తో ప్రారంభమవుతాయి. Who, Whom, Whose, Why, Were, When, What, Which, How, How many, How much etc లతో ప్రారంభమయ్యే ప్రశ్నలు.

Ex.1. Who is your favourite poet ?

2. Whom do you want to meet ?

3. Whose pen is this?
4. Why do you go to market?
5. Where is your house?
6. When is your birthday?
7. What is your name?
8. Which class are you studying in?
9. How do you go to school?
10. How many boys are there in the class?
11. How much sugar is there in the tin?

2. Yes/No type questions :

ఇవి helping verbs తో ప్రారంభమగును. ఈ ప్రశ్నలకు answer గా yes లేదా no వస్తుంది.

is, am, are, was, were, do, does, did, have, has, had, shall, will, can మొ॥ వాటితో ప్రారంభమగును.

Ex: 1. Is it a chair?

2. Am I a student?
3. Are you a boy?
4. Was it Sunday yesterday?
5. Were the boys in the hall yesterday?
6. Do you eat meat?
7. Does he go to market?
8. Did they come to class last week?
9. Have you finished the work?
10. Has Laxmi gone to Hyderabad?
11. Had they drawn the pictures?
12. Will you come tomorrow?
13. Can you read the lesson?

పై వాక్యాలన్నింటికీ answer గా Yes/No వస్తాయి. కాబట్టి వాటిని Y/N type questions అని అంటారు. ఏటన్నింటికీ చివర తప్పకుండా question mark పెట్టాలి.

3. Imperative sentence : An imperative sentence is a sentence which expresses a command, a request or a wish.

Commands ను, Requests ను తెలియజేయు వాక్యాలు Imperative sentences.

ఈ వాక్యాలలో Subject 'you' compulsory కాదు. ఇది లోపించి యుంటుంది. (subject can be understood)

COMMANDS

- Ex: 1. Sit down.
2. Come in
3. Open the window.
4. Close the door.

ఏటిలో Subject లోపించి ఉంటుంది. 'you' అనేది subject ఇవి verb తో ప్రారంభమవుతాయి.

5. Get in.
6. Go out.
7. Mind your business.
8. Stand up.
9. Stay there.
10. Clean the black board.

REQUESTS

1. Kindly help me.
2. Please, bring me a cup of coffee.
3. Please come in.
4. Kindly sanction the amount.

Exclamatory sentence : A sentence which expresses a sudden or strong feeling is called an exclamatory sentence.

Sudden feeling, strong feeling ను తెలియజేసే వాక్యాలను Exclamatory sentences అంటారు. వీరిని Exclamation mark (!) తో సూచిస్తారు.

- Ex: 1. How beautiful the sky is !
 2. What a fine morning !
 3. How cold the night is !
 4. What a beautiful flower !
 5. How well he sings !
 6. How sweet the rose smells !
 7. Alas ! He is no more.
 8. Hurrah ! we won the game.

| S.No. | Type of Sentence | Character |
|-------|------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. | Assertive Sentence | Statement |
| 2. | Interrogative Sentence | Question |
| 3. | Imperative Sentence | Command/request |
| 4. | Exclamatory Sentence | Sudden/Strong Feeling |

ఈ table ను జ్ఞాపకం చేసు కొన్నచో గుర్తించడం సులభంగా ఉంటుంది.

EXERCISES

1. Where do you live ?
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
2. Why are you crying here ?
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
3. My mother prepares food in our house.
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
4. I like brinjals.
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
5. Could you lend me hundred rupees please ?
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
6. What a nice idea !
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
7. Stand up.
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
8. Wait a little bit.
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
9. I am busy with my work.
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
10. Don't waste my time.
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
11. Mr. Man Mohan Singh is our Prime Minister.
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
12. When did you come from Hyderabad ?
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
13. Post this letter.
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
14. Get one copy for me.
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
15. May I use your pen please ?
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
16. What a fine morning !
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
17. Clean the floor.
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
18. Does she come now ?
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
19. How do you go to college ?
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory

20. Every cloud has a silver lining.
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
21. Birds fly in the sky.
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
22. I like Sweets.
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
23. What do you require?
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
24. Keep quiet.
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
25. He has no car.
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
26. Consult a good doctor.
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
27. How dirty it is!
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
28. Open the door.
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
29. Come here.
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
30. He is fond of music.
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
31. Latha sings melodiously.
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
32. My name is A.L.Rao.
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
33. Hema doesn't work hard.
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
34. The door was opened.
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
35. Do you play Kabaddi?
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
36. Can you break this glass?
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
37. How much water is there in the tank?
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
38. Don't shout?
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory

39. Hurrah! We won the World Cup.

- a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory

40. Work hard.

- a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory

ANSWERS:

- 1.b 2.b 3.a 4.a 5.c 6.d 7.c 8.c 9.a 10.c 11.a 12.b 13.c 14.c 15.c 16.d
17.c 18.b 19.b 20.a 21.a 22.a 23.b 24.c 25.a 26.c 27.d 28.c 29.c 30.a
31.a 32.a 33.a 34.a 35.b 36.b 37.b 38.c 39.d 40.c

SENTENCES

1. Declarative/Assertive/Affirmative

It makes a statement.

Ex : He is going to school.

2. Interrogative - It asks questions.

Ex: 1. Where are you working ? (wh-question)

2. Do you like coffee ? (Y/N-question)

3. Imperative - Commands or requests.

Ex : Don't move.

4. Exclamatory - Express sudden feeling.

Ex : What a beautiful flower this is !

5. Simple Sentence :

A sentence that has one main clause is called a simple sentence.

Seeing the police, the thief ran away.

6. Complex sentence :

One main clause మరియు one or more subordinate clauses కలిగి యున్న వాక్యము.

Ex : When the thief saw the police, he ran away.

7. Compound sentence :

Two or more main clauses ఉండే వాక్యం compound sentence.

Ex : The thief saw the police and (he) ran away.

8. no, not, never ఉండే వాక్యం negative sentence ఇవి లేని వాక్యం Positive affirmative sentence.

EXERCISES

1. My brother works in a factory.
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
2. Why are you so weak?
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
3. Are you going to Hyderabad now?
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
4. Laxmi is my best friend.
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
5. Suvarsha is in class II.
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
6. Get out.
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
7. May I come in please?
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
8. Ramesh does not go to office.
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
9. What a beautiful statue it is!
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
10. How many boys are there in the class?
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
11. Alas! He is dead.
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
12. Would you mind giving me a plan?
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
13. Laxmi goes to college daily.
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
14. Shiva is my class mate.
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
15. Where do you go?
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
16. Have you completed your work?
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
17. Is it a chair?
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
18. Open the gate.
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
19. Rub your hands.
a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory

20. Hurrah ! we won the game.
 a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
21. Clean the blackboard.
 a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory
22. Are you preparing well ?
 a. Assertive b. Interrogative c. Imperative d. Exclamatory

ANSWERS

1. a 2. b 3. b 4. a 5. a 6. c 7. b 8. a 9. d 10. b 11. d 12. b 13. a 14. a 15. b 16. b
 17. b 18. c 19. c 20. d 21. c 22. b

SIMPLE, COMPOUND AND COMPLEX SENTENCES

STRUCTURE

Objective: After going through this unit/lesson, you will be able to.

1. Acquaint with the clauses in a sentence.
2. Analyse the clauses in a sentence.
3. Learn to frame the simple, compound and complex sentences.
4. Change a sentence from one grammatical structure (simple, compound, complex) to another without altering its sense.

Introduction

Francis Bacon said that writing makes a man exact. Reading and thinking will provide a plenty of thoughts and feelings. One must master the art of arranging words, phrases and clauses in their most effective setting. In this unit, we will see how to transform simple, compound, and complex, one form to other without altering its sense. It will be useful to students to learn variety of expression in writing English.

Structure of Sentence : In the unit No.21, we have learnt about phrase, clauses and sentences. "Structure of a Sentence" is a study in the component parts of a sentence. A sentence has varied structures depending on phrases and clauses employed in its construction. It has two main parts - the subject and the predicate.

Classification of Sentences : According to meaning and mood, sentences are four kinds (1) Assertive, (2) Interrogative, (3) Imperative, (4) Exclamatory which we have learnt in Unit No.21

But according to grammatical structure and number and nature of clause relationship, the sentences are three kinds :

(1) **Simple Sentence** has one finite verb and therefore one main clause. It is analysed into two parts subject and predicate.

1. The young boy was very brave.

2. The old woman was very selfish.
3. The rich man died in an accident.

Subject**Predicate**

- | | | |
|------------------|---|---------------------|
| 1. The young boy | / | was very brave |
| 2. The old woman | / | was very selfish |
| 3. The rich man | / | died in an accident |

The **Subject** may consist of one word or a group of words called phrase e.g. The young boy. It is a noun phrase. The predicate also may be one word or a phrase; died in an accident i.e., verb + a preposition. phrase.

Subject Phrases : a heavy mist, a barking dog, Tom's car, the Bus station, the streets of London etc., In all these the subject word (i.e., the noun) is qualified.

Predicate phrases : likes swimming, sent her a birthday card, elected him president, went home happily in the afternoon, (circumstances) made him a hero, printed in an attractive manner. In all these, the verbs are followed by objects, object complements and adverbial adjuncts.

- (2) **Compound Sentence :** A compound sentence has one main clause and one or more coordinate clauses, joined by coordinate conjunctions, such as and, but, and so, or, or else, yet etc. They are classified as cumulative : and, both and, not only - but also, adversative, but, yet, still; alternative or, nor, or else and illative, for, so, etc.

Ram went to the station and took the Bombay train.

1. Ram went to the station. (one simple sentence)
2. Ram took the Bombay train. (another simple sentence)

Combined into one compound sentence with an.

1. **Main Clause :** Ram went to the station.
2. **Coordinate Clause :** and took the Bombay train.

Look at these :

1. You can go by bus or by train.
2. He was wrong but he wouldn't admit it.
3. Somebody is in the house, for I heard a noise.
4. I can't read small print and therefore I want to get my eyes tested.
5. He wants to become a doctor, so he has chosen Biology.
6. He was unwell, yet he played the match.

- (3) **Complex Sentence :** A complex sentence consists of a principal clause (or main clause) and one or more subordinate clauses, each with its own subject and predicate phrase.

I didn't go to school because I was ill. I didn't go to school = main clause, because I was ill = subordinate clause introduced by a subordinate conjunction, which is the connector of the two clauses or simple sentences - (1) I didn't go to school and (2) I was ill.

Look at these sets of simple sentences.

1. It rained. The match continued.
2. The boy saw the dog. He ran away.
3. Mary was young. Her father was rich.
4. He said. The shop was closed.
5. The man is a minister. He is wearing a gold chain.

These pairs can be combined into complex sentences by using suitable subordinate conjunction.

1. **Although it rained**, the match continued.
2. The boy ran away, **when he saw the dog**.
3. Her father was rich **when Mary was young**.
4. He said **that the shop was closed**.
5. The man **who is wearing a gold chain** is a minister.

Sentences (1-3) contain **adverb clauses** (underlined) : sentence (4) contains a **noun clause** object of the verb **said**, and sentence (5) contains an **adjective clause** defining the man.

The table below shows the main clauses and the subordinate clauses

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1. The match continued (Main Clause) | Although it rained (Subordinate Clause) |
| 2. The boy ran away | when he saw the dog. |
| 3. Her father was rich | when Mary was young. |
| 4. He said | that the shop was closed. |
| 5. The man is a minister | who is wearing a gold chain. |

Note : The main clauses are simple sentences and the subordinate clauses are also simple sentences when they are written without conjunctions **although, when, that, who,**

There are three kinds of subordinate clauses :

- (i) **Noun clauses :** do the work of a noun i.e., as subject, as object, as complement, as object of preposition etc. These are introduced by **Relative Pronouns** (who, which, that) and **relative adverbs** (when, why, where etc.)

Look at the noun clauses in the following and their functions :

1. He knows **that you will come**.
2. **Whether he will agree to this** is doubtful.
3. I don't remember **what he said then**.
4. He is not **what he seems**.
5. He did not care for **what I said**.
6. **That he should have married her** is not surprising.
7. Find out **whether they will accept this**.
8. There is no sense in **what he says**.
9. The truth is **that the man is blind**.
10. We realized **that we made a mistake**.

(ii) Adjective clauses or relative clauses :

An adjective clause does the work of an adjective in its (i) defining, (ii) non-defining functions.

Defining adjective or restrictive clauses : These are necessary clauses, never separated by a comma from its antecedent. They are introduced by a relative which may stand for (i) the subject of the verb, (ii) object of the embedded clause, (iii) or object of a preposition, (iv) or in possessive case.

The book that/which/zero I bought yesterday is lost.

The book is lost _____ the main clause.

I bought it yesterday. (It is in the object position)

The book (I bought the book yesterday) is lost. (joined to the antecedent).

The book (The book I bought yesterday) is lost (the object is fronted)

The book that I bought yesterday is lost. (relative that is inserted)

Note : In these cases the relative can be omitted, then the clause is called a contact clause.

1. The person (whom, who, that, zero) I met at the theatre is my uncle.

2. The person on whom we depended was a cheat.

Or the persons (that, zero) we depended on was a cheat. (relative can be omitted)

3. The person whose bicycle was stolen is my neighbour (relative in possessive case).

4. The person who lost his cycle is my neighbour (relative as subject cannot be omitted).

The relative is in the subject position, and cannot be omitted.

1. The person is my neighbour.

2. The person lost his cycle.

3. The person (the person lost his cycle) is my neighbour.

4. The person who lost his cycle is my neighbour (relative inserted)

Non-defining relative clauses are not necessary clauses; they are separated by a comma; always can be replaced by **which** or **who**; the relative cannot be omitted; they add only some additional information about the antecedent.

Ravi, who is a good friend of mine, has become a minister, (who is a good friend of mine is separated by commas from the main clause; it only means **and he is**, and can be added at the end).

Ravi's father, who is in Delhi, is unwell.

Commas are necessary they should not be omitted. If you write

Ravi's father who is in Delhi is unwell it means Ravi has one father in Delhi, one at Hyderabad, one at Madras and that father who is in Delhi is unwell, others are all right.

(iii) Adverb clauses : Adverb clauses do the work of adverbs in their multiple functions, modifying the verb, adjective, and adverb. Adverb clauses are of different kinds.

1. **Adverb clause of time** introduced by subordinating conjunctions **when, before, after, until, while, as, etc.**

Ex. I'll see you after school is over.

2. Adverb clause of place introduced by where, wherever, etc.

Eg : You can sit where (ever) you like.

3. Adverb clauses of purpose introduced by so that, in order that, etc.

Eg : Lock your cycle so that it is not stolen.

4. Adverb clause of reason : because, as, since, etc.

Eg : Mary was happy because John agreed to marry her.

5. Adverb clause of result : so ... that

Eg : It was so dark that we could not see anything.

6. Adverb clause of condition : If, whether, unless, etc.

Eg : You will become rich only if you work hard.

7. Adverb clause of concession : although, though, etc.

Eg : Though he is old, he still works on the farm.

8. Adverb clause of manner : as, etc.

Eg : The story ended as I had guessed.

9. Adverb clause of comparison : as, then, etc.

Eg : Mary is more intelligent than her sister.

(iv) Conversion / Transformation of Sentences :

Conversion from one type of sentence into another requires changing a phrase into a clause or vice versa.

Simple to compound - a phrase into a main clause.

Simple to complex - a phrase into a subordinate clause.

Compound to simple - a main clause into a phrase.

Complex to simple - a subordinate clause into a phrase.

Compound to complex - a main clause into a subordinate

Complex to compound - a subordinate clause into a main clause.

1. Conversion of phrases into clauses or vice versa cannot be reduced into a set of simple rules. Hence one has to practice with keen observation the transformation of simple, complex and compound sentences. However, the following lists of words will be of some help to the learners.

2. The correct use of the following words will help the learner construct a compound the sentence.

And, but, then, or, so, yet, still, either or neither nor, not only but also, otherwise, else, therefore.

3. The words listed below are useful in writing complex sentences.

As, though, although, that, so that, as soon as, as as, who, what, when, where, which

(Note : 'So' is used both in compound and complex sentences. In complex sentences 'So' is followed by "that")

The following phrases are helpful in writing simple sentences.

In spite of, besides, owing to, on account of, in the event of, present participles, past participles without helping verbs.

(i) Conversion of Simple Sentences to Compound

1. By using 'and' :

- Eg: (i) Putting off his clothes, he plunged into the river. (Simple)
 He put off his clothes and plunged into the river. (Compound)
 (ii) The farmer went home at sun set. (Simple)
 The sun set and the farmer went home. (Compound)

2. By using 'not only but also' :

- Eg: (i) Besides being handsome, she is intelligent. (Simple)
 She is not only handsome but also intelligent. (Compound)
 (ii) In addition to useful advice, he gave me financial help. (Simple)
 He gave me not only useful advice but also financial help. (Compound)

3. By using but, still, yet etc.

- Eg: (i) In spite of hard work, he could not succeed. (Simple)
 He worked hard but he could not succeed. (Compound)
 (ii) In spite of very bad weather, they marched on. (Simple)
 The weather was very bad, still they marched on. (Compound)
 (iii) Notwithstanding her poverty, I love her. (Simple)
 She is poor, yet I love her. (Compound)

4. By using conjunctions like or, otherwise, else, so, therefore, etc.

- Eg: (i) You must pay the fine to get your scooter back. (Simple)
 You must pay the fine or you won't get your scooter back. (Compound)
 (ii) I would have been robbed but for the timely help of the policeman. (Simple)
 The policeman gave me timely help, otherwise I would have been robbed. (Compound)
 (iii) She failed on account of her laziness. (Simple)
 She was lazy, so she failed. (Compound)
 (iv) I was pleased with him for his honesty. (Simple)
 He was honest, therefore I was pleased with him. (Compound)

(ii) Conversion of Simple Sentences into Complex Sentences

By expanding a word or a phrase into a clause.

- Eg: (i) He pleased ignorance of the law. (Simple)
 He pleased that he was ignorant of the law. (Complex)
 (ii) A dead man tells no lies. (Simple)
 A man, who is dead, tells no lies. (Complex)

- (iii) Immediately on reading the telegram, she wept. (Simple)
 As soon as she read the telegram, she, wept. (Complex)
- (iv) Being rich, he can buy two cars. (Simple)
 As he is rich, he can buy two cars. (Complex)
- (v) He is working hard to get rank. (Simple)
 He is working hard so that he may get rank. (Complex)
- (vi) The typist worked to the best of his ability. (Simple)
 The typist worked as best as he could. (Complex)
- (vii) In spite of all his riches, he is not happy. (Simple)
 Although he is rich, he is not happy. (Complex)

(iii) Conversion of Compound Sentences into Simple

1. By using an infinitive.

- Eg: (i) His wife died and this added to his misery. (Compound)
 His wife died to add to his misery. (Simple)

2. By using a participle :

- Eg: The players were tired and they decided to stop the play. (Compound)
 Having been tired, the players decided to stop the play. (Simple)

3. By using a prepositional phrase :

- Eg: (i) He is rich, yet he is not happy. (Compound)
 In spite of his being rich, he is not happy. (Simple)
- (ii) The film is not only interesting but also it conveys a moral. (Compound)
 Besides being interesting, the film conveys a moral. (Simple)

(iv) Conversion of Complex Sentences to Simple Sentences

By converting a clause into a word or a phrase.

- Eg: (i) I am responsible for what I do. (Complex)
 I am responsible for my actions. (Simple)
- (ii) The boy proved that he was brilliant. (Simple)
 The boy proved his brilliance. (Complex)
- (iii) As he was ill, he stayed at home. (Simple)
 He stayed at home on account of his illness. (Complex)
- (iv) When the teacher went out, the pupils made a lot of noise. (Simple)
 The pupils made a lot of noise in the absence of the teacher. (Complex)

(v) Conversion of Compound Sentences to Complex

1. Sentences containing the cumulative conjunction.

- Eg: (i) He wanted to win the prize and worked hard. (Compound)
 He worked hard so that he might win the prize. (Complex)
- (ii) Go to the dentist and he will pull out your painful tooth. (Compound)
 If you go to the dentist, he will pull out your painful tooth. (Complex)

Sentences containing alternative conjunctions like but, still, nevertheless, however, or otherwise, else, either ... or etc.

- Eg: (i) Do it or you will suffer. (Compound)
 (ii) Unless you do it, you will suffer. (Complex)
 (iii) I have known her for many years but I have never seen her. (Compound)
 (iv) Although I have known her for many years, I have never seen her. (Complex)
 (v) His parents were poor, still they gave him the best education. (Compound)
 (vi) Though his parents were poor, they gave him the best education. (Complex)
 (vii) Hurry up, otherwise you will be late. (Compound)
 (viii) Unless you hurry up, you will be late. (Complex)

(vi) Conversion of Complex Sentences to Compound

1. By using cumulative conjunction 'and'.

- Eg: (i) Everybody knows that death is inevitable. (Complex)
 Death is inevitable and everybody knows it. (Compound)
 (ii) I am happy that you have come. (Complex)
 You have come and I am happy for it. (Compound)

2. By using alternative conjunction like 'but'.

- Eg: (i) Although we lost the match, we fought bravely. (Complex)
 We lost the match but we fought bravely. (Compound)
 (ii) I have found my pen that I had lost. (Complex)
 I had lost my pen but I have found it. (Compound)

3. By using alternative conjunction like 'or'.

- Eg: (i) Unless you control your anger, you won't prosper. (Complex)
 Control your anger or you won't prosper. (Compound)

4. By using illusive conjunctions like so, therefore etc.

- Eg: (i) As he wants to be a doctor, he has taken Bi.P.C. (Complex)
 He wants to be a doctor, therefore, he has taken Bi.P.C. (Compound)
 (ii) They took rest because they were tired. (Complex)
 They were tired, so they took rest. (Compound)

Table for conversion of Simple, Compound, Complex Sentences using the following phrases/Conjunctions

Table for conversion of Simple, Compound, Complex Sentences using the following phrases/Conjunctions.

| Simple | Compound | Complex |
|--|---|--|
| 1. In spite of ... In spite of his poverty he is honest. In spite of his hard work, he could not succeed. | But/Yet/However/Nevertheless.... He is poor, but honest. He worked hard, but could not succeed. | Though/Although/Even though Though he is poor, he is honest. Even though he worked hard, he could not succeed. |
| 2. On account of/Owing to/Because of.. Owing to illness, he was absent. On account of mismanagement the company suffered a great loss. | ...so/hence/therefore.... He was ill and so he was absent. There was mismanagement hence the company suffered a great loss. | As/Since/Because.. As he was ill, he was absent. Since there was mismanagement, the company suffered a great loss. |
| 3. In case of / In the event of ... In case of working hard, you will pass. | And then You must work hard and then you will pass. | If If you work hard, you will pass. |
| 4. In order to He came in order to talk to me. | And He came and talked to me. | So that He came, so that he could talk to me. |
| 5. Soon after ... / Immediately after ... soon after his coming, we left. | and at once ... He came and at once we left. | As soon as ... As soon as he came, we left. |
| 6. In case of not ... In case of not working hard, you will fail. | ... Or else/or/otherwise ... You must work hard or you will fail. | Unless Unless you work hard, you will fail. |
| 7. Being ... /On verb+ing On seeing the police, the thief ran away. | and ... The thief saw the police and the ran away. | When ... When the thief saw the police, he ran away. |
| 8. too ... to.... The old man is too weak to walk. | and The old man is very weak and he can't walk. | so that not The old man is so weak that he can't walk. |

| 9. Besides/In addition to | Not only ... but also ... | ... as well as ... |
|--|---|--|
| Besides being a dancer, she is also a singer. | She is not only a dancer but also a singer. | She is a dancer as well as a singer. |
| 10. 1. Noun phrase : He admitted his guilty. | He was guilty and he admitted it. | Noun Clause : He admitted that he was guilty. |
| 2. Adjective phrase : The man in the boat is fishing. | The man is in the boat and he is fishing. | Adjective Clause The man who is in the boat is fishing. |
| 3. Adverb phrase : In case of his coming here I shall surely meet him. | He comes here, and then I shall surely meet him. | Adverb Clause : If he comes here, I shall surely meet him. |

Rewrite the following Simple Sentence into Compound Sentence.

1. Besides being rich he is wise.
2. Besides being a scholar, he is a good poet.
3. In spite of his riches, he is unhappy.
4. You must work hard in order to stand first in the class.
5. Taking his child he went away.
6. Having finished her work she went to bed.
7. Running fast, he got out of breath.
8. In spite of his illness, he attended the class.
9. Notwithstanding his great learning, he is humble.
10. Owing to ill health she was depressed.

Answers:

1. He is not only rich but also wise.
2. He is not only a scholar but also a good poet.
3. He is rich yet he is unhappy.
4. You must work hard or you will not stand first in the class.
5. He took his child and went away.
6. She finished her work and went to bed.
7. He ran fast and so got out of breath.
8. He is ill yet he attended the class.
9. He is very learned yet humble.
10. He was ill therefore he could not continue his studies.

Assignment-II

Convert the following into Simple Sentence.

1. Make haste or else you will be late.
2. He has to pay the fee or he will not be allowed to write the exam.
3. He tried hard but he did not succeed.
4. The sunset and we decided to go home.
5. You must apologize or else you will be punished.
6. He is not only robbed the poor child but also murdered her.
7. He not only educated his nephew but also set him up in business.
8. He is popular yet he cannot be called a great writer.
9. We saw the rain coming on and took shelter under a tree.
10. The Prince slew his brother and become king in his place.

Answers:

1. Make haste in order not be late.
2. He has to pay the fee to be allowed to write the exams.
3. In spite of trying hard he did not succeed.
4. The sun having set we decided to go home.
5. You must apologize to escape the punishment.
6. Besides robbing the poor child he murdered her.
7. Besides educating his nephew he also set him up in business.

8. In spite of his popularity he cannot be called a great writer.
9. On seeing the rain coming on we took shelter under a tree.
10. On slaying his brother the prince became king in his place.

Assignment-III

Rewrite the following Simple Sentences into Complex Sentence

1. He liked my suggestions.
2. Her advice didn't prove very well.
3. Find out his residence.
4. A wounded tiger is very fierce.
5. These I saw a very old man.
6. My cousin, a journalist, wrote this article.
7. Sudheer admitted his guilt.
8. Being an air hostess she has seen most of the world.
9. Let us wait till his arrival.
10. I have informed him of our success.

Answers:

1. He liked what I suggested.
2. What he advised didn't prove very useful.
3. Find out where he lives.
4. A tiger which wounded is very fierce.
5. There I saw a man who was very old.
6. My cousin who is a journalist wrote this letter.
7. Sudheer admitted that he was guilty.
8. As she is an air hostess, she has seen most of the world.
9. Let us wait until he is arrived.
10. I have informed him that we are succeeded.

Assignment-IV

Convert the following Complex into Simple Sentence.

1. It is essential that, you should be present.
2. He is a man who has a great courage.
3. I have no advice that I can offer you.
4. Sita was absent because she was ill.
5. Who ever is learned is respected.
6. Do you know how long he will stay?
7. This is the place where the Seminar will be held.
8. He looks proclaim that he is innocent.
9. As you are here, you may as well see it.
10. As the man was not there I left a message for him.

Answers:

1. Your presence is essential.
2. He is a courageous man.
3. I have no advice to offer you.
4. Sita was absent on account of her illness.
5. The learned are respected.
6. Do you know the duration of his stay.
7. This is the venue of the seminar.
8. He looks proclaim his innocence.
9. Being here, you may as well see it.
10. The man not being there I left a message for him.

Assignment-V

Convert the following Compound into Complex Sentences

1. He is wealthy but discontent.
2. Follow me or you will lose the way.
3. He ran away otherwise they would have shoot him.
4. You run and you will be in time.
5. He saw the lion and ran away.
6. Spare the rod and spoil the child.

Answers:

1. Though he is wealthy, he is discontent.
2. If you do not follow me you will lose the way.
3. Unless he ran away, they would have shoot him.
4. If you run, you will be in time.
5. When he saw the lion, he ran away.
6. If you spare the rod, you will spoil the child.

Assignment-VI

Convert the following Complex Sentences to Compound

1. When he heard the news, he was happy.
2. When I saw the accident, I was thunder struck.
3. Unless I am invited, I shall not go.
4. As soon as I saw, the thief ran away.
5. Though time flies fast, it some times appears to move slowly.
6. If you do not waste, you not want.

Answers:

1. He heard the news and he was happy.
2. I saw the accident and I was thunder struck.
3. I am invited or I shall not go.
4. I saw the thicf and he ran away.
5. Time flies fast yet it some times appears to move slowly.
6. Waste not and want not.

Practice:

1. Hemant has a scooter which is black in colour (to simple).
2. When the child saw the balloons he was excited (to simple).
3. The teacher told the boy that he should study. (to simple)
4. Can you tell me when the Simhadri Express will leave? (to simple)
5. Malathi started the work late yet she was able to finish it. (to simple)
6. Unless you exercise regularly you cannot be fit. (to compound)
7. As Lakshmi was intelligent she made the right decision. (to compound)
8. Seeing the thief the woman started shouting (to compound)
9. In spite of the rain Prathima went to college (to compound)
10. Opening her handbag Sundari took out the papers. (to compound)
11. Ramesh reached his office and sat down to work. (to complex)
12. Feeling bored, Vasanta watched T.V. (to complex)
13. Tilak was tired but he continued to type the letter. (to complex)
14. It was hot so Mr. Reddy switched on the air-conditioner. (to complex)
15. Ramana often wears a red 'T' shirt. (to complex)
16. As she felt unwell Hema consulted the doctor. (to simple and to compound)
17. Unable to walk any further, Prakash sat down. (to complex and to compound)
18. As he is rich, Suresh owns two cars. (to compound and to simple)
19. In spite of being angry Shameena kept smiling (to complex and to compound)
20. The lesson was difficult so Srinivas could not understand it. (to complex)
21. The book which is on the table is mine (to simple)
22. In spite of being ill, she continued to work (to complex)
23. Seeing a tiger, he started running (into compound)
24. As it is cold he wears a coat (into compound)
25. A dead tiger does not roar (into complex)
26. This is the man. His car was stolen (into complex)
27. She is very rich. She can buy a Camry Car. (to complex)
28. Unless you control your anger, you won't prosper. (into compound)
29. The box is so heavy, that I can not lift it (into simple)
30. A spiritually strong man is a powerful in every where (into complex)
31. In spite of many attempts he failed. (into compound)
32. Besides being handsome, she is intelligent (into compound)
33. He gave me not only useful advice, but also financial help (into complex)
34. The Sun set and the farmer went home (into simple)
35. She is poor at I love her (into complex)
36. You must pay the fine, to get your scooter back. (into compound)
37. She was lazy, so she failed (into simple)
38. A dead man tells no lies (into complex)
39. Immediately on reading the telegram, she wept. (into complex)
40. Being rich, he can buy two cars. (into complex)
41. The boy proved that, he was brilliant (into complex)
42. As he wants to be doctor, he has to take Bi.P.C (into compound)
43. They took rest because, they were tired (into compound)
44. Unless you hurry up, you will be late (into compound)
45. He wanted win the prize, and he worked hard. (into complex)

46. Because he was ill, he stayed at home (into simple)
47. He can not see unless he wears the glass (into simple)
48. As the war was ended, the soldiers returned (into simple)
49. He is so tired, that he cannot stand (into simple)
50. It is known that, she is honest (into simple)
51. Besides being a philosopher, Tagore was also a good Painter. (into compound)
52. Having over slept, he missed the train (into compound)
53. We must eat to live (into compound)
54. She is not in good health, yet she looks beautiful (into simple)
55. He finished his exercise, and put away his books (into simple)
56. Besides robbing the old woman he injured her (into compound)
57. Seeing the stranger the villager ran away (into compound)
58. She is too fat to walk fast. (into compound)
59. You must run to catch the train (into compound)
60. In spite of favourable conditions, the crops failed (into compound)
61. The teacher punished the boy, for his disobedience. (into compound)
62. He was busy with his work, so he did not go out. (into simple)
63. I read the novel, and I return it to the library (into simple)
64. He cannot write, and he cannot read (into simple)
65. She was dull nevertheless she got first class (into simple)
66. She is too dull, to answer the paper (into complex)
67. The box is very heavy, I cannot lift it. (into simple)
68. I don't play cricket, and I don't play football (into simple)
69. I did not see her, and I did not see you (into simple)
70. I saw a beautiful lady (into complex)
71. Having finished the home work, the children started watching T.V. (compound form)
 - 1) The children finished the home work and started in watching T.V.
 - 2) The children watched the T.V. and finished home work.
 - 3) The children were watching T.V. because they finished home work.
 - 4) Having watch the T.V. they finished home work.
72. In spite of he is coming late he answered all questions. (complex form)
 - 1) As he came late he answered all questions.
 - 2) He come late so he answered all questions.
 - 3) Though he came late he answered all questions.
 - 4) He came late, yet he answered all questions.
73. Being an air hostess, she has seen many places in the world. (compound form)
 - 1) She is an air hostess she has seen many places in the world.
 - 2) When she is an air hostess, she seen many places in the world.
 - 3) She has seen many places in the world since she is an hostess
 - 4) She in an air hostess, therefore she has seen many places in the world.
74. Why he is arrested is still mysterious (simple form)
 - 1) The reason for his arrest is still mysterious
 - 2) He is arrested so it is mysterious
 - 3) He is arrested yet is mysterious
 - 4) His being arrested is still mysterious.

75. Her words and look proclaim that she is innocent (simple form)

- 1) Her words and looks are innocent therefore is proclaimed.
- 2) Her words and looks it proclaim her innocent.
- 3) Her words and looks proclaim her innocent.
- 4) Her words and looks proclaimed her innocent.

76. In spite of many precautions, Srisailem power house was drowned in floods. (compound form)

- 1) Though many precautions were taken, Srisailem power house was drowned in floods.
- 2) As many precautions were taken Srisailem power house was drowned in floods.
- 3) Srisailem power house was drowned in floods, so many precautions were taken.
- 4) Many precautions were taken, yet Srisailem power house was drowned in floods.

77. The floods having washed away many bridges, the transportation and communication were disrupted. (complex form).

- 1) As the floods washed away many bridges, the transportation and communication was disrupted.
- 2) The floods washed away many bridges, so the transportation and communication were disrupted.
- 3) As the transportation and communication were disrupted the floods washed away many bridges.
- 4) None of the above.

78. Despite heavy rains there was scarcity in food grains last year. (compound form)

- 1) Though heavy rains there was a scarcity in food grains form.
- 2) In spite of heavy rains scarcity was there in food grains last year.
- 3) There were heavy rains, yet there was a scarcity in food grains last year.
- 4) None of the above.

79. I don't know the place of his birth. (complex form)

- 1) I don't know where he is born.
- 2) I don't know where he had been born.
- 3) I am knowing where he is born.
- 4) Where he had born is not known.

80. All employees are sure of hike in their salaries. (complex form)

- 1) All employees are sure that their salaries will be hiked.
- 2) All employees are sure therefore their salaries will be hiked.
- 3) All employees are sure so their salaries will be hiked.
- 4) All employees are sure of hiking their salaries

81. They hope that by next week they will know their result. (simple form)

- 1) They hope of knowing their result by next week.
- 2) They are hoping of knowing their result by next week.
- 3) They hope to know their result by next week.
- 4) They hope to know their result from next week.

82. If you do not take rest you cannot recover from sickness. (compound form)

- 1) Take rest or you recover from sickness.
- 2) Take rest otherwise you can recover from sickness.
- 3) Unless you take rest you can not recover from sickness.
- 4) You should take rest, otherwise you cannot recover from sickness.

83. Not only the crops but many cattle were destroyed by the cyclone. (simple form)
- 1) The crops as well as destroyed by the cyclone.
 - 2) The crops as well as cattle were destroyed by the cyclone.
 - 3) Besides the crop many cattles were destroyed by cyclone.
 - 4) None of the above.
84. If you repeat this, you will be suspended. (compound form)
- 1) You should not repeat this, otherwise you will be suspended.
 - 2) You will be suspended so you repeat this..
 - 3) You will repeat this through you are suspended.
 - 4) You should repeat this and you will be suspended.
85. Not with standing the cooperation of all members, the work not completed. (Com form)
- 1) Inspite of the cooperation of all members, the work was not completed.
 - 2) There was cooperation of all members, other wise the work was not completed.
 - 3) There was cooperation of all members, So the work was not completed.
 - 4) There was cooperation of all members, yet the work was not completed.
86. They must speed up the work otherwise they can't complete it before the Sun set (Simple form)
- 1) The must speed up the work, in order to complete it before the sun set.
 - 2) Unless the speed up the work, they cannot complete it before the sun set.
 - 3) If they donot speed up the work, they can not complete before the sun set.
 - 4) speeding up the work, they can complete the work before sunset.
87. He answered all questions, yet he did not score good marks. (complex form)
- 1) He answered all questions, did not score good marks.
 - 2) Though he answered all questions, he did not score good marks.
 - 3) Though he answered all questions, he did not scored good marks.
 - 4) Having answered all questions, he scored good marks.
88. Inspite of many warnings of his father, Rahul was playing near water (compound form)
- 1) Though his father many times, Rahul was playing near water.
 - 2) Not with standing his father's warning, Rahul was playing near water.
 - 3) None of the above
 - 4) His father warned many times, but Rahul was playing near water.
89. Radhika, daughter of a doctor, also became a daughter (complex form)
- 1) Radhika, who is the daughter of a doctor, also became a doctor.
 - 2) Radhika, who also became a doctor, is the daughter of a doctor.
 - 3) Being the daughter of a doctor, Radhika became a doctor.
 - 4) As Radhika is daughter of doctor, she became a doctor.
90. He was transfered, so he shifted his family. (simple form)
- 1) He was transfered, therefore he shifted his family.
 - 2) Having been transfered, he shifted his family.
 - 3) Since he was transfed, he shifted his family.
 - 4) As he was transfered, he shifted his family.
91. As he was late, the teacher punished him. (simple from)
- 1) He was late, the teacher punished him.
 - 2) He being late, the teacher punished him.
 - 3) The teacher punished so he was late.
 - 4) Being late, the teacher punished him.

92. Which of the following is in simple formation?

- 1) Being lazy, she failed.
- 2) Go to him when you are free.
- 3) Being besides happy he is sad.
- 4) Ask me what ever you want.

93. For the first time in his life, he wished me good morning. (Complex form)

- 1) Good morning is wished by him for the first time in his life.
- 2) He wished me good morning in his and it was the for the first time in his life.
- 3) It was for the first time in his life that he wished me good morning.
- 4) He never wished me good morning in his life except once.

94. Pay the penalty now, lest you should face punishment (into Complex)

- 1) Don't pay the penalty because you should face the punishment.
- 2) When you pay the penalty, you would face the punishment.
- 3) If you pay the penalty, you will not face the punishment.
- 4) None of these.

95. On noticing the thief escape from the prison, the police chased him (into complex)

- 1) Notice of the thief and chase the police escape from the prison.
- 2) If you notice the thief, escape from the prison chase the police.
- 3) When the police noticed the thief escape from prison they chased him.
- 4) The police noticed the thief escape from the prison and they chased.

96. Owing to drought, the crop failed (into compound)

- 1) As there was a drought, the crop failed.
- 2) There was a drought, so the crop failed.
- 3) The crop failed and so, there was a drought.
- 4) None of these.

97. The man was in the boat. He was shouting. (into complex)

- 1) The man is in the boat is shouting.
- 2) The man who was in the boat was shouting.
- 3) The man in the boat and was shouting.
- 4) None of these.

98. I found the book. I had lost it. (into complex)

- 1) I had lost the book which I found.
- 2) Which I found the book I had lost.
- 3) I found the book which I had lost.
- 4) Finding the book I had lost.

99. She finished her homework. Then she went to play. (into complex)

- 1) Before she finished her homework, she went to play.
- 2) Before she went to play she had finished her homework.
- 3) She went to play before, She had finished her home work
- 4) After finishing her homework she went to play.

100. The drowning man cried for help. (into complex)

- 1) The man which is drowning cried for help.
- 2) The man who was drowning cried for help.
- 3) The man was drowning and cried for help.
- 4) Having drowned the man cried for help.

ANSWERS :-

71.1 72.3 73.3 74.4 75. - 76.- 77.- 78.1 79.1 80.1 81.- 82.2 83.- 84.1 85.1 86.4
87.2 88.4 89.1 90.2 91.4 92.3 93.3 94.3 95.3 96.2 97.- 98.1 99.1 100.2

LETTER WRITING

Letter-writing is an important art. There are three types of letters namely Personal or Private letters, Business Letters and Official Letters.

ఉత్తరములు మూడు రకములు :

- Personal or Private Letters :** స్నేహితులకు, బంధువులకు, పరిచయము గల వారికి వ్రాయు ఉత్తరములు.
- Business Letters :** వ్యవహార, వర్తక సంబంధమైన జవాబులు.
- Official Letters :** ఉద్యోగ సంబంధమైనట్టియు, పై అధికారులకు వ్రాయు ఉత్తరములు.

The letter is divided into five main parts.

- 1) The heading
- 2) The salutation
- 3) The body
- 4) Subscription (Leave taking)
- 5) Signature

- 1. The heading :** ఇంటి నెంబరు, పీఠి, ఊరు, తేదీ ఉండును. దీనిని కుడివైపు మూలలో మొదట వ్రాయవలెను.

Ex : Aparna Apartments,
5-1-637, Mosque Street,
Parvatipuram,
22-4-2009.

దీనిలో ప్రతి లైను చివర కామా, నెల చివర కామా, సంవత్సరం చివర ఫుల్ స్టాప్ ముఖ్యము. తేదీని చాలా విధములుగా వ్రాయుదురు.

Ex : 22-3-2009.

22nd. March, 2009.

Mar.22nd.,2009.

2. The Salutation

- a) Private Letters**

Dear or My Dear or Dearest father / mother / brother / sister / Rahim / Kamala.

అత్యయములను కాక మిగతా వారిని గౌరవింపవలసినప్పుడు,

My dear Mr. George, అని సంబోధించాలి. దీని చివర కామా ముఖ్యము.

- b) Business Letters**

Dear Sir, అని సంబోధించాలి.

- c) Official Letters**

Sir, / Respected Sir, / Esteemed Sir, అని సంబోధించవలెను.

3. The body : దీనికి ఎటువంటి విబంధనలు లేవు.

4. Subscription (Leave taking)

నీ ప్రియ సోదరుడు, సోదరి అని చెప్పనది subscription అనబడును. దీనికి ముందు "నీ ఉత్తరమునకు ఎదురుచూస్తూ" అని రాస్తే బావుంటుంది. ఈ రెండును Private, Business, Official letters కి ఎలా రాస్తే బాగుండునో ఈ క్రింద చూపబడినవి. ఈ రెండింటికి చివర కామాలు ముఖ్యము.

a) Private

Hoping to hear from you soon,
 Hoping to see you, / No more to pen,
 Wishing to hear from you, / With kind,
 Very kind, / Kindest regards,
 With love and best wishes, / I remain, etc.,

అదే విధంగా

Yours affectionately, / Yours lovingly,
 Yours sincerely, / Yours cordially,
 Yours fraternally, etc.

b) Business

Yours truly, / Yours sincerely.

c) Official

I have the honour to be, Sir,
 Thanking you, Sir,
 Thanking you in anticipation,
 For which act of kindness I shall be ever thankful.

అదే విధంగా

Yours faithfully, etc.

5. Signature : సంతకం క్రింద brackets లో మీ పేరు, Degree capitals లో వ్రాస్తే, మరల వారు మీకు వ్రాయుటకు మీ ఎడ్రస్ వారికి బాగా తెలియును.

Ex :

x x x (Signature)

(S.V. Ramanarao, M.Com., F.C.A.)

I. Private Letters :

Ex : *Write a letter to your father on the choice of your profession.*

12/79, Tilak Street,
 Dilsukh Nagar,
 Hyderabad.

Dt : 23-03-09.

My Dear father,

I am happy to learn from your letter that you have recovered from your illness. I hope that you will regain your strength and health. In one of your letters you asked me what I would like to do after my S.S.C. Public Examinations. I have decided to become a doctor.

I like to become a doctor. One can do service to mankind by becoming a doctor. A doctor can relieve the sufferings of people. He can save people from death at least for some more time. In my opinion, doctor's profession is the noblest profession.

So, I will join the Intermediate class and take Bi.P.C. subjects. I will qualify myself for the medical course.

Please convey my best regards to mother and blessings to brother and sister.

I remain,
Yours lovingly,
Ramesh.

To

Sri Nageswara Rao, M.Sc.,
Lecturer,
S.V.S. College,
Visakhapatnam.

II. Business Letters :

Ex : Write a letter to a company in reply to an advertisement (Application for the post of a clerk).

85, Ali Street,
Tirupati - 1
Dt : 23-03-'09.

To

The Manager,
M/s. Farm Steel & Co.,
Chennai.

Sir,

Sub : Post of a clerk - application - submitted.
Ref : Your advt. in The Indian Express, Dt. 20-03-09.

With reference to the advertisement mentioned above, I beg to submit this application for the above post.

As for my qualifications, I passed the S.S.C. Public Examination in March 2002. I passed the type-writing higher in English. I am eighteen years old. I am strong and healthy. I took part in games also. I am submitting copies of testimonials about my character and conduct from the Headmaster of our school. I am also submitting a copy of the S.S.C. certificate.

I, therefore, request you to be kind enough to give me a chance to work in your company. I shall work to the best of my ability and to your satisfaction.

I remain,
Yours respectfully,
V. Arjuna Rao.

Enclosures : (2) (Two only)

1. Copy of S.S.C.
2. Copy of conduct certificate.

III. Official Letters :

Ex : Write a report to the Sub-Inspector of police about a theft in your neighbourhood

Tammina Krishna Street,
Rajeev Sharma nagar,
Warangal,
Dt. 23-03-09

To
The Sub-Inspector of Police,
2-Town Police Station,
Warangal.

Sir,

Sub : Theft of jewels and money - report - submitted.

I beg to report that there was a theft of some jewels and money in my neighbourhood last night.

My neighbours went to the second show to the theatre nearby. When they returned from the picture, they found that the lock of the front door broken. They suspected that a theft might have happened. They went inside. They saw their almyrah open. They found that some jewels worth Rs.70,000/- and an amount of Rs.30,000/- were missing. They had a suspicion on their servant. His name is K. Vccraiah.

I, therefore, request you to be kindly investigate into the matter and restore their jewels and money as soon as possible.

Yours respectfully,
B. Vijay.

IV. Letter to the Editor :

Ex : Write a letter to the Editor of a newspaper about the nuisance caused by loud speakers.

7/79, Sharma Street,
Kamakotinagar,
Vijayawada - 12.

To
The Editor,
The Hindu,
Vijayawada.

Sir,

I shall be very much obliged if you permit me to express my views against the nuisance caused by loud speakers through your esteemed columns.

Loud speakers are becoming a perpetual nuisance to the public - especially to the educated public. In every part of the town, at every hotel, loud speakers are set up. Records of cinema songs are being played. There is a deafening noise. This evil has spread even to many homes. Whenever there is a small function in the house, it has become a fashion to hire loud speakers and use them through out day and night. Everyday, we see the loud speakers at tea parties, dinner parties, meetings and the like. We are unable to escape from this annoyance. It has become unbearable.

I, therefore, request the concerned authorities to issue licenses for the use of loud speakers only for fixed hours at some functions only. May I make an earnest appeal to the Government to take necessary steps to eradicate this evil practice as it is disturbing the studies of children.

Vijayawada,
Dt.23-03-'09.

Yours respectfully,
R. Sankara Rao.

EXERCISE

1. Choose the correct option from the following :

1. Letter is a -----

1. oral communication

2. verbal communication

3. written communication

4. none of these

2. The subscription terminates with -----

1. a full stop

2. a comma

3. a semicolon

4. none of these

3. In a letter, the writer's name appears ?

1. once

2. twice

3. thrice

4. four times

4. Common salutation in formal letter is

1. Dear sir

2. My dear sir

3. Dearest Sir

4. none of these

5. An official letter is -----

1. more colloquial

2. more informal

3. more formal

4. none of these

6. In personal correspondence, the subscription usually is

1. yours faithfully

2. yours obediently

3. yours affectionately

4. yours truly

7. The body of the letter consists of ----- parts.

1. two

2. three

3. four

4. five

8. The first word of the 'subscription' must begin with

1. a small letter

2. a capital letter

3. a hyphen

4. one of these

9. Salutation is -----
 1. complimentary form used to begin a letter
 2. complimentary close or end of a letter.
 3. main part of the letter
 4. none of the above
10. When you address an editor of the newspaper the salutation is -----
 1. Dear sir
 2. Respected sir
 3. My dear sir
 4. None of these
11. ----- is necessary after salutation.
 1. Full stop
 2. Colon
 3. Comma
 4. Question mark
12. Formal language is used in -----
 1. letters to relatives
 2. official letters
 3. friendly letters
 4. none of these
13. An official letter is -----
 1. more formal
 2. more informal
 3. more colloquial
 4. none of these
14. Subscription is -----
 1. the beginning of the letter
 2. the end of the letter
 3. the body of the letter
 4. none of these
15. Heading of a letter consists of -----
 1. station
 2. date
 3. station and date
 4. station without date
16. Complimentary close of business letter is -----
 1. Yours faithfully
 2. Yours sincerely
 3. Truly yours
 4. Ever yours
17. Colloquial words are used in -----
 1. social letters
 2. business letters
 3. official letters
 4. personal letters
18. The British style of putting the date on a letter is -----
 1. August 26th 2008
 2. 26/8/2001
 3. 26 August, 2008
 4. 26-8-2008
19. The signature of the writer of a letter is the ----- part of the letter.
 1. second
 2. third
 3. fourth
 4. last
20. A business letter is generally -----
 1. long and personal
 2. long and impersonal
 3. brief and impersonal
 4. brief and personal
21. personal letters are usually written to -----
 1. Editor
 2. Officials
 3. Office staff
 4. One's friends and relatives

22. How would you address a police inspector in a complaint letter.
1. Sir
 2. Respected Sir
 3. Dear sir
 4. none of these
23. _____ is needed after date.
1. Fullstop
 2. Comma
 3. Colon
 4. None of these
24. Leave letter is _____
1. an official letter
 2. a business letter
 3. a personal letter
 4. None of these
25. Which part of the letter is crucial ?
1. Salutation
 2. Subscription
 3. Street number
 4. Body of the letter
26. Familiar and intimate style of writing is seen in
1. Formal letters
 2. Informal letters
 3. Business letters
 4. Official letters
27. Complete the sentence choosing the right option :
A letter to an unknown person should end with
1. Yours faithfully
 2. Yours sincerely
 3. Yours affectionately
 4. yours lovingly
28. How should you address your governor in the body of a letter to him or her ?
1. Sir or Madam
 2. Your Highness
 3. Your Excellency
 4. Mr. or Mrs. Governor
29. Which one of the following is the correct way of opening a letter of application ?
1. With reference to your advertisement in The Hindu dated 05-06-2008, I would like to apply for the post of ----
 2. With reference to your advertisement in The Hindu dated 05-06-2008, I want to apply for the post of -----
 3. With reference to your advertisement in The Hindu dated 05-06-2008, I want to apply for the post of -----
 4. None of above
30. What kind of letter is to be drafted while writing to your higher authorities ?
1. Personal
 2. Formal
 3. Official
 4. Business
31. The correct form of address in a letter to a close friend is.
1. Honourable Sir,
 2. Most respected,
 3. Your majesty !
 4. My dear.
32. While sending a telegram the words used should be
1. as lengthy as possible
 2. brief and to the point
 3. Extremely formal
 4. ornamental

33. A wedding invitation card is a -----
1. Formal letter
 2. An official letter
 3. Business letter
 4. A personal letter
34. Which language is used for friends ?
1. formal
 2. informal
 3. personal
 4. impersonal
35. 'Colloquial' language is used to
1. the Editor
 2. the officials
 3. friends
 4. business letters
36. Which subscription friend is correct ?
1. your sincere friend
 2. yours sincere friends
 3. your sincere friends
 4. yours sincere's friend
37. Which salutation is used in official letters
1. Sir
 2. Dear Sir
 3. Dear Sirs
 4. My dear sir
38. The formal salutation in case the receiver of the letter is an officer not personally known to you will be.
1. Dear officer
 2. Sir
 3. My dear Sir
 4. Dearest Sir
39. Which of the following subscriptions is correct ?
1. Your's sincerely
 2. Your sincerely
 3. Yours' sincerely
 4. yours sincerely
40. The body of a letter contains
1. the salutation
 2. the message
 3. the acknowledgement
 4. none of these
41. Formal language is used in
1. friendly letters
 2. official letters
 3. letters to relatives
 4. None of these
42. The formal salutation in case the receiver of the letter is not intimate will be
1. Respected Ram
 2. My dear Ram
 3. Dear Mr. Ram
 4. Dear Ram
43. Which of the following subscriptions is correct ?
1. Your's truly
 3. your truly
 3. Yours' truly
 4. yours truly
44. A business letter is generally
1. long and impersonal
 2. brief and impersonal
 3. long and personal
 4. brief and personal
45. Informal language is used in
1. Newspapers
 2. Letters to friend
 3. letters of applications for jobs
 4. official letters

46. The Subscription in official letters generally is
1. Yours obediently
 2. Yours sincerely
 3. Your lovingly
 4. Yours faithfully
47. Salutation for commercial letters will be
1. Dear sir
 2. My dear Sir
 3. Sir
 4. Dear Sirs
48. Formal language is used in
1. official letters
 2. letters to friends
 3. letters to relatives
 4. letters to newspapers
49. Which of the following subscriptions is correctly written?
1. Your's faithfully
 2. Your faithfully
 3. Your' faithfully
 4. Yours faithfully
50. For official letters the correct form of subscription will be
1. Yours sincerely
 2. Yours faithfully
 3. Yours ever
 4. Yours subordinately
51. Which of the following subscriptions is correctly written?
1. Your sincerely
 2. Yours loving son
 3. Your truly
 4. Yours sincerely
52. Dear Sirs is a salutation.
1. an official letter
 2. a business letter
 3. a leave letter
 4. a personal letter
53. How would you address a police inspector in a complaint letter?
1. Sir
 2. Dear Sir
 3. Respected Sir
 4. Dear Inspector
54. The mode of address to a Minister will be:
1. Dear Minister
 2. My dear Minister
 3. Dear Sir
 4. Honourable Minister
55. When you write an official letter to a high public official your complimentary close will be.
1. Yours sincerely
 2. Yours affectionately
 3. Respectfully yours
 4. Yours obediently

ANSWERS :

1.3 2.2 3.2 4.1 5.3 6.3 7.2 8.2 9.1 10.2 11.3 12.2 13.1 14.2 15.3 16.1 17.4
 18.1 19.4 20.3 21.4 22.1 23.4 24.1 25.4 26.2 27.2 28.3 29.1 30.2 31.4 32.2 33.1
 34.2 35.3 36.1 37.1 38.2 39.4 40.2 41.2 42.3 43.4 44.2 45.2 46.4 47.4 48.1
 49.4 50.4 51.4 52.2 53.1 54.4 55.4

COMPREHENSION OF A PROSE PASSAGE

COMPREHENSION

ఒక వ్యక్తి యొక్క అవగాహనా శక్తిని అంచనా వేయడానికి Reading Comprehension ఉపయోగపడుతుంది.

Comprehension అనే noun కు Comprehend అనేది verb. Comprehend అనగా అర్థం చేసుకోవడం. ప్రతి passage యొక్క సారాంశం ఎంతవరకు అర్థం చేసుకొన్నావో comprehension ద్వారా తెలుస్తుంది. Passage తర్వాత ఇవ్వబడిన ప్రశ్నలకు సమాధానాలు సరిగ్గా వ్రాయడానికి, ఆ passage లను క్లుప్తంగా అర్థం చేసుకోవాలి.

దృష్టి యందుంచుకోవలసిన అంశాలు

1. ఇచ్చిన passage లో content words ఏమి ఉన్నాయో చూడాలి. సాధారణంగా అన్ని passages లో కనిపించే articles, prepositions, helping verbs, pronouns కాకుండా theme ను వివరించడానికి వాడబడిన పదాలను content words అంటారు.

Ex : Today, the pollution destroys all the human beings.

పై వాక్యములో pollution, destroy అనేవి content words. అవి ఏ meaning లో వాడబడినది గ్రహించాలి.

2. Proper nouns ఏమేమి ఉన్నాయో గమనించాలి. ఆ proper nouns (వ్యక్తులు) చేసిన పనులు, ఏ పదం ఎవరిని సూచిస్తుంది? అనే అంశాలు గమనించాలి. Words relation గమనించాలి. [Somebody writes something, somebody was born in - (some place), on so and so date, invented something etc.,]

3. Proper nouns కు బదులుగా వాడబడిన pronouns ను (I, we, you, he, she, it, they) ఏ noun కు బదులుగా వాడినారో గ్రహించాలి.

4. ముందుగా passage ను ఒకసారి చదివి, అది పూర్తిగా అర్థం కాకపోయినప్పటికీ క్రింద ఇవ్వబడిన Questions చదవాలి. దానితో మనము దేనిని తెలిసికొనుటకు ఆ passage చదవాలో తెలుస్తుంది. ఒక ప్రశ్న చదివి దాని 4 సమాధానములను చూసి passage ఆధారంగా సరియైన పదాన్ని గ్రహించగలగాలి.

5. ఒక ప్రశ్న passage లోని ఏ పదంపై, ఏ భాగంపై concentrate చేయుటకు ఇచ్చారో గమనిస్తే, ఆ పదం, ఆ భాగం గ్రహించడం సులభం.

6. Passage ను కేవలం భావం గ్రహించడం కోసం కాకుండా దిగువ ఇవ్వబడిన Questions కు Answer చేయడం కోసం అనే కోణంలో చదవాలి.

7. Multiple choice లోని answers లో matter / content తో సంబంధం లేనివి ఏదో చూసి వాటిని eliminate చేయాలి (తొలగించాలి). మిగతా వాటిలో related answer ను గుర్తించాలి.

8. Question లో కొన్ని direct questions ఉంటాయి.

What, where, when, who అనే వాటిని direct గా ఆయా words ను content నుండి గ్రహించడం సులభం. కాని Implied questions ఇస్తే వీటికి direct గా answers - passage లో ఉండవు. దీనికోసం ప్రశ్నలను ఏ దృష్టితో అడిగారో గమనించి, passage మరొకసారి చదివి విశ్లేషించుకొని మనకు అర్థమైన దానిని బట్టి వ్రాయాలి.

9. Factual Information అడిగినపుడు సంఖ్యాత్మకమైనవి, పేర్లకు సంబంధించినవి వ్రాయాలి.

10. How, why అనే questions వస్తే reasons/causes - in what way అనే అంశాలు దృష్టి యందుంచుకోవాలి. అలాగే purpose of action తెలిసికొని to + infinitive తో వ్రాయాలి.

Ex : Mother Teresa was sent to India to work in a convent in Calcutta.

1. Mother Teresa was sent to _____

- A) India B) _____ C) _____ D) _____

ఇటువంటి ప్రశ్న Direct గా వచ్చింది.

2. Why was Teresa sent to India

- A) to work in a convent B) _____ C) _____ D) _____

ఇందులో to + V₁ గమనించాలి - purpose ను తెలియ జేస్తుంది.

11. Passage లో ఇచ్చిన pronouns (X class వరకు) అవి ఎవరిని refer చేస్తున్నాయని అడుగుట జరుగుచున్నది. దానిని గమనించాలి.

Sylock gave three thousand ducats to Antonio for the sake of his friend. He asked to sign the bond.

పై వాక్యములో his - he ఎవరికి వర్తిస్తాయనే విషయం గమనిస్తూ passage చదవవలసి ఉంటుంది.

12. అలాగే ఇచ్చిన passage లో పదాలపై మీకు గల సాధికారత తెలుసుకోవాలి vocabulary based questions, parts of speech మీద questions అడగడం జరుగుతుంది.

He went to organise the meeting.

□ Organise - ఏ భాషా భాగం అని, దీని noun form ఏమిటి అని అడుగవచ్చు.

□ అలాగే antonyms, synonyms అడుగవచ్చు. Options లో ఇచ్చిన పదాల ఆధారంగా passage చదివి వ్రాయాలి.

13. Passage లోని main theme ఏమిటి? దానిని ఎలా develop చేశారు. ముగింపు ఏమి ఉంది? అనే విషయాలు గ్రహించాలి.

14. ప్రశ్నల విషయంలో దిగువ విషయం గమనించాలి.

- What - information - How - reason - manner

- Why - purpose - Who - name

- How many - number - countables

- How much - quantity - uncountables

1. వేగంగా చదివి General Idea గ్రహించాలి.
2. Questions క్లుప్తంగా చదవాలి.
3. passage ను మరొకసారి నెమ్మదిగా చదవాలి.
4. ప్రశ్నలకు - passages లోని facts కు గల relation గమనించాలి.
5. Passage తో సంబంధం లేని answers తొలగించాలి.
6. Correct Option ను find out చేయాలి.

1. Fast reading for General idea

□

□ Reading Comprehension □

□

2. Study the questions

3. Read once again

Relate with the questions by eliminating the irrelevant answers.

PASSAGE - 1

Jawaharlal Nehru was very fond of hunting. One day while Nehru was hunting in a forest, he saw a deer grazing grass at a distance. At once he aimed his gun at it and shot it. At once it fell to the ground and began twisting about in acute pain. The young ones around it were terrified by the sound of the gun, and gathered around their mother. At that time Nehru observed the pain in the eyes of the deer hit by the bullet and the sorrow of the young ones for their mother.

At once Nehru stood up. He threw his gun away. He treated the wounded deer for its wound, and left it there. From then on, he gave up hunting. Later he wrote in his diary: "I can never forget the look the deer cast at me while it was writing in pain on being hit by my bullet. The life that cannot have love for dumb animals is a wasted life. From now on, I will aim my camera, instead of my gun, at them."

1. Nehru aimed his gun at the deer and shot it, because
 - a. hunting was his profession
 - b. hunting was a fancy for him
 - c. the deer was a cruel animal
 - d. he had no food to eat
2. Even on hearing the sound of the gun, the deer's young ones were not frightened, and did not leave their mother, because.....
 - a. they were tamed deer.
 - b. they were never afraid of sounds of guns
 - c. their love for their mother was such
 - d. they were very good
3. "Nehru said he would aim his camera instead of his gun. It means that.....
 - a. in the palace
 - b. on the road
 - c. in the forest
 - d. in their nest
4. Nehru said he would aim his camera instead of his gun. It means that.....
 - a. a camera does not give out sound like a gun
 - b. a gun gives out a loud sound
 - c. he would love animals instead of killing them
 - d. it would be good if he took their photographs.
5. What kind of a life is wasted?
 - a. A life that does not help the poor.
 - b. A life that does not show kindness to living creatures.
 - c. A life that is not lived in a good way.
 - d. None

PASSAGE - 2

India is facing economic problems not simply because of lack of resources. Sufficient endeavour is not being put in to make use of the resources available in the right way. Young people-especially those who are well-trained in technical education-ought to make use of

their education for the country. For instance, if a young man who is skilled in the medical profession emigrates to a foreign country is facing now.

However if we go to the root of the problem, the most important cause is the dissatisfaction that is rising among the young people. The dissatisfaction among the young people that their education and abilities are not being duly recognised in this country is encouraging the young men to emigrate to other countries. When this dissatisfaction grows stronger, it leads to unruly.

strikes which endanger peace in the country.

1. Our country is facing economic problems, because
 - a. Our country does not have resources.
 - b. Our country does not have good scientists.
 - c. Ours is an agricultural country.
 - d. We are not utilising our resources properly.
2. Those well-trained in the medical profession emigrate to other countries, because.....
 - a. There are more patients in other countries
 - b. There are no patients in our country
 - c. Their talent does not get proper regard in our country
 - d. They do not like to stay in our country
3. When does our country lose a great doctor ?
 - a. When the doctor dies
 - b. When the doctor goes to a foreign country
 - c. When the doctor becomes famous
 - d. When the doctor gives life to a patient about to die
4. If our country is to develop well.....
 - a. We should have good doctor
 - b. We should have good resources
 - c. We should make good use of our resources and recognise the talents of our scientists
 - d. We should grow more rice
5. The most suitable title to this passage is
 - a. A good Doctor
 - b. The Wealth of our Country
 - c. Scientific knowledge
 - d. Resources and their proper use

PASSAGE - 3

Education has a significant place in the development of man. Education develops a man mentally and morally. Without education a man is like an animal. It is very necessary that men and women should get education uniformly. If the women are not to be educated, half of our society will remain backward. In these days we can see the better results of woman's education in the different parts of the world. As a result of it, many of the bad customs and

superstitious have started disappearing from society. Women have been working along with men in every sphere of national development and doing equally responsible works.

1. Education of women is necessary because
 - a. progress is possible only if the whole of society is Educated
 - b. woman can remove the social ills
 - c. woman like to work
 - d. women are superstitious by nature.
2. Without education man is equal to animal because
 - a. he does not work hard
 - b. he remains superstitious
 - c. he cannot earn his livelihood
 - d. his mental abilities cannot develop
3. What are the advantages of woman's education ?
 - a. The girls are going to schools.
 - b. Superstitious and social evils are being removed rapidly from the society.
 - c. The women are getting jobs.
 - d. The women are earning a lot of money.
4. Women are sharing equal responsibilities with men because
 - a. they are superstitious
 - b. they are intelligent
 - c. they are equal to me
 - d. they are earning a lot of money
5. Education is important for man because
 - a. it converts animals into a man.
 - b. it develops man's mental and moral power
 - c. it makes the country progressive
 - d. women are getting educated

PASSAGE - 4

How do leaves send out excess of water? Why are they not storing water for their own use? To understand this, we have to understand how the leaves work. Each leaf is made up of hundreds of microscopic cells in layers. The upper and lower layers of each leaf have hundreds of minute pores called the "stoma". Each stoma is enclosed by a pair of bean shaped structure called guard cells. These cells regulate the openings through which water is released in vapour form.

1. The leaves of a tree
 - a. take in water
 - b. do not take in water
 - c. send out all the water
 - d. send out excess water

2. The stoma is
 - a. the outer layer of the leaf
 - b. the lower layer of the leaf
 - c. a microscopic cell
 - d. a hole in the leaf
3. Every leaf has
 - a. one microscopical cell
 - b. a few microscopic cells
 - c. many microscopic cells
 - d. a lot of microscopic cells
4. Water is released from the leaves through
 - a. the microscopic cells
 - b. the stoma
 - c. the openings in the stoma
 - d. none of the above
5. Which do you think is good title for the passage?
 - a. How leaves take water
 - b. How leaves use the water
 - c. How leaves send water to the roots
 - d. How leaves send out water vapour

PASSAGE - 5

The important substance used to make pencil stick is graphite. It has another name, "black lead". This is a type of pure coal obtained in mines in the earth.

However, graphite can be made artificially too from the commonly available coal. The graphite thus obtained is ground into smooth powder, then it is mixed with clay, and a mixture is formed. Then the mixture is elongated, like a wire, with the help of a machine. Then it is heated to remove the moisture in it. Later it is cut into pieces of required length and the pieces are inserted into wooden cylinders. Pencils are made in this way. If a pencil is to write smoothly, more of clay should be mixed with graphite powder.

1. is made from graphite.
 - a. Pencil cover
 - b. Pencil stick
 - c. Black lead
 - d. Mineral coal
2. 'Black lead' means
 - a. lead appearing black
 - b. a mineral obtained from mines
 - c. pure coal obtained from mines
 - d. impure coal obtained from mines
3. Things needed to make pencil stick are
 - a. wood and graphite
 - b. graphite powder and clay

- c. smooth powder made from graphite and clay
 d. impure coal obtained from mines
4. A pencil writes smoothly when
 a. clay is more and graphite powder is less.
 b. clay is less and graphite powder is more
 c. graphite powder and clay are in equal parts
 d. the pencil is pretty to look at
5. How is the pencil stick made long ?
 a. elongated with hands
 b. elongated with the help of a machine, like a wire
 c. elongated with the help of wires
 d. The sticks are joined with each other

PASSAGE - 6

A tortoise lived in a pond and a fox on the bank. The tortoise came out of water every evening to enjoy cold breeze. Once the fox came to the tortoise to eat it. At once the tortoise jumped into the pond. It rose above the water, and told the fox. "It is impossible for you to eat me". The fox vowed that it would eat the tortoise.

Once the tortoise was asleep on the bank of the pond. The fox rushed to the tortoise, and caught hold of it and tried to eat it. Then the tortoise dragged its head and feet into its shell. The poor fox tried hard to break it, but in vain. Then the tortoise told him from inside the shell, "I will not so easily soften. Put me into water. I will easily soften." Believing in the words of the tortoise, the poor fox put it into water. As soon as it fell into water, the tortoise cleverly escaped into the water.

- The tortoise jumped in to the water.....
 a. as the fox chased it
 b. to save its own life
 c. as it was very hot and sunny
 d. as it got up from sleep
- "It is impossible for you to eat me". 'Impossible' in the sentence means.....
 a. easy b. difficult c. not possible at any time d. can eat tomorrow
- When did the fox catch hold of the tortoise ?
 a. when it was swimming in the water
 b. when it was moving on the bank
 c. when it was sleeping on the bank
 d. when it was taking rest on the bank
- "..... tried to break it". 'it' in the sentence refers to
 a. the tortoise
 b. the head of the tortoise
 c. the shell of the tortoise
 d. the meat of the tortoise

5. The tortoise said, "If you put me into water I will be softened". It said so
- to inform that it will soften if it is put into water
 - to escape from the fox
 - to become prey for the fox
 - to make friends with the fox

PASSAGE - 7

Galib was a renowned Urdu poet. He was very fond of mangoes. His friend did not like mangoes. One summer day Galib was sitting on the roof of his house with his friend. There was lying a heap of mango peels on the road side. In the mean time, a donkey came there. It sniffed the mango peels and went away. At this Galib's friends said, "Look! Even the donkeys do not like mangoes." Galib smiled and said, "Yes, the donkeys do not like mangoes".

- Where was a heap of mango-peels lying?
 - On the road side
 - On the roof
 - Before a donkey
 - At the friend's house
- What was Galib doing with his friends on the roof of his house?
 - They were eating mangoes
 - They were reading a poem
 - He was talking to his friend
 - They were enjoying poetry
- "Look! Even the donkeys don't like mangoes". Here donkeys indicate
 - wise animal
 - a foolish animal
 - a hard working animal
 - animal which always remains hungry
- "Yes, donkeys do not like mangoes". It means that
 - Animals do not like mangoes
 - Wise people do not like mangoes
 - The poets do not like mangoes
 - The foolish people do not like mangoes
- What is the suitable title of this passage?
 - Galib - a Great Poet
 - The Witty Galib
 - Galib's Love for Fruits
 - Galib's Love for Mangoes

PASSAGE -8

It was evening. Lights were lit. Bright light spread all over the jail area. Gandhiji drank goat's milk. So a goat was kept in the jail.

Sarojini devi wanted to play a joke on Gandhiji. She took a piece of cardboard, wrote on it the words, "Mahatmaji! I am a young kid, you yourself are a gentleman. Will you drink my mother'sbrought a kid and tied the card board to it neck. Then she took the kid to the door of Gandhiji's. She said to Gandhiji, "Please receive the invitation". With this, all the people there including her laughed happily.

The Mahatma, who led the whole of India, took up the cardboard piece, read it and laughed heartily.

1. The jail officers brought up a goat, because
 - a. the jail officials liked goats
 - b. they wanted to make it eat sheets of paper
 - c. they wanted to drink goat's milk
 - d. they wanted to give the Mahatma goat's milk
2. Sarojinidevi tied a piece of cardboard to a kid's neck, because
 - a. the kid would be pretty with it
 - b. the kid belonged to her
 - c. she wanted to play a joke on the Mahatma
 - d. she wanted the jail officers to see it.
3. Sarojinidevi left the kid near Gandhiji. From this, we can know that
 - a. she was angry with the jail officers
 - b. she was fond of kids
 - c. she was stubborn by nature
 - d. she was jealous
4. Gandhiji laughed.....
 - a. on seeing Sarojinidevi's jocular act
 - b. on seeing what the jail officers did
 - c. as he was fond of laughing
 - d. as he brought freedom for India
5. Sarojinidevi's humour
 - a. causes hatred
 - b. amuses without hurting one's mind
 - c. hurts grown-up people
 - d. causes sadness

PASSAGE -9

A young man was going to the town on his horse. He came across a beggar on the way. He took pity on the beggar and took him on his horse to the town. As soon as they reached the town, the beggar said that the horse belonged to him and asked the young man to get down.

There was a quarrel between them.

The young man went to the chief officer of the town and told him of their problem. The officer could not resolve the problem. He asked each of them to prove his claim. Then the young man covered the horse's head with his turban, and asked the beggar, "Which eye of this horse is blind.....the right eye or the left eye?" The beggar was confused. He first said that the right eye was blind and again said that the left eye was blind.

Then the young man removed the turban and told the officer. "Sir, both the eyes are well. No eye of the horse is blind."

The officer examined the horse's eyes well. He punished the beggar.

- The young man carried the beggar on his horse, because
 - he was his relative
 - he was his friend
 - he had known the beggar before
 - he was kind-hearted
- The beggar asked the young man to get down from the horse, because
 - the beggar brought the young man to his destination
 - the horse belonged to the beggar
 - the beggar wanted to quarrel with the young man
 - the beggar wanted to make the horse his own
- The young man covered the horse's head with his turban to prove
 - that the horse had no eyes
 - that the horse was feeling cold
 - that the horse right eye was blind
 - that the horse belonged to him
- Who proved that the horse was not blind?
 - The town officer
 - The king
 - The beggar
 - The young man
- The person who was punished was
 - the town officer
 - the young man
 - the horse
 - the beggar

PASSAGE - 10

Man has some lakhs of years of history behind him. In the beginning human race used to be like monkeys. But monkeys cannot make implements. Man has the skill. Stone Age began about fifteen lakh years ago.

In those days men used stones as implements. Since then and until now, a number of changes have taken place in man's life. Today man creates things which are counter creations of the things in creation. He has invented a number of machines.

Now modern civilization has spread into all the countries of the world. However it has taken lakhs of years for all this to happen. Each stage spread into thousands of years.

- "In the beginning human race used to be like monkeys"-means
 - men did things which monkeys did
 - men looked like monkeys in appearance
 - men were small in size like monkeys
 - there was no difference between monkeys and men

2. Man is superior to monkeys- how?
 - a. Man can walk with two legs
 - b. Man is taller than a monkey
 - c. Man can do things which monkeys cannot
 - d. Man has no tail
3. The age was called 'Stone Age' because
 - a. there were plenty of stones then
 - b. stones were used as implements
 - c. stones were used as food
 - d. metals were used as implements
4. "It has taken lakhs of years for all this to happen". This means
 - a. development of human civilization
 - b. development of human knowledge
 - c. making of implements
 - d. monkey transforming into man
5. "Today man created things which are counter creations of the things of Nature".....means
 - a. man can do things which the creator cannot
 - b. man can complete with the creator in doing things
 - c. man is making friends with the creator
 - d. the creator is great

PASSAGE - 11

Television is a contrivance which gives people amusement. There is a relation being established between the Government and the people because of it. We can watch a number of useful programmes on television. But elders do not like watching television, because they think that students will neglect their education for a fancy for television.

The rays emitted by television are harmful to the pupils of the tender eyes of children and students. Hence there is the risk of their eye-sight being endangered. Giving up watching television altogether is not advisable. Watching items of interest and programmes on medicine and education is a must. Students should spend some of their time to their education and some time to the television. Television goes along with amusement.

1. Television is for people.
 - a. an amusing contrivance
 - b. an agreeable contrivance
 - c. a disgusting contrivance
 - d. a luxurious contrivance

2. The advantage from television is that
 - a. programmes can be seen and heard
 - b. mental joy and knowledge are provided
 - c. temporary amusement is given
 - d. none of the above
3. Why do elders not like children and students watching television?
 - a. students become ferroists
 - b. students watch television without reading their books
 - c. students become mad
 - d. they become ill.
4. The rays emitted by television cause harm to
 - a. children's ears
 - b. children's tender eye-pupils
 - c. children's brains
 - d. children's faces
5. The programmes which must be watched on television are
 - a. films, games and songs
 - b. dance and music programmes
 - c. items on education and medicine, and world news
 - d. dramas and serials

PASSAGE - 12

In a village there lived a dog at a landlord's house. It used to eat the food thrown by the people in the house, after they had eaten their food, and lie on the premises.

One day when a boy belonging to the house was going out of the village, the dog followed him. Outside the village, some pigs were about to chase the boy. The dog chased the pigs off. The dog's story did not end there. The boy went to a pond to wash his feet. His feet slipped, and he fell into the pond. Seeing that, the dog began to bark aloud. But there was nobody there to save the boy. At last the dog itself jumped into pond, caught the boy's hair with its mouth, and brought the boy out of the pond. In the mean time some people came that way, gave the boy first aid treatment, and took the boy home. See how faithful the dog was!

1. The dog chased the pigs away, because.....
 - a. they came to eat its food
 - b. they chased the boy
 - c. dogs are natural enemies of pigs
 - d. the pigs came to bite the dog
2. "The dog's story did not end there" - 'there' means
 - a. going outside the village along with the boy
 - b. chasing the pigs away
 - c. guarding the house
 - d. eating the food given by the boy

3. The dog began to bark aloud, because.....
 - a. The pigs bit the dog
 - b. the boy beat the dog
 - c. it wanted to save the boy
 - d. the foot of the dog was hurt
4. The dog jumped into the pond, because.....
 - a. there was nobody
 - b. it wanted to bring the boy out of the water
 - c. it wanted to swim along with the boy
 - d. it was difficult for the dog to swim in the water
5. The dog proved its existence by.....
 - a. eating the food thrown out by the householders and lying on the premises there
 - b. guarding the house
 - c. saving the boy from death
 - d. bringing the villagers to the pond.

PASSAGE - 13

The owners of motor vehicles are worried about the sky-rocketing prices of petrol and diesel oil which they use. Now a wonderful instrument which can increase the mileage of motor of vehicles by half has been invented. A motor vehicle runs 50 k.m. with one litre of petrol at present. But with the use of this instrument the vehicle can run 75 k.m. per litre. The name of the instrument is 'Comprosal'.

Since they were designed, the motor vehicle engines had the defect called 'Lobhai' in them. No motormaking company could remove the defect. Now comprosal has removed the defect of Lobhai, has increased engine capacity, and is controlling pollution. A vehicle research organisation in Ahmednagar tested comprosal and certified that it was good.

1. Motor- vehicle owners are worried that
 - a. motor vehicles are getting damaged in a short period
 - b. the prices of petrol and diesel oil are high
 - c. petrol and diesel oil are being polluted
 - d. the mileage from petrol and diesel oil is not proper.
2. 'Mileage' means.....
 - a. the number of miles a vehicle can run with one litre of petrol or diesel oil
 - b. the speed of the vehicle
 - c. petrol or diesel changing to back smoke
 - d. the vehicle after running one mile, stops
3. 'Comprosal' was tested by.....
 - a. an automobile company in Vijayawada
 - b. a motor company in Delhi
 - c. the R.T.C. in Andhra Pradesh
 - d. a motor vehicle company in Ahmednagar

4. 'Comprosal' was certified as good in this matter
 - a. it protects the engine
 - b. it controls atmospheric pollution
 - c. it increases Lobhai
 - d. it increases engine capacity and controls pollution
5. 'Lobhai' is.....
 - a. the motor engine
 - b. an instrument which increases mileage
 - c. a defect in the motor engine
 - d. engine speed

PASSAGE - 14

The machine which works in place of man and which can do the tasks done by man is called a 'Robot'. It is used in big factories to do some tasks. It is not necessary that a robot should be like man in perform and that it should work exactly like man. The machine that resembles man is called 'Android'. This can work for any number of hours without rest in unfavourable conditions, and its expenditure is low. It can touch things which man's hands feel to be very hot.

So it is profitable if a robot is used for forging. Arms and fingers are also fitted to robots to perform certain special tasks. They can pick up things with their fingers. They can hold, release, push, pull and bend things. Certain robots can pilot aeroplanes. Robots are being used to clean tables in offices in England. The robots are of immense use in the most dangerous atomic energy units.

1. A robot is.....
 - a. a machine which can pilot an aeroplane
 - b. a machine which can work in place of man
 - c. a machine which resembles man
 - d. a machine which does things that man cannot do
2. It is useful to use a robot in forging, because
 - a. It can work for any number of hours at a low cost
 - b. It can be used to make things like pins
 - c. very hot things can be repaired
 - d. It can be used to perform certain special tasks
3. In an Atomic Energy plant, a robot
 - a. cleans tables in offices
 - b. undertakes dangerous tasks
 - c. undertakes no work
 - d. helps man in doing forging
4. An 'Abdroid' is
 - a. a copy of a robot
 - b. a machine in the form of man
 - c. a machine which works like man
 - d. a machine doing forging

5. A robot is of immense use, as
- a man need not work
 - it can perform easily tasks which are difficult for man to do
 - it can perform with difficulty tasks which are easy for man to do
 - it can be used to pilot aeroplanes

PASSAGE - 15

In China Avanti was a man who was as witty as our Beerbal. One day a friend of Avanti came to him and said, "I have to send an urgent messages to my younger brother in the town. Please write for me a letter with the message". He was in a hurry.

Avanti said leisurely, "Of course, I can write the letter for you. But cannot go to the town". The friend was surprised, and requestingly said, "You need not go to the town. It is enough if you just write the letter. I will send the letter to the town through my friend".

Then Avanti laughed and said, "No, that is not the thing. My handwriting can be understood only by me. Then if I do not go to the town, who will read the letter there? How will your brother receive the message?"

The friend now understood the matter, laughed aloud, patted Avanti on his back and went away.

- The specially of Avanti was that
 - he was an expert letter - writer.
 - he could write letter to anybody.
 - he could make anybody laugh.
 - he could cheat any body.
- Avanti's friend said to Avanti, "Write a letter.
 - asking my brother to come urgently"
 - to my younger brother with my message"
 - informing that I am going to the town"
 - asking my brother about his well-being"
- Avanti's friend was surprised, because Avanti said that
 - he would write his handwriting so badly that none else could understand it
 - he would not go to the town, when asked to write a letter.
 - he would not write the letter.
 - it was difficult for him to write the letter
- The friend requestingly told Avanti
 - that he should write the letter.
 - that he would send the letter through his friend
 - that he should go to the town himself.
 - that he should write the letter legible.

5. Avanti's friend patted Avanti on his back, because
- Avanti had written the letter clearly
 - Avanti had said that his handwriting would be illegible
 - he had understood the joke in Avanti's words
 - he was happy about Avanti as his friend

PASSAGE - 16

Every man should have an aim in life. The aim should be a very high one. It should be decided upon even when one is young. Even though one comes across a number of fearful impediments in life, one should face them with self confidence and fight for the achievement of his aim.

Once Gandhiji said, "Even animals do the acts of eating, wandering and sleeping, like man. There will be difference between man and animal, only when man achieves a high aim".

Even when one decides upon an aim in his mind, one should, first of all, prepare a plan for achieving and then follow the plan in the right way and reach the aim. By reaching the aim, we will have self satisfaction and our birth as men will be fruitful.

- When should man form an aim in life ?
 - during boyhood
 - when the thought of an aim comes into his mind
 - after growing up
 - after passing suffering
- Why should man have an aim in life ?
 - Man can become great and earn fame
 - On achieving the aim, self satisfaction generates and his birth as man is fruitful
 - Man's life has to be happy
 - Man should not undergo any suffering
- Why did Gandhiji say that there should be difference between man and animal ?
 - Animals and men are equal
 - If animals too have aim, there will be no difference between them and us
 - As we are men, we should achieve our aims
 - Animals cannot speak like us
- What should we do to reach our aim ?
 - We should think calmly
 - We should have a pre-prepared plan and proceed in the right way
 - We should have a pre-prepared plan and proceed in short-cut routes
 - We should work hard
- How many times have aim-related words occurred in the passage ?
 - 6 times
 - 7 times
 - 8 times
 - 9 times

PASSAGE - 17

Lala Lajapati Roy, 'the Lion of the Punjab', was one day travelling by train from Lahore to Delhi. It was a long journey and passing time was a problem. So he took with him a number of books.

As soon as the train started, he took out 'Kim', a novel written by Rudyard Kipling and began reading it. By the time he read ten to fifteen pages, he noticed, in the novel, a tendency of hating the Indians and that caused distaste in him. Getting wildly angry at the tendency, he threw out the book through a window from the running train. However, he remembered in time that it was the book he had borrowed from some one. He bit his tongue. If it had been his own book, he would not have felt sorry, of course, for the excellent thing she had done.

1. Lala Lajapati Roy took a number of books with him, because
 - a. he thought he might not be able to carry them himself
 - b. the books were his own.
 - c. he wanted to pass time by reading them.
 - d. he wanted to sell the books
2. Lalaji threw out the book 'Kim', because
 - a. the book was ugly to see.
 - b. it was very heavy
 - c. it was written in English
 - d. it insulted the Indians.
3. Lala Lajapati Roy bit his tongue, because
 - a. biting tongue was his habit.
 - b. it was not his own book
 - c. it was a valuable book
 - d. he had brought a number of books with him.
4. When would Lalaji have felt happy about the excellent thing he had done?
 - a. if he had not thrown out the book from the compartment.
 - b. if he had thrown out someone else's book.
 - c. if the book had been his own
 - d. if he had torn off the book.
5. 'The Lion of the Punjab' means
 - a. a lion of the state of the Punjab
 - b. that Lala Lajapati Roy was like a lion of the Punjab
 - c. a title given to Lala Lajapathi Roy
 - d. the Chief Minister of the State of the Punjab.

ANSWERS:**PASSAGE - 1**

1. b 2. c 3. c 4. c 5. b

PASSAGE - 2

1. a 2. c 3. b 4. c 5. d

PASSAGE - 3

1. a 2. d 3. b 4. c 5. b

PASSAGE - 4

1. d 2. d 3. d 4. c 5. d

PASSAGE - 5

1. b 2. c 3. c 4. a 5. b

PASSAGE - 6

1. c 2. c 3. c 4. c 5. b

PASSAGE - 7

1. a 2. c 3. b 4. d 5. b

PASSAGE - 8

1. d 2. c 3. b 4. a 5. b

PASSAGE - 9

1. d 2. d 3. d 4. d 5. d

PASSAGE - 10

1. d 2. c 3. b 4. a 5. b

PASSAGE - 11

1. a 2. b 3. b 4. b 5. c

PASSAGE - 12

1. b 2. b 3. c 4. b 5. c

PASSAGE - 13

1. b 2. a 3. d 4. d 5. c

PASSAGE - 14

1. c 2. d 3. b 4. c 5. b

PASSAGE - 15

1. c 2. b 3. b 4. b 5. c

PASSAGE - 16

1. a 2. b 3. c 4. b 5. a

PASSAGE - 17

1. c 2. d 3. b 4. c 5. b

COMPOSITION

Composition is the art of writing. Writing is a composite skill. The word 'composition' is derived from the Latin word compose. It means 'to put together'. So, putting together words and sentences is called composition.

If the students are asked to write a few words or to fill in the missing letters or words, it is also composition. Writing composition is an integral part of language so it should be taught to the learners as a means to acquire mastery over language. The teachers have no sufficient time to give proper importance to composition in the teaching of English.

AIMS OF THE TEACHING OF COMPOSITION

1. The students should be encouraged to communicate the environment.
2. They should be made efficient enough to organise and put their ideas and feelings.
3. They should be made efficient to be able to express their feelings by their own selected words.
4. The teacher should help the students in proper organization and use of the vocabulary.

Controlled Composition :

- Students have to be provided with the subject matter of the composition.
- An oral discussion and practice proceeds.
- What to say, how to say and the language to be used should be made clear to the students.
- This sort of help should be gradually decreased.
- This can be produced by asking questions and giving answers.

Guided Composition :-

- It is the next stage of composition work.
- The students are provided with the subject matter. Freedom is increased in the usage of language. The teacher first selects a familiar and an interested topic to the students.
- The teacher first selects a familiar and an interested topic to the students.
- By discussion, the students arrive at a topic, sentence.
- The students continue the activity either by discussion or by asking questions and giving answers.
- They prepare a rough draft.
- They improve it after refinement.

Free Composition :

- Free composition can be given when the students reach a higher stage of writing.
- It should be given when they would have mastered certain Vocabulary and structures.
- The help from the teacher would be almost negligible.
- Topics should be selected from the range of students experience.

Exercise for Free Composition

1. Early stage-simple topics - such as my school, my family, our festival etc.
2. Reporting about any function held at school.
3. Letter writing.
4. Summarizing and note taking
5. Creative writing
6. Writing of an application
7. Essay writing.
8. Prepts writing
9. Story writing
10. Descriptive Writing
11. Narrative Writing etc.

Exercises for Guided Composition

- a) Substitution tables
- b) Transcription
- c) Dictation
- d) Transformation of sentences
- e) Composition of incomplete sentences
- f) Reproducing - a situation, a picture description, a story.

EXERCISE - 1

1. In guided composition, the students are able to have guidance of
 - a. ideas and vocabulary
 - b. ideas only
 - c. ideas, vocabulary and structures
 - d. Nothing
2. In guided composition, the learners have to work according to what had been
 - a. suggested
 - b. informed
 - c. instructed
 - d. all the above
3. Controlled situation is there to the
 - a. parents
 - b. teachers
 - c. students
 - d. all
4. The topic should be chosen according to the
 - a. present situation
 - b. emerging issues
 - c. contemporary problems
 - d. mental level of the learners
5. In guided composition, vocabulary, structures are
 - a. given by the teacher
 - b. chosen by the learners
 - c. chosen from peer group
 - d. decided after a discussion
6. Which of the following is an exercise for guided composition
 - a. substitution table
 - b. letter writing
 - c. paragraph writing
 - d. precis writing
7. In guided composition.
 - a. all work is done orally
 - b. there is no oral work
 - c. oral work is done at the end
 - d. there is no specific method

8. Which of the following is correct
- guided composition plays the way for free composition
 - Free composition plays the way for guided composition.
 - Guided composition doesn't correct grammatical mistakes
 - students do not learn structures in composition
9. Which is the exercise for free composition.
- story writing
 - transformation
 - dictation
 - reproduction of situation
10. Which of the following is not an objective of teaching composition
- to develop
 - to pronoun the words correctly
 - to develop imagination power
 - to develop depending attitude on others
11. Creative writing means
- write something on which is already existing
 - write something new which is not existing
 - write as we wish
 - write something using standard vocabulary
12. Which of the following is not expected from teacher to encourage the students to write a composition.
- organised conversation
 - orderly behaviour
 - presenting model compositions
 - ask the students to write of their own
13. If the teacher does not correct the answer-books of students
- they will correct themselves
 - they think it is not necessary
 - they become careless
 - they will write correctly
14. If the students make mistake in composition writing, the teachers should
- discourage them
 - laugh at them
 - suppress the zeal
 - correct and encourage
15. Which of the following shall not enrich the experience of the students
- opportunity to listen
 - observation
 - discussion
 - copying down from the notes
16. The students should be encouraged to
- put forward and express their experience
 - write composition without paying attention
 - ignore and neglect composition writing
 - make them against the composition
17. Which of the statements is wrong ?
- the students should be encouraged to communicate with the environment
 - oral discussion or practice is not necessary
 - Proper organisation and use of vocabulary is not encouraged.
 - we should not give importance to the students experiences
18. The teachers normally do not give much importance to the composition writing because
- there is no use for the students
 - it is not supposed in high schools
 - they find very little time for the correction of the work
 - through they are interested, the official don't

19. The expression of composition is
 a. oral
 b. written
 c. oral or written
 d. neither oral nor written
20. This is the essential quality of a composition.
 a. orderly and properly organised composition
 b. taking help from peer group in organising the composition
 c. irregular presentation of ideas and experiences
 d. vague and inadequate presentation

Answers :

1.c 2.a 3.c 4.d 5.a 6.a 7.a 8.a 9.a 10.d 11.b 12.d 13.c 14.d 15.d 16.a 17.a
 18.c 19.c 20.a

EXERCISE - 2

- Good composition must grow out of one's
 a. grammatical knowledge
 b. personal experience
 c. vocabulary
 d. environment and heredity
- The main aim of written composition
 a. to enable the students to write their ideas clearly and effectively
 b. to say something about a test
 c. to explain a story or an incident
 d. to participate in conversation and discussions
- Which one is not the objective of oral composition
 a. to develop the habit of listening
 b. use of correct pronunciation
 c. to learn the vocabulary in use
 d. to put the ideas on paper in an order
- The word composition comes from the word 'compose' it means
 a. complete
 b. scatter the words
 c. to put together
 d. make the students compete
- The word 'compose' come from
 a. English word
 b. Latin word
 c. Greek word
 d. French word
- The composition work is
 a. to make the learners speak well
 b. a minute part of language work
 c. an integral part of language work
 d. not so useful to the learners of English Language
- Which of the following is not needed in composition work
 a. recall of necessary structure and vocabulary
 b. organisation of ideas
 c. spellings and punctuation
 d. drawing beautiful pictures and colouring
- The students imagine in
 a. English
 b. Mother tongue
 c. any language
 d. all of the language

9. The students need not any guidance in
 - a. an early stage
 - b. lower classes
 - c. the beginning
 - d. senior stage
10. Learning of a language remains incomplete if the students do not acquire
 - a. Listening skill
 - b. Listening and speaking
 - c. speaking and writing
 - d. all the four skills
11. Which one of the following is not a step involved in guided composition
 - a. selection of the topic
 - b. discussion on details
 - c. vocabulary and structures
 - d. leave the students to write of their own
12. List of substitution tables is a
 - a. method
 - b. approach
 - c. technique
 - d. procedure
13. To make a few sentences from a substitution table is
 - a. free composition
 - b. guided composition
 - c. controlled composition
 - d. not a composition writing
14. What ever is taken up for composition, that should be dealt
 - a. with oral first
 - b. with written practice
 - c. with the help of parents
 - d. out of the classroom
15. Which is necessary for developing the composition work among the students
 - a. good handwriting
 - b. correct spelling
 - c. structures
 - d. all the above
16. Report writing about a function comes under
 - a. free composition
 - b. guided composition
 - c. controlled composition
 - d. it is not composition
17. Composition is taught
 - a. according to the levels of the learners
 - b. irrespective of the levels of the students
 - c. as per the patterns of the question paper
 - d. to all the students of all the levels at a time
18. Composition is taught in
 - a. colleges
 - b. universities
 - c. high schools
 - d. teacher education centres
19. A teacher has given some clues and asked to prepare a comprehension. This is
 - a. a method
 - b. a procedure
 - c. an approach
 - d. a technique
20. Reproduction of story can be taken in the
 - a. Infant classes
 - b. higher classes
 - c. primary classes
 - d. colleges only

Answers :

1.b 2.a 3.d 4.c 5.b 6.c 7.d 8.b 9.d 10.d 11.d 12.c 13.c 14.a 15.d 16.a 17.a
18.c 19.d 20.b

VOCABULARY

A. SPELLING

Words for Spelling Test

A FEW RULES FOR SPELLING

Spelling అనేది భాష యొక్క వ్రాతరూపములో ప్రధాన పాత్ర వహిస్తుంది. Spellingsలో తప్పులు దొర్లకుండా ఉండడానికి దిగువ తెలియబరచిన కొన్ని నియమాలను పాటించే ప్రయత్నం చేయాలి. పదాలు జ్ఞాపకం చేయడం వల్ల ఎక్కువ ప్రయోజనం ఉండదు. అవి దీర్ఘకాలం స్మృతిలో ఉండవు. నియమాలను చదివి అర్థం చేసుకోవాలి. కొన్ని పదాలకు exemption ఉంటుంది.

1. 'e' అనే అక్షరం పదం చివరన వచ్చి అది ఉచ్చరింపబడకపోతే ing కలిపినప్పుడు 'e' ఉండదు.
Ex : come + ing = coming
hope + ing = hoping
fire + ing = firing
like + ing = liking
2. 'ee' తో పూర్తయ్యే పదాలకు 'ing' కలిపిన 'ee' అలాగే ఉంటాయి.
Ex : See + ing = seeing
agree + ing = agreeing
3. ఒకే సిలబిల్ కలిగిన పదాలై ఉండి చివరన ఒక vowel వస్తే 'l' కాకుండా double l (ll) వస్తుంది.
Ex : fill, tell, hell, hill (nil-exempted)
4. 'l' తో పూర్తయ్యే monosyllabic words 'l' కు ముందు double vowel వస్తే ఒక l మాత్రమే వ్రాయాలి.
Ex : fail, mail, coil, rail, boil
5. చివరగా consonant Sound వచ్చి దాని ముందు vowel ఉంటే ing కలిపినప్పుడు consonant double అవుతుంది.
Ex : begin + ing = beginning
plan + ing = planning
sin + ing = sinning
6. ఒక సిలబిల్ కంటే ఎక్కువ సిలబిల్స్ ఉండి చివరి syllable stress అయినప్పుడు.
Ex : refer + ing = referring
occur + ing = occurring
7. full అనే పదం వేరే పదానికి suffix అయినప్పుడు single 'l' ఉంటుంది.
Ex : Care + full = careful,
will + full = wilful
skill + full = skilful
meaning + ful = meaning ful
8. 'l' ending లో ఉండే పదాలతో ఏర్పడే పదాలలో single 'l' ఉంటుంది.
Ex : equal + ity = equality
moral + ity = morality
formal + ity = formality

'er' లేక 'ly' చేరితే

pull + er = puller

equal + ly = equally.

9. 'I' తో పూర్తయ్యే adjective కి 'ly' చేరినప్పుడు చివర 'I double' అవుతుంది.

Ex : critical + ly = critically

final + ly = finally

real + ly = really

10. 'Ous' suffix ముందు పదాల చివర గల 'e' అనే letter 'i' గా మారును.

Ex : space - spacious

grace - gracious

Words for Spelling Test

| | | | |
|----------------|-----------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. Business | 31. Circus | 61. Sporting | 91. Exclaim |
| 2. Kilometre | 32. Trainers | 62. Supporting | 92. Doubtful |
| 3. Squeeze | 33. Centimetre | 63. Apartment | 93. Swore |
| 4. Immediately | 34. Completely | 64. Trouble | 94. Shone |
| 5. Terrified | 35. Escapes | 65. Creatures | 95. Sacrifice |
| 6. Instantly | 36. Temperature | 66. Concentration | 96. Showered |
| 7. Explain | 37. Fortunately | 67. Scientist | 97. Pleased |
| 8. Replied | 38. Radiator | 68. Northern | 98. Embrace |
| 9. Biscuits | 39. Comfortable | 69. Migration | 99. Population |
| 10. Tortoise | 40. Especially | 70. Sanctuary | 100. Government |
| 11. Buttered | 41. Complicated | 71. Distances | 101. Permission |
| 12. Countries | 42. Necessary | 72. Movement | 102. Crowded |
| 13. Probably | 43. Certainly | 73. Noticed | 103. Permanently |
| 14. Patiently | 44. Merchant | 74. Bloom | 104. Increasing |
| 15. Whisking | 45. Friend | 75. Safely | 105. Organisation |
| 16. Extremely | 46. Captain | 76. Boats | 106. Religious |
| 17. Parliament | 47. Australia | 77. Honoured | 107. Missionaries |
| 18. Uniforms | 48. Language | 78. Delighted | 108. Travelling |
| 19. Soldiers | 49. Marsupials | 79. Foresight | 109. Themselves |
| 20. Dangerous | 50. Guide | 80. Occasion | 110. Generous |
| 21. Cyclists | 51. Journey | 81. Immortal | 111. Gathering |
| 22. Boulders | 52. Neighbour | 82. Rejoiced | 112. Independent |
| 23. Actually | 53. Whisper | 83. Engaged | 113. Peacefully |
| 24. Tongues | 54. Marvellous | 84. Jealous | 114. Temple Town |
| 25. Surprise | 55. Ducklings | 85. Secretly | 115. Necessary |
| 26. Carries | 56. Leading | 86. Messengers | 116. According |
| 27. Children | 57. Sculling | 87. Daughter | 117. Received |
| 28. Thousands | 58. Retirement | 88. Fisherman | 118. Kindness |
| 29. Inspector | 59. Harbour | 89. Persuade | 119. Expression |
| 30. Remarkable | 60. Champion | 90. Expected | 120. Kicking |

| | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| 121. Sneaking | 162. Hibernate | 203. Condition |
| 122. Condition | 163. Hemisphere | 204. Reporter |
| 123. Apparently | 164. Temperature | 205. Interview |
| 124. Predicted | 165. Freezing | 206. Prefer |
| 125. Presence | 166. Atmosphere | 207. Mixture |
| 126. Enquiry | 167. Creature | 208. Ginger |
| 127. Permission | 168. Autumn | 209. Strained |
| 128. Pretend | 169. Assembly | 210. Independent |
| 129. Seriously | 170. Paramedics | 211. Secretary |
| 130. Suggest | 171. Eyelashes | 212. Conversation |
| 131. Invitation | 172. Surgeon | 213. Disagreement |
| 132. Acceptance | 173. Unbelievable | 214. Dropped |
| 133. Education | 174. Hypodermic | 215. Interrupt |
| 134. Everybody | 175. Neighbouring | 216. Punctual |
| 135. Beautiful | 176. Dedicated | 217. Remarked |
| 136. Appreciated | 177. Anaesthetised | 218. Adjoining |
| 137. Explain | 178. Supervising | 219. Accompanied |
| 138. Learning | 179. Treatment | 220. Forearms |
| 139. Remark | 180. Spectacles | 221. Mentioned |
| 140. Description | 181. Volunteers | 222. Neglected |
| 141. Humorous | 182. Equipment | 223. Assembled |
| 142. Publish | 183. Partially | 224. Automatic |
| 143. Travel | 184. Humanitarian | 225. Descended |
| 144. Beginning | 185. Association | 226. Momentarily |
| 145. Interest | 186. Malnutrition | 227. Spectacles |
| 146. Adventure | 187. Almighty | 228. Mountain |
| 147. Authoritative | 188. Determine | 229. Strength |
| 148. Originality | 189. Determination | 230. Electricity |
| 149. Citizenship | 190. Optimism | 231. Kerosene |
| 150. Astonished | 191. Concludes | 232. Mulberry |
| 151. Appreciative | 192. Exceed | 233. Absorbing |
| 152. Disability | 193. Waken | 234. Atmosphere |
| 153. Assistance | 194. Certainly | 235. Reforestation |
| 154. Educative | 195. Mongrels | 236. Nurseries |
| 155. Companion | 196. Perhaps | 237. Deforestation |
| 156. Frightening | 197. Apologize | 238. Ecological |
| 157. Discovered | 198. Pedigree | 239. Regions |
| 158. Surroundings | 199. Impossible | 240. Decreased |
| 159. Realise | 200. Understand | 241. Environment |
| 160. Crutch | 201. Contained | 242. Conference |
| 161. Murmuring | 202. Slightly | 243. Illiteracy |

244. Throughout
245. Disobedience
246. Resources
247. Contractor
248. Earlier
249. Biogas
250. Productivity
251. Threshold
252. Accountant
253. Frightened
254. Awful
255. Interruption
256. Gathered
257. Regularly
258. Quickly
259. Cheque
260. Courtiers
261. Particularly
262. Malicious
263. Appropriate
264. Immediately
265. Surprised
266. Partially
267. Whispered
268. Angrily
269. Fierce
270. Seizing
271. Gradually
272. Creatures
273. Companion
274. Clearing
275. Disappeared
276. Experience
277. Beautifully
278. Discovered
279. Against
280. Attractive
281. Pretty
282. Commanded
283. Inefficient
284. Completely

285. Illiterate
286. Official
287. Peasant
288. Syllables
289. Terribly
290. Quiet
291. Argue
292. Nikolaevich
293. Rustling
294. Educated
295. Envelop
296. Perfume
297. Sniffing
298. Unthinkable
299. Cupboard
300. Contrary
301. Overjoyed
302. memorised
303. Patiently
304. Treasured
305. Anniversary
306. Revolution
307. Insulted
308. Mysterious
309. Realised
310. Decision
311. Secretly
312. Neighbour
313. Suspected
314. Arrival
315. Sensitive
316. Consisted
317. Millionaire
318. Realized
319. Fifties
320. Dryly
321. Ceiling
322. Mountainous
323. Financial career
324. Auditorium
325. Traditional

326. Thunderous
327. Uncrushable
328. Courageous
329. Pilgrimage
330. Resulted
331. Gangrenous
332. Amputate
333. Artificial
334. Vulcanized
335. Aquired
336. Physiotherapist
337. Encouraged
338. Character
339. Invitations
340. Surrounding
341. Congratulations
342. Achievement
343. Realization
344. Orthopaedic
345. Ophthalmologist
346. Psychiatrist
347. Dermatologist
348. Furnished
349. Relations
350. Adolescent
351. Enchantment
352. Strangely
353. Piercing
354. Stretched
355. Hesitates
356. Seriously
357. Precious
358. Appreciate
359. Revolving
360. Creativeness
361. Clattering
362. Disappointed
363. Abolish
364. Immature
365. Comparisons
366. Experience

- | | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| 367. Realistic | 408. Mouthed | 449. Slender |
| 368. Disappeared | 409. About | 450. Thieves |
| 369. Frightened | 410. Worried | 451. Inspector |
| 370. Requests | 411. Expression | 452. Parents |
| 371. Adenoids | 412. Joyously | 453. Pollution |
| 372. Whispered | 413. Neither | 454. Corrode |
| 373. Conversation | 414. Succeed | 455. Substance |
| 374. Carrying | 415. Magnificent | 456. Release |
| 375. Instrument | 416. Excitement | 457. Garbage |
| 376. Centimetre | 417. Excavations | 458. Machines |
| 377. Norwegian | 418. Professional | 459. Automobile |
| 378. Disappeared | 419. Archaeologist | 460. Dumping |
| 379. Horrified | 420. Previously | 461. Avoid |
| 380. Grabbed | 421. Sandstorm | 462. Pollutants |
| 381. dripping | 422. Circumstances | 463. Endanger |
| 382. Stairs | 423. Millionaire | 464. Factories |
| 383. Arrived | 424. Antiquites | 465. Poison |
| 384. Tonsils | 425. Authorities | 466. Vehicles |
| 385. Anaesthetic | 426. Depression | 467. Problems |
| 386. Describe | 427. Hundreds | 468. Chemicals |
| 387. Gasping | 428. Appendix | 469. Traffic |
| 388. Covered | 429. Alabaster | 470. Fluttering |
| 389. Practice | 430. Millionaire | 471. Soaring |
| 390. Ordinary | 431. Unearthed | 472. Crumbs |
| 391. designed | 432. Lieutenant | 473. Breast |
| 392. Enquired | 433. Especially | 474. Attract |
| 393. Intended | 434. Correspondent | 475. Peacocks |
| 394. Certainly | 435. Request | 476. Imitate |
| 395. Recognized | 436. Influenced | 477. Squirrel |
| 396. Believe | 437. Cigarette | 478. Animals |
| 397. Recently | 438. Springtime | 479. Frightened |
| 398. Disturbed | 439. Firmness | 480. Crawl |
| 399. Connected | 440. Quickly | 481. Continue |
| 400. Distance | 441. Hesitate | 482. Convent |
| 401. Rushed | 442. Divided | 483. Destitute |
| 402. Swallowed | 443. Precious | 484. Delegate |
| 403. Butter | 444. Saluted | 485. Necessity |
| 404. Entirely | 445. Overseas | 486. Prestigious |
| 405. Reaction | 446. Throughout | 487. Nobel |
| 406. Puzzled | 447. Influenced | 488. Noble |
| 407. Horrible | 448. Slightly | 489. Neighbourhood |

- | | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| 490. Improvement | 531. Agreeable | 572. Ascent |
| 491. Condition | 532. Agitate | 573. Ashamed |
| 492. Permission | 533. Alternative | 574. Aspire |
| 493. Corporation | 534. Altogether | 575. Assault |
| 494. Received | 535. Amateur | 576. Assembly |
| 495. Citizen | 536. Amiable | 577. Disperse |
| 496. Sponge | 537. Amplify | 578. Assign |
| 497. Mineral | 538. Ancestor | 579. Assorted |
| 498. Oysters | 539. Ancient | 580. Assume |
| 499. Pearls | 540. Anguish | 581. Astonish |
| 500. Abandon | 541. Friendly | 582. Astate |
| 501. Abbreviate | 542. Pleasure | 583. Athletic |
| 502. Abdicate | 543. Animosity | 584. Atrocious |
| 503. Abolish | 544. Announce | 585. Attentive |
| 504. Abominable | 545. Answer | 586. Attitude |
| 505. Admirable | 546. Antagonistic | 587. Attractive |
| 506. Abominate | 547. Friendly | 588. Austere |
| 507. Abridge | 548. Anticipate | 589. Authentic |
| 508. Abroad | 549. Antique | 590. Available |
| 509. Abrupt | 550. Apathetic | 591. Unobtainable |
| 510. Absolutely | 551. Adventure | 592. Avenge |
| 511. Accuse | 552. Apologize | 593. Average |
| 512. Achieve | 553. Apparent | 594. Encounter |
| 513. Acquire | 554. Appear | 595. Awkward |
| 514. Actual | 555. Appetite | 596. Babble |
| 515. Adequate | 556. Applaud | 597. Background |
| 516. Adjacent | 557. Appliance | 598. Foreground |
| 517. Admirable | 558. Appreciate | 599. Backward |
| 518. Abnormal | 559. Approach | 600. Baffle |
| 519. Admiration | 560. Appropriated | 601. Balance |
| 520. Adulterated | 561. Approval | 602. Bargain |
| 521. Advanced | 562. Approximate | 603. Barren |
| 522. Advantageous | 563. Ardent | 604. Barrier |
| 523. Adverse | 564. Arduous | 605. Barter |
| 524. Affable | 565. Argue | 606. Basement |
| 525. Affection | 566. Arrange | 607. Bashful |
| 526. Affirm | 567. Attire | 608. Battle |
| 527. Afraid | 568. Arrogant | 609. Beach |
| 528. Against | 569. Artful | 610. Bearable |
| 529. Appointment | 570. Artificial | 611. Beastly |
| 530. Admiration | 571. Artless | 612. Beautiful |

| | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|------------------|
| 613. Become | 654. Bygone | 695. Chaotic |
| 614. Before | 655. Cabinet | 696. Character |
| 615. Behaviour | 656. Cackle | 697. Charitable |
| 616. Believe | 657. Calamity | 698. Chorus |
| 617. Beneath | 658. Calculate | 699. Chronic |
| 618. Beneficial | 659. Callous | 700. Chuckle |
| 619. Benevolent | 660. Camouflage | 701. Cherish |
| 620. Besides | 661. Cancel | 702. Circular |
| 621. Betray | 662. Candidate | 703. Citizen |
| 622. Beware | 663. Canopy | 704. Clamour |
| 623. Betterment | 664. Capacity | 705. Clarify |
| 624. Bewilder | 665. Capital | 706. Classical |
| 625. Biased | 666. Captivate | 707. Cadaver |
| 626. Prohibit | 667. Capture | 708. Clatter |
| 627. Blame | 668. Career | 709. Clemency |
| 628. Bleach | 669. Careful | 710. Climax |
| 629. Blemish | 670. Carelessness | 711. Collapse |
| 630. Blessing | 671. Carnival | 712. Colleague |
| 631. Blight | 672. Carriage | 713. Collection |
| 632. Blind | 673. Cascade | 714. Colossal |
| 633. Bloom | 674. Cashier | 715. Column |
| 634. Bluff | 675. Casino | 716. Combine |
| 635. Blunt | 676. Castaway | 717. Comfortable |
| 636. Boastful | 677. Casualty | 718. Comical |
| 637. Genuine | 678. Caution | 719. Command |
| 638. Boisterous | 679. Cataract | 720. Commence |
| 639. Boorish | 680. Catalogue | 721. Commission |
| 640. Borrow | 681. Catching | 722. Committee |
| 641. Bottom | 682. Category | 723. Commodity |
| 642. Boundary | 683. Celebrated | 724. Commonplace |
| 643. Bounty | 684. Married | 725. Unusual |
| 644. Breadth | 685. Cemetery | 726. Commotion |
| 645. Breathe | 686. Censure | 727. Community |
| 646. Brighten | 687. Approve | 728. Compact |
| 647. Brilliant | 688. Applaud | 729. Companion |
| 648. Bubble | 689. Central | 730. Comparable |
| 649. Bundle | 690. Ceremonious | 731. Compartment |
| 650. Burglar | 691. Certainly | 732. Compassion |
| 651. Burst | 692. Certificate | 733. Compatible |
| 652. Business | 693. Changeable | 734. Composed |
| 653. Bustle | 694. Channel | 735. Comprehend |

736. Comprehensive
737. Cramp
738. Grease
739. Creature
740. Credible
741. Credulous
742. Credulous
743. Crestfallen
744. Crevice
745. Criminal
746. Cripple
747. Criterion
748. Cretical
749. Crooked
750. Comprise
751. Compulsory
752. Computer
753. Comrade
754. Concave
755. Concede
756. Conceive
757. Concept
758. Counter
759. Control
760. Convenient
761. Conventional
762. Converge
763. Convert
764. Convict
765. Cooperate
766. Coordinate
767. Copious
768. Cordial
769. Concern
770. Concerted
771. Confussion
772. Condemn
773. Condense
774. Confident
775. Confirm
776. Confiscate

777. Conform
778. Confound
779. Confront
780. Congenial
781. Congested
782. Congratulate
783. Conjuror
784. Connect
785. Connection
786. Conquest
787. Conscious
788. Consent
789. Conservative
790. Conserve
791. Consider
792. Consist
793. Considerate
794. Consolation
795. Consort
796. Conspicuous
797. Conspiracy
798. Constant
799. Consume
800. Contact
801. Contagious
802. Contaminate
803. Contemplate
804. Contest
805. Continual
806. Contract
807. Contrary
808. Contrast
809. Contribute
810. Contrive
811. Costume
812. Council
813. Corner
814. Covert
815. Cowardice
816. Craft
817. Crowd

818. Crucial
819. Cruel
820. Crumb
821. Crumple
822. Culminate
823. Cultivate
824. Culture
825. Cunning
826. Cupboard
827. Curious
828. Counteracts
829. Countless
830. Current
831. Cursed
832. Curtail
834. Customary
835. Cynical
836. Dangcrous
837. Gang
838. Daring
839. Darken
840. Darling
841. Dauntless
842. Dagger
843. Decree
844. Defect
845. Deficient
846. Definite
847. Defraud
848. Dejected
849. Delegate
850. Deliberate
851. Delecate
852. Delicious
853. Delightful
854. Deliver
855. Deluge
856. Demand
857. Demolish
858. Demonstrate
859. Denounce

| | | | |
|------------------|------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 860. Department | 903. Rancid | 944. Reproach | 987. Sentimental |
| 861. Depended | 904. Random | 945. Reproduce | 988. Separate |
| 862. Deposit | 905. Rankle | 946. Repugnant | 989. Sequene |
| 863. Destination | 906. Ransack | 947. Request | 990. Serious |
| 864. Destroy | 907. Rapture | 948. Research | 991. Servitude |
| 865. Detach | 908. Rational | 949. Romance | 992. Severity |
| 866. Deteriorate | 909. Ravenous | 950. Righteous | 993. Shackle |
| 867. Determine | 910. Ravishing | 951. Reverent | 994. Shaggy |
| 868. Deterrent | 911. Readable | 952. Robust | 995. Shallow |
| 869. Deprecate | 912. Reality | 953. Safeguard | 996. Shamfull |
| 870. Depreciate | 913. Realize | 954. Sailor | 997. Singular |
| 871. Appreciate | 914. Rebellious | 955. Sanctuary | 998. Slugglar |
| 872. Depressed | 915. Rebuke | 956. Sanguine | 999. Souvenir |
| 873. Deprive | 916. Receipt | 957. Sarcastic | 1000. Dictionary |
| 874. Derelict | 917. Reception | 958. Saturate | |
| 875. Derogatory | 918. Redundant | 959. Saunter | |
| 876. Descendant | 919. Referee | 960. Savage | |
| 877. Describe | 920. Refrain | 961. Scale | |
| 878. Deserted | 921. Refrigerate | 962. Stout | |
| 879. Desirable | 922. Regardless | 963. Hungry | |
| 880. Desolate | 923. Register | 964. Scarcely | |
| 881. Despair | 924. Regular | 965. Scatter | |
| 882. Desperate | 925. Regulation | 966. Scribble | |
| 883. Despicable | 926. Rehearse | 967. Scrupulous | |
| 884. Despite | 927. Reinforce | 968. Scrutinize | |
| 885. Devastate | 928. Rejoice | 969. Sculpture | |
| 886. Development | 929. Relapse | 970. Search | |
| 887. Deviate | 930. Relative | 971. Secluded | |
| 888. Devious | 931. Relaxed | 972. Secondary | |
| 889. Devoted | 932. Release | 973. Secrete | |
| 890. Diagram | 933. Relentless | 974. Security | |
| 891. Dictate | 934. Relevant | 975. Scepter | |
| 892. Difference | 935. Reliable | 976. Scheme | |
| 893. Difficult | 936. Religious | 977. Scorch | |
| 894. Digest | 937. Relinquish | 978. Scoundrel | |
| 895. Dignified | 938. Reluctance | 979. Scourge | |
| 896. Dilemma | 939. Remainder | 980. Scream | |
| 897. Diminish | 940. Remarkable | 981. Seethe | |
| 898. Deprive | 941. Remember | 982. Selfish | |
| 899. Radiant | 942. Remnant | 983. Senior | |
| 900. Radical | 943. Repress | 984. Sensation | |
| 901. Ragged | | 985. Sensible | |
| 902. Ramble | | 986. Sentence | |

FIND OUT THE WRONGLY SPELT WORD

EXERCISE - 1

- | | |
|------------------|----------------|
| 1. a. Procedure | b. Privilege |
| c. Surgean | d. Symbol |
| 2. a. suggestion | b. Successful |
| c. Solitary | d. Squirrel |
| 3. a. Cabinet | b. Church |
| c. Capetalism | d. Chronical |
| 4. a. Bilateral | b. Biscuit |
| c. Blander | d. Breast |
| 5. a. Category | b. Cockroach |
| c. Clerikal | d. Conceive |
| 6. a. Example | b. Psychology |
| c. Business | d. Forecast |
| 7. a. Sedentary | b. Moustache |
| c. Leasure | d. Commerce |
| 8. a. Pleasant | b. Pesant |
| c. Poetry | d. Precious |
| 9. a. Release | b. Religion |
| c. Require | d. Repare |
| 10. a. Opposite | b. Optics |
| c. Optimist | d. Oretor |
| 11. a. Radium | b. Raid |
| c. Random | d. Retional |
| 12. a. Sale | b. Sail |
| c. Satair | d. Saliva |
| 13. a. Innocence | b. Injurious |
| c. Maturity | d. Latory |
| 14. a. Knife | b. Lesson |
| c. Janavary | d. Jealous |
| 15. a. Interview | b. Itimacy |
| c. Intrige | d. Instantly |
| 16. a. Jury | b. Layer |
| c. League | d. Mathamatics |
| 17. a. Portar | b. Pour |
| c. Previous | d. Preliminary |
| 18. a. Parot | b. Proud |
| c. Promise | d. Precise |
| 19. a. Safely | b. Stout |
| c. Strange | d. Senery |
| 20. a. Ordinery | b. Order |
| c. Pencil | d. Pension |

Answers : 1.c 2.a 3.c 4.c 5.c 6.d 7.c 8.b
9.d 10.d 11.d 12.c 13.d 14.c 15.c 16.d
17.a 18.a 19.d 20.a

EXERCISE - 2

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------|
| 1. a. Smudges | b. Chatter |
| c. Insects | d. Enemis |
| 2. a. Design | b. Invent |
| c. Celebrete | d. Fasten |
| 3. a. Countries | b. Festival |
| c. Attractive | d. Beautiful |
| 4. a. Believe | b. Supplies |
| c. Japanes | d. Carry |
| 5. a. Favorite | b. Kilometre |
| c. Piece | d. Aeroplane |
| 6. a. Discuss | b. District |
| c. Exhibition | d. Funktion |
| 7. a. Minor | b. Process |
| c. Headacke | d. Microscope |
| 8. a. Exercise | b. Disease |
| c. Welthy | d. germs |
| 9. a. Spread | b. Garbage |
| c. Healthy | d. Provyde |
| 10. a. Furniture | b. Breathe |
| c. Otherwise | d. Plenti |
| 11. a. Walking | b. Jumping |
| c. Running | d. Swimming |
| 12. a. Elbow | b. Unkind |
| c. Brakefast | d. Promise |
| 13. a. Identify | b. Criminals |
| c. Dependable | d. Impresion |
| 14. a. Suspect | b. Century |
| c. Record | d. Earliar |
| 15. a. Chain | b. Poliece |
| c. Broken | d. Welcome |
| 16. a. Whisper | b. Bicycle |
| c. Footbal | d. Because |
| 17. a. Twinkle | b. Appear |
| c. Certain | d. Reinbow |
| 18. a. Wonder | b. Journey |
| c. Librery | d. Father |
| 19. a. Pollute | b. Chemical |
| c. Beautiful | d. Pollan |
| 20. a. Industries | b. Factories |
| c. Endanger | d. Incidense |

Answers : 1.d 2.c 3.b 4.c 5.a 6.d 7.c 8.c
9.d 10.d 11.b 12.c 13.d 14.d 15.b 16.c
17.d 18.c 19.d 20.d

B. PHRASAL VERBS

కొన్ని Verbs prepositions తో కలిపి వాటి basic కు భిన్నముగా మరొక అర్థాన్ని ఇచ్చే పదసముదాయాలు.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|---------------------------|-----------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Look at | - చూచుట | 37. Blow up | - ప్రారంభముగుట |
| 2. Look for | - వెదుకుట | 38. Blow over | - ముగిసిపోవు |
| 3. Draw | - చిత్రించుట | 39. Keep up | - నిలబెట్టు |
| 4. Draw out | - బయటకు తీయుట | 40. Keep off | - దూరముగా ఉండు |
| 5. Sent for | - పిలిపించుట | 41. Pick | - చెట్టు నుండి కోయు |
| 6. Send away | - పంపివేయుట | 42. Pick up | - క్రిందపడిన వాటిని పెరుకొనుట |
| 7. Give away | - ప్రదానముచేయు | 43. Talk to | - మాట్లాడు |
| 8. Give back | - తిరిగి ఇచ్చు | 44. Talks back | - ఎదురు మాట్లాడు |
| 9. Put on | - ధరించుట | 45. Make up | - అలంకరించు |
| 10. Put down | - తీసివేయుట/క్రిందపడవేయుట | 46. Make out | - అర్థం గ్రహించు |
| 11. Burst out | - పెద్దగా నవ్వుట | 47. Brush aside | - ప్రక్కకు నెట్టివేయు |
| 12. Burst into | - బిగ్గరగా ఏడ్వడం | 48. Brush up | - పునఃపరిశీలించి |
| 13. Put off | - వాయిదావేయు | 49. Take off | - బయలుదేరు |
| 14. Put up with | - ఓర్పుకొను, భరించు | 50. Take into | - పరిగణించు |
| 15. Cut | - గాయపడు / కోసుకొనిపోవు | 51. Bear up | - సహించు |
| 16. Cut off | - నరికివేయు | 52. Bear with | - నర్దుకొను |
| 17. Bring up | - పెంచుకొను | 53. Fall in | - ప్రవేశించు |
| 18. Bring back | - వెనుకకు తీసికొనివచ్చు | 54. Fall off | - తగ్గిపోవు |
| 19. Call for | - పిలుపునిచ్చు | 55. Come by | - సంపాదించు |
| 20. Call off | - నిరమించు | 56. Come round | - దారికివచ్చు |
| 21. Close | - మూయుట | 57. fall on | - ఆధారపడు |
| 22. Close down | - మూతబడుట | 58. Fall out | - కొట్లాడు |
| 23. Went into | - లోనికి వెళ్ళుట | 59. Pass on | - గతించిన, గడిచిన, పంపించు |
| 24. Went away | - వదలివెళ్ళు | 60. Pass away | - చనిపోవు |
| 25. Get into | - లోనికి వెళ్ళు | 61. Wash off | - చేతులు దులుపుకొను |
| 26. Get down | - క్రిందికి దిగు | 62. Wash out | - తుడిచిపెట్టు |
| 27. Turn on | - ఆన్ చేయుట | 63. Take off | - తీసివేయు, తొలగించు (బయలుదేరు) |
| 28. Turn off | - ఆఫ్ చేయుట | 64. Take after | - ఒకరిని పోలియుండు |
| 29. Slip | - జారిపడుట | 65. Break down | - దుఃఖించు |
| 30. Slip out | - జారుకొనుట | 66. Beak off | - విలిపివేయు |
| 31. Give up | - వదిలివేయు | 67. Switch on | - స్విచ్ చేయుట |
| 32. Give into | - అలవాటు చేసికొను | 68. Switch off | - స్విచ్ ఆఫ్ చేయుట |
| 33. Climb up | - ఎక్కుట | 69. Speaks to | - ఒకరితో మాట్లాడుట |
| 34. Climb down | - దిగుట | 70. Speaks for | - ఒకరితరపున మాట్లాడుట |
| 35. Ran out of | - దివాలా తీయడం | | |
| 36. Ran away with | - తీసుకొని పారిపోవడం | | |

| | | | | | |
|---------------------|---|---|---------------------|---|---|
| 1. Blow out | - | కాదుట, అర్పివేయుట | 107. Rob | - | దోచుకొనుట |
| 2. Blow up | - | పైల్చివేయుట | 108. Steal | - | దొంగిలించుట |
| 3. Take up | - | స్వీకరించుట | 109. Keep up | - | కలసిపోవు |
| 4. Take out | - | బయటకు తీయుట | 110. Keep off | - | దూరంగా ఉంచుట |
| 5. Carry out | - | పూర్తి చేయుట | 111. Rise against | - | తిరుగుబాటు చేయు |
| 6. Carry on | - | కొనసాగించుట | 112. Rise for | - | మద్దతివ్వు |
| 7. Leave | - | వదలివెళ్ళుట | 113. Hang | - | ఉరితీయుట |
| 8. Leave for | - | బయలుదేరుట | 114. Hang on | - | చేచియుండుట |
| 9. Turn up | - | తరలివెళ్ళుట | 115. Jump off | - | క్రిందికి దుముకుట |
| 10. Turn down | - | తిరస్కరించుట | 116. Jump onto | - | మీదికి దుముకుట |
| 11. Set up | - | ప్రారంభించు | 117. Stands for | - | సమర్థించుట |
| 12. Set out | - | బయలుదేరు | 118. Stands against | - | వ్యతిరేకించుట |
| 13. Wave for | - | రమ్మని చేయి ఈపుట/కోరుట | 119. Draw close | - | దగ్గరకు వచ్చుట |
| 14. Wave away | - | వద్దని చేయి ఈపుట | 120. Draw away | - | దూరంగా వెళ్ళుట |
| 15. Get into | - | కూరుకొనిపోవు | 121. Cover | - | కప్పకొనుట |
| 16. Get over | - | అధిగమించు | 122. Cover up | - | కప్పిపుచ్చుట |
| 17. Go for | - | ఏదైన ఒకదాని కొరకు వెళ్ళుట | 123. Bring in | - | లోనికి తెచ్చుట |
| 18. Go off | - | ప్రేరిపోవుట | 124. Bring out | - | వెలుపరించుట |
| 19. Come along with | - | కలిసి వచ్చు | 125. Walk into | - | లోనికి వచ్చుట |
| 20. Come across | - | కలియుట | 126. Walk out | - | బయటకు వెళ్ళుట |
| 21. Break down | - | చెడిపోవుట | 127. Feed on | - | ఆధారం చేసుకొని జీవించు |
| 22. Break into | - | చొరబడు | 128. Fed up | - | విసిగిపోవు |
| 23. Blow over | - | సమసిపోవు | 129. Take out | - | బయటకు తీయు |
| 24. Blow down | - | కూలిపోవు | 130. Take away | - | బయటకు తీసికొనివెళ్ళు |
| 25. Went on | - | కొనసాగించెను | 131. Go back | - | వెనుకకు మరలు |
| 26. Went away | - | నిష్క్రమించుట | 132. go away | - | వదిలిపెట్టి వెళ్ళుట |
| 27. Look into | - | పరిశీలించుట | 133. Make of | - | దీనినైనా ఉపయోగించి ఒక దానిని తయారుచేయడం |
| 28. Look after | - | పోషణచేయు-రక్షించు | 134. Make off | - | తీసికొని వెళ్ళుట (దేనినైనా) |
| 29. Make up | - | నష్టాలను పూడ్చుకొను (అలంకరించు) context ను బట్టి అర్థం మారుతుంది. | 135. Closed | - | మూయడం |
| 100. Make off | - | పోరిపోవు | 136. Closed down | - | మూసేయడం |
| 101. Waiting at | - | ఏదైనా ఒకదాని వద్ద వేచి యుండుట | 137. Tore | - | చింపెను |
| 102. Waiting for | - | ఒకరి కొరకు వేచియుండుట | 138. Tore off | - | చింపివేసెను |
| 103. Knock at | - | తలుపు తట్టుట | 139. Break in | - | అడ్డుకొను |
| 104. Knock down | - | పడిపోవుట/పడత్రోయుట | 140. Break into | - | అందుకొను |
| 105. Do with | - | కోరుట | 141. Bank | - | బ్యాంకు |
| 106. Do away | - | కొరకపోవడం | 142. Bank on | - | ఆధారపడు |
| | | | 143. Wear out | - | ఆరిగిపోవు |
| | | | 144. Wear off | - | తగ్గిపోవుట |
| | | | 145. Come out | - | బయటకు వచ్చు |
| | | | 146. Come across | - | చూడడం |

C. ANTONYMS

| | | |
|---------------|---|--------------------|
| 1. bold | x | timid |
| దైర్యము గల | x | పెరికియైన |
| 2. ancient | x | modern |
| ప్రాచీన | x | ఆధునిక |
| 3. active | x | passive |
| సక్రియమైన | x | నిష్క్రియమైన |
| 4. appear | x | disappear (vanish) |
| ప్రత్యక్షమగు | x | అదృశ్యమగు |
| 5. full | x | empty |
| నిండిన | x | ఖాళీయైన |
| 6. big | x | small |
| పెద్ద | x | చిన్న |
| 7. absent | x | present |
| అనుపస్థితి | x | ఉపస్థితి |
| 8. rich | x | poor |
| ధనిక | x | పేద |
| 9. dry | x | wet |
| ఎండిన | x | తడిసిన |
| 10. friend | x | enemy, foe |
| స్నేహితుడు | x | శత్రువు |
| 11. above | x | below |
| ఎగువన | x | దిగువన |
| 12. hope | x | despair |
| ఆశ | x | నిరాశ |
| 13. hate | x | love |
| ద్వేషించు | x | ప్రేమించు |
| 14. difficult | x | easy |
| కష్టమైన | x | సులభమైన |
| 15. success | x | defeat/Failure |
| విజయము | x | విఫలము |
| 16. kind | x | cruel |
| దయగల | x | కృరమైన |
| 17. First | x | last |
| మొదటి | x | చివరి |
| 18. increase | x | decrease |
| పెరుగుట | x | తగ్గుట |
| 19. young | x | old |
| యువకుడైన | x | వృద్ధుడైన |

| | | |
|---------------|---|-----------------|
| 20. forget | x | remember |
| మరచిపోవు | x | జ్ఞాపకముంచుకొను |
| 21. wrong | x | right |
| తప్పు | x | సరియైన |
| 22. humble | x | proud |
| నిగర్హి | x | గర్వము గల |
| 23. offend | x | defend |
| వేరము మోపు | x | రక్షించుకొను |
| 24. oral | x | written |
| మౌఖిక | x | వ్రాతపూర్వకమైన |
| 25. gather | x | scatter |
| సమీకరించు | x | వెదజల్లు |
| 26. float | x | sink |
| తేలియాడు | x | మునిగిపోవు |
| 27. absent | x | present |
| దిగుమతి | x | ఎగుమతి |
| 28. long | x | short |
| పొడవైన | x | పొట్టిదైన |
| 29. external | x | internal |
| బాహ్య | x | అంతర్గత |
| 30. cold | x | hot |
| చల్లని | x | వేడియైన |
| 31. buy | x | sell |
| కొనుట | x | అమ్ముట |
| 32. begin | x | end |
| ప్రారంభం | x | ముగింపు |
| 33. natural | x | artificial |
| సహజమైన | x | కృత్రిమమైన |
| 34. ugly | x | beautiful |
| అందవికారము | x | అందమైన |
| 35. departure | x | arrival |
| బయలుదేరు | x | చేరుకొను |
| 36. debt | x | credit |
| అప్పు | x | సగదు |
| 37. question | x | answer |
| ప్రశ్న | x | సమాధానము |
| 38. quick | x | slow |
| వేగము | x | నెమ్మది |

| | | |
|---------------|---|--------------|
| 39. public | x | private |
| ప్రభుత్వ | x | ప్రైవేటు |
| 40. wild | x | tame |
| స్వేచ్ఛయైన | x | మచ్చికయైన |
| 41. wise | x | foolish |
| తెలివైన | x | తెలివిలేని |
| 42. heavy | x | light |
| బరువైన | x | తేలికైన |
| 43. deligent | x | idle |
| హుషారైన | x | సొమరియైన |
| 44. early | x | late |
| ముందుగా | x | అలస్యంగా |
| 45. Permanent | x | temporary |
| శాశ్వతమైన | x | తాత్కాలికమైన |
| 46. rise | x | fall |
| పెరుగుట | x | పడిపోవుట |
| 47. vice | x | virtue |
| పాపం | x | పుణ్యం |
| 48. polite | x | impolite |
| మర్యాదకరమైన | x | అమర్యాదకరమైన |
| 49. peace | x | war |
| శాంతి | x | యుద్ధం |
| 50. master | x | servant |
| యజమాని | x | సేవకుడు |
| 51. True | x | false |
| సత్యం | x | అసత్యం |
| 52. this | x | that |
| ఇది | x | అది |
| 53. whole | x | part |
| మొత్తం | x | భాగము |
| 54. win | x | lose |
| గెలుపొందు | x | పడిపోవు |
| 55. simple | x | complex |
| సామాన్యమైన | x | సంక్లేష |
| 56. Urban | x | rural |
| పట్టణ | x | గ్రామీణ |
| 57. vertical | x | horizontal |
| నిలువైన | x | అడ్డముగా గల |
| 58. fresh | x | stale |
| తాజా అయిన | x | క్రుళ్ళిన |

| | | |
|---------------|---|-----------------|
| 59. attract | x | repel |
| ఆకర్షించు | x | వికర్షించు |
| 60. careless | x | careful |
| నిర్లక్ష్యంగా | x | జాగ్రత్తతో |
| 61. optional | x | compulsory |
| ఇచ్చికంగా | x | తప్పనిసరిగా |
| 62. gain | x | loss |
| ప్రయోజనం | x | నష్టం |
| 63. sudden | x | gradual |
| అకస్మాత్తుగా | x | క్రమానుగతంగా |
| 64. freedom | x | slavery |
| స్వేచ్ఛ | x | బానిసత్వం |
| 65. bright | x | dull |
| ప్రకాశవంతమైన | x | ప్రకాశము లేని |
| 66. far | x | near |
| దూరం | x | దగ్గర |
| 67. friendly | x | hostile |
| అనుకూలమైన | x | ప్రతికూలమైన |
| 68. clever | x | stupid |
| తెలివైన | x | తెలివిలేని |
| 69. compare | x | contrast |
| పోల్చుట | x | బేధములు తెలుపుట |
| 70. alive | x | dead |
| జీవించియున్న | x | చనిపోయిన |
| 71. accept | x | reject |
| అనుమతించు | x | నిరాకరించు |
| 72. allow | x | forbid |
| అంగీకరించు | x | నిషేధించు |
| 73. appoint | x | dismiss |
| నియుక్తిచేయు | x | తొలగించు |
| 74. duplicate | x | original |
| అవాస్తవమైన | x | వాస్తవమైన |
| 75. tall | x | short |
| పొడవైన | x | పొట్టిదైన |
| 76. strong | x | weak |
| బలమైన | x | బలహీనమైన |
| 77. safe | x | dangerous |
| సురక్షితమైన | x | ప్రమాదకరమైన |
| 78. permit | x | prohibit |
| అనుమతించు | x | నిషేధించు |

| | | |
|--------------------|---|--------------------|
| 79. poverty | x | prosperity |
| పేదరికం | x | సమృద్ధిగాగల |
| 80. maximum | x | minimum |
| అతి ఎక్కువ, గరిష్ట | x | అతి తక్కువ, కనిష్ట |
| 81. lead | x | follow |
| నడిపించు | x | అనుకరించు |
| 82. lament | x | rejoice |
| విచారముతో | x | ఆనందముతో |
| 83. host | x | guest |
| అతిధ్యమిచ్చువాడు | x | అతిథి |
| 84. hide | x | show |
| దాచు | x | చూపు |
| 85. glad | x | sad |
| ఆనందం | x | విచారం |
| 86. negative | x | positive |
| నకారాత్మక | x | సకారాత్మక |
| 87. polite | x | rude |
| మర్యాదగల | x | దురుసుగా |
| 88. reward | x | punish |
| బహుమతిగా | x | శిక్షించు |
| 89. sure | x | doubtful |
| సమ్మతంగా | x | అనుమానంగల |
| 90. many | x | a few |
| ఎన్నో | x | కొన్ని |
| 91. junior | x | senior |
| (చిన్నదైన) | x | (పెద్దదైన) |
| 92. able | x | unable |
| సమర్థతగల | x | సమర్థతలేని |
| 93. aware | x | unaware |
| తెలిసియున్న | x | తెలియని |
| 94. certain | x | uncertain |
| ఖచ్చితమైన | x | ఖచ్చితముగాని |
| 95. conscious | x | unconscious |
| స్పృహతోనున్న | x | స్పృహలేని |
| 96. fit | x | unfit |
| తగిన | x | తగినట్లులేని |
| 97. fold | x | unfold |
| మడతపెట్టుట | x | మడతవిప్పట |
| 98. fortunate | x | unfortunate |
| అదృష్టవంతులైన | x | దురదృష్టవంతులైన |

| | | |
|-----------------|---|------------------|
| 99. happy | x | unhappy |
| సంతోషము | x | దుఃఖము |
| 100. important | x | unimportant |
| ప్రాధాన్యత గల | x | ప్రాధాన్యతలేని |
| 101. just | x | unjust |
| న్యాయపరమైన | x | అన్యాయమైన |
| 102. lucky | x | unlucky |
| అదృష్టము | x | దురదృష్టము |
| 103. natural | x | unnatural |
| సహజమైన | x | అసహజమైన |
| 104. real | x | unreal |
| వాస్తవమైన | x | అవాస్తవమైన |
| 105. usual | x | unusual |
| సాధారణమైన | x | అసాధారణ |
| 106. expected | x | unexpected |
| ఊహించిన | x | ఊహించని |
| 107. official | x | unofficial |
| అధికారమైన | x | అసాధికారమైన |
| 108. utterable | x | unutterable |
| ఉచ్చరించదగిన | x | ఉచ్చరించదగని |
| 109. wanted | x | unwanted |
| కోరుకొన్న | x | కోరని (అనవసరమైన) |
| 110. well | x | unwell |
| ఆరోగ్యకరమైన | x | అనారోగ్యకరమైన |
| 111. worthy | x | unworthy |
| విలువైన | x | విలువలేని |
| 112. trained | x | untrained |
| శిక్షణపొందిన | x | శిక్షణలేని |
| 113. scientific | x | unscientific |
| శాస్త్రీయ | x | అశాస్త్రీయ |
| 114. ability | x | disability |
| సమర్థత | x | అసమర్థత |
| 115. advantage | x | disadvantage |
| ప్రయోజనము | x | నష్టము |
| 116. agree | x | disagree |
| సమ్మతించు | x | నిరాకరించు |
| 117. connect | x | disconnect |
| అనుసంధానించు | x | త్రెంచు |
| 118. honest | x | dishonest |
| నిజాయితీ | x | నిజాయితీలేని |

| | | |
|-----------------|---|-------------------|
| 119. like | x | dislike |
| ఇష్టం | x | అయుష్టం |
| 120. loyal | x | disloyal |
| విధేయత గల | x | విధేయత లేని |
| 121. order | x | disorder |
| క్రమమైన | x | క్రమములేని |
| 122. satisfy | x | dissatisfy |
| సంతృప్తిపరచు | x | అసంతృప్తిపరచు |
| 123. integrate | x | disintegrate |
| సమీకృతమైన | x | సమీకృతం కాని |
| 124. accurate | x | inaccurate |
| ఖచ్చితమైన | x | ఖచ్చితం కాని |
| 125. capable | x | incapable |
| సామర్థ్యము గల | x | సామర్థ్యం లేని |
| 126. complete | x | incomplete |
| సంపూర్ణ | x | అసంపూర్ణ |
| 127. correct | x | incorrect |
| సరియైన | x | సరియైనది కాని |
| 128. curable | x | incurable |
| నివారించదగిన | x | నివారించలేని |
| 129. dependent | x | independent |
| ఆధారపడిన | x | స్వతంత్రమైన |
| 130. discipline | x | indiscipline |
| క్రమశిక్షణ గల | x | క్రమశిక్షణ లేని |
| 131. efficient | x | inefficient |
| సమర్థత గల | x | సమర్థతలేని |
| 132. experience | x | inexperience |
| అనుభవం గల | x | అనుభవలేమి |
| 133. sufficient | x | insufficient |
| పరిపడునంతగా | x | పరిపడునంతలేని |
| 134. valid | x | invalid |
| చెల్లుబాటుగు | x | చెల్లుబాటుకాని |
| 135. visible | x | invisible |
| కనిపించు | x | కనిపించని |
| 136. material | x | immaterial |
| భౌతికసంబంధమైన | x | భౌతిక సంబంధం కాని |
| 137. mature | x | immature |
| పరిపక్వత గల | x | అపరిపక్వత గల |
| 138. patient | x | impatient |
| సహనం గల | x | సహనంలేని |

| | | |
|------------------|---|-------------------|
| 139. perfect | x | imperfect |
| పరిపూర్ణమైన | x | పరిపూర్ణతలేని |
| 140. pious | x | impious |
| భక్తితో కూడిన | x | భక్తిలేని |
| 141. possible | x | impossible |
| సాధ్యమైన | x | అసాధ్యమైన |
| 142. proper | x | improper |
| తగినట్లుగా | x | తగినట్లు లేని |
| 143. pure | x | impure |
| శుద్ధమైన | x | శుద్ధిలేని |
| 144. practicable | x | impracticable |
| ఆచరణాత్మక | x | ఆచరణాత్మకం కాని |
| 145. legal | x | illegal |
| న్యాయపరమైన | x | న్యాయపరముకాని |
| 146. legible | x | illegible |
| అర్థమగురీతి | x | అర్థమగునట్లు లేని |
| 147. literate | x | illiterate |
| అక్షరాస్యులైన | x | నిరక్షరాస్యులైన |
| 148. logical | x | illogical |
| తార్కికమైన | x | తార్కికం కాని |
| 149. rational | x | irrational |
| హేతుబద్ధమైన | x | హేతుబద్ధము కాని |
| 150. regular | x | irregular |
| క్రమమైన | x | క్రమరహిత |
| 151. relevant | x | irrelevant |
| సంబంధిత | x | అసంబంధమైన |
| 152. responsible | x | irresponsible |
| బాధ్యతగల | x | బాధ్యతలేని |
| 153. co-operate | x | noncooperate |
| సహకారముగల | x | సహకారములేని |
| 154. local | x | non local |
| స్థానికమైన | x | స్థానికముకాని |
| 155. sense | x | nonsense |
| అర్థవంతమైన | x | ఆర్థరహిత |
| 156. vegetarian | x | nonvegetarian |
| శాకాహారి | x | మాంసాహారి |
| 157. violent | x | nonviolent |
| హింసాత్మక | x | అహింసాత్మక |
| 158. fortune | x | misfortune |
| అదృష్టము | x | దురదృష్టము |

| | | |
|-----------------|---|--------------------|
| 159. understand | x | misunderstand |
| అర్థం చేసుకొను | x | అపార్థం చేసుకొను |
| 160. use | x | misuse |
| ఉపయోగించు | x | దురుపయోగము |
| 161. manage | x | mismanage |
| నిర్వహించు | x | తప్పుదారిపట్టించడం |
| 162. behaviour | x | misbehaviour |
| సత్ప్రవర్తన | x | దుష్ప్రవర్తన |
| 163. prosperity | x | adversity |
| వృద్ధికాలం | x | కష్టకాలం |
| 164. lazy | x | industrious |
| సోమరి | x | కష్టపడి పనిచేయుగల |
| 165. easy | x | difficult |
| సులభమైన | x | కష్టతరమైన |
| 166. beginning | x | ending |
| ప్రారంభం | x | ముగింపు |
| 167. encourage | x | discourage |
| ప్రోత్సహించు | x | నిరుత్సాహపరచు |
| 168. frequently | x | rarely |
| తరచుగా | x | అరుదుగా |
| 169. comfort | x | discomfort |
| సౌఖ్యం | x | అసౌఖ్యం |
| 170. ascending | x | descending |
| ఆరోహణ | x | అవరోహణ |
| 171. social | x | antisocial |
| సామాజిక | x | సమాజవ్యతిరేక |
| 172. feminine | x | masculine |
| స్త్రీలింగ | x | పులింగ |
| 173. soft | x | hard |
| మృదువైన | x | గట్టిదైన |
| 174. outward | x | inward |
| బయటకు | x | లోనికి |
| 175. bless | x | curse |
| దీపించు | x | శపించు |
| 176. set | x | rise |
| అస్తమించు | x | ఉదయించు |
| 177. adverse | x | favourable |
| వ్యతిరేకమైన | x | అనుకూలమైన |
| 178. always | x | never |
| ఎల్లప్పుడూ | x | ఎప్పుడూకాని |

| | | |
|-----------------|---|-----------------|
| 179. helpful | x | unhelpful |
| సహాయపడు | x | సహాయపడని |
| 180. partially | x | completely |
| పాక్షికంగా | x | పూర్తిగా |
| 181. push | x | pull |
| నెట్టుట | x | లాగుట |
| 182. briskly | x | slowly |
| వేగంగా | x | నెమ్మదిగా |
| 183. loud | x | feeble |
| బిగ్గరగా | x | మెల్లగా |
| 184. vain | x | modest |
| గర్వము గల | x | గర్వంలేని |
| 185. probably | x | certainly |
| బహుశ | x | ఖచ్చితంగా |
| 186. particular | x | general |
| ప్రత్యేకమైన | x | సాధారణ |
| 187. ignorant | x | learned |
| అమాయక | x | తెలిసిన |
| 188. sensitive | x | insensitive |
| శీఘ్రగ్రాహి | x | శీఘ్రగ్రాహికాని |
| 189. suspect | x | believe |
| అనుమానించు | x | నమ్ము |
| 190. under | x | above |
| క్రింద | x | మీద |
| 191. sure | x | doubtful |
| ఖచ్చితమైన | x | అనుమానము గల |
| 192. persuade | x | dissuade |
| ఒప్పించు | x | ఒప్పించలేని |
| 193. distant | x | nearer |
| సుదూరమైన | x | దగ్గరైన |
| 194. destroy | x | save |
| నాశనము చేయు | x | కాపాడు |
| 195. dark | x | bright |
| చీకటి | x | ప్రకాశం |
| 196. major | x | minor |
| పెద్ద | x | చిన్న |
| 197. propose | x | dispose |
| ప్రతిపాదించు | x | ఉపసంహరించు |
| 198. polite | x | rude |
| మర్యాద | x | దురుసైన |

| | | |
|-----------------|---|--------------------|
| 199. relieve | x | anxious |
| ఉపశమనం పొందు | x | అతురుత గల |
| 200. raise | x | lower |
| పెంచు | x | తగ్గించు |
| 201. occupy | x | vacate |
| అక్రమించు | x | ఖాళీచేయు |
| 202. confess | x | deny |
| తప్పు ఒప్పుకొను | x | ఖండించు |
| 203. evil | x | good |
| దెడు | x | మంచి |
| 204. divide | x | combine |
| విడగొట్టు | x | కలుపు |
| 205. found | x | lose |
| పొందుట | x | పోగొట్టుకొనుట |
| 206. thick | x | thin |
| మందమైన | x | పన్నవైన |
| 207. hold | x | drop |
| పట్టుకొను | x | పడవేయు |
| 208. gentle | x | harsh |
| సాదుస్వభావం | x | దురుసుస్వభావం |
| 209. strange | x | familiar |
| క్రోత్తయైన | x | తెలిసిన |
| 210. nervous | x | calm |
| కలవరపడిన | x | ప్రశాంతమైన |
| 211. entry | x | exit |
| ప్రవేశము | x | నిష్క్రమణ |
| 212. guide | x | misguide |
| మార్గము చూపు | x | దారిమళ్ళించు |
| 213. defeat | x | victory |
| ఓటమి | x | విజయం |
| 214. discount | x | surcharge |
| తగ్గింపు | x | అదనముగా వేయు |
| 215. conceal | x | reveal |
| దాచుట | x | బహిష్కరించు |
| 216. barren | x | fertile |
| నిస్సారమైన | x | సారవంతమైన |
| 217. fault | x | perfect |
| తప్పుగల | x | తప్పులేని విధముగా |
| 218. inferior | x | superior |
| అత్యున్నత | x | గొప్పలు చెప్పుకొనే |

| | | |
|------------------|---|----------------|
| 219. industrious | x | lazy |
| కృషిచేయు | x | సోమరియైన |
| 220. laugh | x | weep |
| నవ్వుట | x | ఏడ్చుట |
| 221. lose | x | gain |
| కోల్పోవుట | x | పొందుట |
| 222. theory | x | practical |
| విషయపరమైన | x | ప్రయోగాత్మక |
| 223. walk | x | run |
| నడవడం | x | పరుగెత్తడం |
| 224. storm | x | calm |
| తుపాను | x | ప్రశాంతత |
| 225. up | x | down |
| పైకి | x | క్రిందకు |
| 226. white | x | black |
| తెలుపు | x | నలుపు |
| 227. transparent | x | opaque |
| పారదర్శకమగు | x | అపారదర్శకమైన |
| 228. sea | x | land |
| జలభాగం | x | భూభాగం |
| 229. sharp | x | blunt |
| పదునైన | x | పదునులేని |
| 230. record | x | erase |
| నమోదుచేయు | x | తొలగించు |
| 231. odd | x | even |
| తేసి | x | సరి |
| 232. haste | x | delay |
| తొందర | x | ఆలస్యము |
| 233. miser | x | extravagant |
| లోభి | x | దుబారాచేయువాడు |
| 234. vanish | x | appear |
| అదృశ్యమగు | x | కనిపించు |
| 235. strengthen | x | weaken |
| బలపరుచు | x | నీరసపడు |
| 236. tidy | x | untidy |
| శుభ్రమయిన | x | అశుభ్రమయిన |
| 237. sane | x | insane |
| తెలివైన | x | తెలివలేని |
| 238. secure | x | insecure |
| రక్షణకల | x | రక్షణలేని |

| | | |
|-------------------|---|----------------------|
| 239. singular | x | plural |
| ఏకత్వము | x | బహుత్వము |
| 240. unsteady | x | steady |
| అనిశ్చలమయిన | x | నిశ్చలమయిన |
| 241. perennial | x | temporary |
| శాశ్వతంగా | x | ఆశాశ్వతం |
| 242. review | x | fore cast |
| పునఃపరిశీలించు | x | ముందు ఊహించు |
| 243. prospect | x | retraspect |
| ముందుచూపు | x | వెనుకచూపు |
| 244. punishment | x | pardon |
| శిక్ష | x | క్షమాపణ |
| 245. relax | x | tighten |
| వదిలిపెట్టు | x | దిగపెట్టు |
| 246. religious | x | irreligious |
| మతసంబంధమైన | x | మతసంబంధం కాని |
| 247. reserved | x | unreserved |
| ప్రత్యేకించబడిన | x | ప్రత్యేకించని |
| 248. prolong | x | shorten |
| పొడిగించుట | x | తగ్గించు |
| 249. outlet | x | inlet |
| బయటకు పోవు మార్గం | x | లోపలికి వచ్చు మార్గం |
| 250. immortal | x | mortal |
| అమరత్వమైన | x | మర్త్యమైన |
| 251. pollute | x | purify |
| అవచిత్రం చేయు | x | పవిత్రం చేయు |
| 252. popular | x | unpopular |
| పేరు గాంచిన | x | పేరులేని |
| 253. keen | x | dull |
| పదునైన | x | మొద్దుబారిన |
| 254. fix | x | unfix |
| కుదుర్చు | x | వేరుపరచు |
| 255. import | x | export |
| దిగుమతి | x | ఎగుమతి |
| 256. incoherent | x | coherent |
| అసంబంధమైన | x | సంబంధంగల |
| 257. dissolve | x | solidify |
| కరిగించుట | x | గట్టి కట్టించుట |
| 258. forward | x | backward |
| ముందుకు వచ్చు | x | వెనుకకు పోవుట |

| | | |
|-------------------|---|----------------|
| 259. future | x | past |
| భవిష్యత్తు | x | భూతకాలం |
| 260. fall | x | rise |
| వదిలిపోవు | x | పైకి లేచు |
| 261. familiar | x | unfamiliar |
| పరిచయం కల | x | పరిచయం లేని |
| 262. direct | x | indirect |
| ప్రత్యక్షము | x | పరోక్షము |
| 263. disapprove | x | approve |
| కాదనుట | x | అవుననుట |
| 264. disciple | x | master |
| శిష్యుడు | x | గురువు |
| 265. emancipate | x | enslave |
| స్వేచ్ఛకల్గించు | x | బానిసత్వం చేయు |
| 266. enemy | x | friend |
| శత్రువు | x | స్నేహితుడు |
| 267. equal | x | unequal |
| సమానమైన | x | అసమానమైన |
| 268. exact | x | inexact |
| ఖచ్చితమైన | x | ఖచ్చితం కాని |
| 269. exclusive | x | inclusive |
| కలుపకుండా | x | కలుపుకొని |
| 270. danger | x | safety |
| అపాయం | x | రక్షణ |
| 271. open | x | hidden |
| పైకి తెలిసిన | x | దాగియున్న |
| 272. decay | x | growth |
| క్షీణత | x | పెరుగుదల |
| 273. consequence | x | antecedence |
| ఫలితం | x | ముందు జరిగినది |
| 274. construction | x | destruction |
| నిర్మాణం | x | వినాశనం |

PRACTICE TEST

1. **admire** (మెచ్చుకొను)

| | | | |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|---------|
| a. insult | b. praise | c. please | d. help |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|---------|
2. **ancient** (ప్రాచీన)

| | | | |
|--------------|-----------|------------|------------|
| a. efficient | b. modern | c. attract | d. violent |
|--------------|-----------|------------|------------|
3. **native** (స్థానిక)

| | | | |
|------------|----------|----------|-------------|
| a. natural | b. grief | c. alien | d. unnative |
|------------|----------|----------|-------------|
4. **arrive** (చేరుకొను)

| | | | |
|------------|-----------|---------------|---------|
| a. attract | b. depart | c. congregate | d. move |
|------------|-----------|---------------|---------|
5. **awake** (మేల్కొలుపు)

| | | | |
|--------|-----------|----------|-----------|
| a. get | b. asleep | c. bless | d. drowsy |
|--------|-----------|----------|-----------|
6. **war** (యుద్ధము)

| | | | |
|------------|---------|----------|----------|
| a. welfare | b. pace | c. peace | d. piece |
|------------|---------|----------|----------|
7. **bent** (వంగిన)

| | | | |
|-------------|----------|----------|-----------|
| a. straight | b. break | c. brake | d. strong |
|-------------|----------|----------|-----------|
8. **cruel** (కృరమైన)

| | | | |
|-------------|------------|---------|----------|
| a. criminal | b. genuine | c. kind | d. hated |
|-------------|------------|---------|----------|
9. **Confuse** (తీకమకపడు)

| | | | |
|------------|------------|-----------|-----------|
| a. content | b. clarify | c. credit | d. coarse |
|------------|------------|-----------|-----------|
10. **Defence** (రక్షణచేసికొను)

| | | | |
|-------------|-------------|------------|-------------|
| a. decrease | b. increase | c. offence | d. suspense |
|-------------|-------------|------------|-------------|
11. **Greedy** (దురాశగల)

| | | | |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|----------|
| a. graceful | b. generous | c. softness | d. lofty |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|----------|
12. **Hesitate** (సంకోచించు)

| | | | |
|----------|----------|-----------|--------------|
| a. hasty | b. quick | c. honest | d. determine |
|----------|----------|-----------|--------------|
13. **Reveal** (ఋహితం చేయు)

| | | | |
|------------|---------|----------|---------|
| a. realise | b. hide | c. anger | d. jeal |
|------------|---------|----------|---------|
14. **Host** (అతిథ్యమిచ్చువాడు)

| | | | |
|----------|-----------|----------|-----------|
| a. raise | b. unfurl | c. guest | d. unhost |
|----------|-----------|----------|-----------|
15. **Illicit** (అశ్రమ)

| | | | |
|-------------|-----------|----------|-------------|
| a. unlawful | b. lawful | c. shame | d. literate |
|-------------|-----------|----------|-------------|
16. **Rude** (దురుసు)

| | | | |
|-----------|-------------|---------|------------|
| a. polite | b. impolite | c. dare | d. popular |
|-----------|-------------|---------|------------|
17. **Punish** (శిక్షించు)

| | | | |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|----------|
| a. pleasure | b. humble | c. response | d. award |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|----------|
18. **Prior** (ముందు)

| | | | |
|----------------|----------|------------|------------|
| a. prestigious | b. later | c. greater | d. support |
|----------------|----------|------------|------------|

19. Sober (పరిశ్రమైన)

a. drunk

b. bankrupt

c. surrender

d. bad

20. Support (సహకరించు)

a. help

b. conquer

c. oppose

d. defeat

21. Tenant (అద్దెదారు)

a. landlord

b. businessman

c. bearer

d. seller

22. vice (పాపం)

a. wise

b. broad

c. virtue

d. narrow

23. woeful (బాధాకరమైన)

a. cheerful

b. unpleasant

c. weak

d. amuse

24. worse (చెడు)

a. bad

b. better

c. peace

d. worry

25. whisper (వెమ్మడిగా చెప్పు)

a. low

b. roar

c. partly

d. shorten

Answers :

1. a 2. b 3. c 4. b 5. b 6. c 7. a 8. c 9. b 10. c 11. b 12. d 13. b 14. c 15. b 16. a
17. d 18. b 19. a 20. c 21. a 22. c 23. a 24. b 25. b

D. SYNONYMS

| | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------|
| Bear, carry, (produce) | మోయుట |
| Shining, bright | ప్రకాశించు |
| Delicate, tender | సున్నితమైన |
| Lustrous, bright | ప్రకాశమైన |
| Tokens, signs, symbols | చిహ్నాలు |
| Maiden, unmarried girl | కన్య |
| Aglow, shine | ప్రకాశించు |
| Desire, wish | కోరిక |
| Luminous, bright | ప్రకాశించు |
| Flecked, spotted | చుక్కలు గల |
| Midway, halfway | సగం జీవితం |
| Worship, pray | పూజించు |
| Fruitful, successful | ఫలవంతమగు |
| Cherish, enjoy | అనుభూతిపొందు |
| Pharaoh, ruler of Egypt | ఈజిప్టు చక్రవర్తి |
| Treasures, wealth | సంపద |
| Royal, belongs to the king | రాచరికపు |
| Ancient, olden times | ప్రాచీన |
| Discover, find out | కనుగొను |
| Terrible, fearful | భయంకరమైన |
| Spirit, soul (courage) | అత్మ |
| Pneumonia, illness of lungs | ఊపిరితిత్తుల వ్యాధి |
| Howl, big cry of pain | బాధతో అడుచుట |
| Depression, a sunken place | సొట్ట |
| Vase, flower container | పూలపాత్ర |
| Packed, full of | నిండియున్న |
| Splendid, marvellous | అద్భుతమైన |
| Magnificent, great | గొప్ప |
| Uncrushable, unable to crush | అణచలేని |
| Promising, developing | వృద్ధి చెందుచున్న |
| Effort, trail | ప్రయత్నం |
| Miracle, a wonderful event | అద్భుతం |
| Response, answer | ప్రతిస్పందన |
| Cradles, a swing | ఊయల |
| A lone, lonely | ఒంటరిగా |
| Enchantment, feeling of delight | ఆనందముతో |

| | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------|
| Battered, damaged | చిరిగిన |
| Immatured, not fully developed | అపరిపక్వమైన |
| Certainly, surely | ఖచ్చితత్వం |
| Pedigree, high quality | మేలుజాతికి చెందిన |
| Mongrel, mixed breed | సంకరజాతికి చెందిన |
| Prefer, choose | ప్రాధాన్యత నిచ్చు |
| Allow, permit | అనుమతించు |
| Gazing, looking | తడేక దృష్టితో చూచు |
| Grain, crop | ధాన్యం |
| Pause, stop | ఆగుట |
| Visible, seen | కనిపించునట్లు |
| Mound, heap of soil | మట్టికుప్ప |
| Put away, set aside | ప్రక్కనబెట్టు |
| Civility, courtesy | మర్యాద |
| Haste, hurry | తొందర |
| Pass, move | కదులుట |
| Cornice, top part of a grave | పైభాగం |
| Suprise, guess | ఊహించు |
| Assemble, gather | గుమిగూడు |
| Murmur, talk slowly | నెమ్మదిగా మాట్లాడు |
| Limp, without stiffness | గట్టితనం లేని |
| To strain, to discolour | పచ్చలు కల్గించు |
| Relish, enjoy | ఆనందించు |
| Conversation, talk | సంభాషణ |
| Receive, get | స్వీకరించు |
| honour, respect | గౌరవం |
| Pleasantest, enjoyable | అహ్లాదకరమైన |
| Strange, unknown | తెలియని |
| Actually, really | వాస్తవంగా |
| Slip, move smoothly | జారుట |
| Recently, lately | ఇటీవల |
| Set out start | బయలుదేరు |
| Contact, meet | కలుసుకొనుట |
| Important, of great value | ప్రాధాన్యత గల |
| Harm (or) damage/hurt | హాని |
| Spread, extend | వ్యాపించు |
| Float, move on water | తేలియాడు |
| Drowsy, sleepy | మగతగా |

Lullaby, soft song makes a baby

Sleep

Tracks, marks

Develop, grow

Chatter, talk

Smudges, marks left by tears

Battle, a fight

Tucked, covered comfortably

Whine, make a sad sound

Stalk, hunt

Horrid, unkind

Pollute, make impure

Let, allow

Crumbs, pieces of food

Timid, fearful

Soar, fly

Fluttering, moving wings

Mere, only

Rapidly, quickly

Tribe, a group

Nod, move head accepting

Whisper, talk silently

Isles, islands

Motion, movement

Glide, move smoothly

Handsome, pretty

Constantly, continuously

Vain, proud

Upright, straight

Chamber, room

Annoy, trouble

Appropriate, suitable

Briskly, quickly

Flog, punish by beating

Hide, conceal

Horror, fear

Flee, run away

Fierce, violent

జోలపాట

గుర్తులు

వృద్ధిచెందు

మాట్లాడు

మరకలు

యుద్ధం

ముడుచుకొని యున్న

మూల్గుట

వేటాడు

భయంకరమైన

కలుషితం చేయు

అనుమతించు

తినగా మిగిలిన పదార్థాలు

పిరికిఅయిన

ఎగరడం

రెక్కలు కొట్టుకొనుట

మాత్రమే

వేగంగా

ఒక జాతి తెగ

ఒప్పుకొను

నెమ్మదిగా మాట్లాడు

దీవులు

కదలిక

నెమ్మదిగా కదులు

అందమైన

నిరంతరం

గర్వం

నిటారుగా

గది

కోపకారణమగు

తగిన

వేగంగా

కొట్టడం

దాచుట

భయం

పారిపోవు

భయంకరమైన

| | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------|
| Inform, tell | తెలియజేయు |
| Range, uncontrolled anger | అణచుకోలేని కోపం |
| Tremble, shake | వణకుట |
| Shriek, a loud cry | శేక |
| Stay, remain | నిలిచియున్న |
| Forgive, pardon | క్షమించు |
| Companion, friend | స్నేహితుడు |
| Charm, please(v) | ఆనందపర్చు |
| Disapper, vanish | అదృశ్యమగు |
| Boast, say proudly | బడాయిలు చెప్పు |
| Lovely, fine | ఆందమైన |
| Unlike, differ | విభేదించు |
| Glow, shine | ప్రకాశించు |
| Wood, forest | చిన్న అటవీ ప్రాంతం |
| Similar, alike | సారూప్యత గల |
| Comfort, give happiness | ఆనందాన్నిచ్చు |
| Endure, last long | చిరకాలము ఉండు |
| Illiterates, not literated | నిరక్షరాస్యులు |
| Peasant, farmer | రైతుకూలీ |
| Syllable, vowel part of a word | ఒక ఆచ్చుభాగం |
| Mend, set right | సరిచేయు |
| Rustle, paper rubbing sound | కాగితం కదిలిన శబ్దం |
| Pale, bloodless | పాలిపోవు |
| Exchange, give and take | మార్పుకొను |
| Unfold, open | తెరచుట |
| Fed up with, vexed | విసుగుచెందిన |
| Clipped, fixed | కత్తిరించిన |
| Patiently, calmy | నహనముతో |
| Stare, look steadily | తదేక దీక్షతో చూచు |
| Disgusting, unpleasant | అనవ్యక్తరమైన |
| Closet, very near | దగ్గరి |
| Burst into tears, cried | ఏడ్చుట |
| Treasured, valuable | విలువైన |
| Space, place | స్థలం |
| Bear, produce | దిగుబడినిచ్చు |
| Absorb, take in | గ్రహించు |
| Release, let out | విడుదలచేయు |
| Chop, cut | నరికిచేయు |

| | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------|
| Hug, embrace | కొగిలించుకొను |
| Provide, supply | కల్పించు |
| Felled, cut | పడవేయు |
| Prevent, stop | నివారించు |
| Soaked, wet | నానబెట్టిన |
| True, real | వాస్తవమైన |
| Lean, very thin | సన్నని |
| Frozen, not moving | స్థిరపడి పోయిన |
| Beforehand, in advance | చాలా ముందుగా |
| Crumpled, rolled | చుట్టబడిన |
| Awful, terrible | భయంకరమైన |
| Reveal, disclose | తెలియజెప్పు |
| Fetch, go and bring | వెళ్ళి తీసికొని వచ్చుట |
| Devil, ghost | దయ్యం |
| Consult, to talk to | సంప్రదించు |
| Interruption, causing breaks | అంతరాయం |
| Rival, opponent | ప్రత్యర్థి |
| Intend, wish | ఉద్దేశపూర్వకంగా |
| Conclude, come to close | ముగించు |
| to deposit, to keep in bank | నిల్వచేయు |
| Astonish, surprise | ఆశ్చర్యపొపు |
| Swung, moved | కదులుట |
| Influenced, impressed | ప్రభావితం చేయు |
| Overseas, abroad | సముద్రాలు దాటి |
| Plain, not pretty | చాలా అందంగా లేని |
| Slender, delicate | సున్నితము |
| Untidy, not clear | అపరిశుభ్రమైన |
| Hesitate, not taking a decision | సంకోచించు |
| Precious, valuable | విలువైన |
| Graceful, thankful | కృతజ్ఞతతో |
| Threshold, entrance | గడప |
| Approach, go near to | సమీపించు |
| Advice, good suggestion | సలహా |
| Evidence, proof | సాక్ష్యము |
| Creatures, small animals | ప్రాణులు |
| Sick, ill, not well | రోగి |
| Return, go back/come back | తిరిగి వచ్చు |

| | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| Visit, go and see | దర్శించుట |
| Happy, be pleased with | సంతోషం |
| Leap, jump | దూకుట |
| Hop, jump with both legs | రెండుకాళ్ళతో గేంతుట |
| Remarkable, unusual | అసాధారణ |
| Change, to bring difference | మార్పు |
| Breakout, start suddenly | అకస్మాత్తుగా ప్రారంభమగు |
| Brave, bold | దైర్ఘ్యం గల |
| Actually, in fact | వాస్తవంగా |
| Besides, other than | దీనితో బాటు ఇది కూడా |
| Extremcly, very | చాలా |
| Naughty, not well behaved | చిలిపి |
| alive, not dead | సజీవ |
| Wonderful, unusually good | అద్భుతమైన |
| Person, a human being | వ్యక్తి |
| Ability, capacity | సమర్థత |
| Admire, praise | మెచ్చుకొను |
| Destroy, ruin | నాశనం చేయు |
| Enormous, huge | అధికమైన |
| Error, mistake | తప్పు |
| Show, expose | ప్రదర్శించు |
| Genuine, real | వాస్తవమైన |
| Join, unite | కలుపుట |
| Excuse, forgive | క్షమించడం |
| Liberty, freedom | స్వేచ్ఛ |
| Tender, delicate | సున్నితమైన |
| Symbol, sign | గుర్తు చిహ్నం |
| Foe, enemy | శత్రువు |
| Sturdy, strong | బలిష్ఠమైన |
| Solitude, loneliness | ఒంటరి తనం |
| Pencery, poverty | పేదరికం |
| Smart, bright | చురుకైన |
| Disclose, make known | తెలియజేయు |
| Absolute, complete | నిరపేక్ష |
| Numerous, many | అధికసంఖ్యాక |
| Furious, violent | భయంకరమైన |
| Contrary, oppose to | విరుద్ధంగా |
| Vying, competing | పోటీపడు |

| | |
|-------------------------|-------------------|
| Oath, promise | ప్రమాణం |
| Acquire, gain | పొందుట |
| Achieve, accomplish | సాధించుట |
| Accurate, exact | సరియైన, ఖచ్చితమైన |
| Amaze, surprise | ఆశ్చర్యం |
| Behaviour, manners | ప్రవర్తన |
| Awkward, clumsy | సహ్యమైన |
| Cease, stop | ఆపుట |
| Casual, normal | సాధారణ |
| Core, centre | మూలమైన |
| Descend, fall | సంక్రమించు |
| Deed, act | పని |
| Teach, instruct | శిక్షణనిచ్చు |
| Rescue, save | కాపాడు |
| Love, affection | ప్రేమ |
| Lonely, solitary | ఒంటరి |
| Idle, lazy | సోమరియైన |
| Frank, Plain | నిర్భయంగా |
| Excuse, forgive | క్షమించు |
| Die, expire | చనిపోవు |
| Clever, intelligent | తెలివైన |
| Conduct, manage | నిర్వహించు |
| Anger, rage | కోపం |
| Prisoner, Captive | భైదీ |
| Sparkles, gleam | ప్రకాశించు |
| Rare, unusual | అరుదైన |
| Auspicious, favourable | అనుకూలమైన |
| Ghostly, horrible | భయానకమైన |
| Bankrupt, insolvent | దివాలాతీసిన |
| Blaze, bright fire | మండించు |
| Barbarious, uncivilised | అనాగరికమైన |
| Consent, approve | సమ్మతి |
| Compassion, sympathy | సానుభూతి |
| Adorn, beautify | అలంకరించు |
| Benefit, advantage | ప్రయోజనం |
| Minute, very small | సూక్ష్మమైన |
| Lavish, excess | అధికమైన |

PRACTICE TEST

- | | | | | |
|----------------------|----------------|-------------|--------------|----------------|
| 1. Abolish | a. end | b. attain | c. avoid | d. dislike |
| 2. Accept | a. relinquish | b. approve | c. serve | d. severe |
| 3. Acquire | a. acute | b. severe | c. negative | d. attain |
| 4. Adversity | a. prosperity | b. absolute | c. dislike | d. misfortune |
| 5. Awful | a. horrible | b. careful | c. beautiful | d. sensible |
| 6. Benevolent | a. cruel | b. kind | c. confuse | d. useless |
| 7. Blossom | a. collapse | b. bloom | c. formal | d. active |
| 8. Calamity | a. immodest | b. corpse | c. disaster | d. forgiveness |
| 9. Comrade | a. holy | b. foe | c. friend | d. force |
| 10. Deny | a. refuse | b. lifeless | c. dispose | d. exile |
| 11. Deport | a. export | b. exile | c. import | d. important |
| 12. Dire | a. horrible | b. hatred | c. Jealous | d. envy |
| 13. Elite | a. upper class | b. lucid | c. tire | d. suspicious |
| 14. Fake | a. false | b. true | c. real | d. pitiable |
| 15. Futile | a. useful | b. useless | c. cheerful | d. beauty |
| 16. Nasty | a. unpleasant | b. happy | c. measure | d. clever |
| 17. Hide | a. suppress | b. light | c. amuse | d. entertain |
| 18. Legible | a. unclear | b. clear | c. fear | d. upset |

- | | | | | |
|---------------|-------------|---------------|--------------|-------------|
| 19. Outrage | a. insult | b. honour | c. cloudy | d. illusion |
| 20. Obscene | a. decent | b. favourable | c. unclean | d. indecent |
| 21. Over come | a. irritate | b. confuse | c. conquer | d. excess |
| 22. Pacify | a. soothe | b. dim | c. encourage | d. defeat |
| 23. Panic | a. dare | b. bright | c. smooth | d. fear |
| 24. Pale | a. bright | b. dim | c. happy | d. sorrow |
| 25. Pardon | a. forgive | b. excellent | c. particle | d. share |

ANSWERS

1. a 2. b 3. d 4. d 5. a 6. b 7. b 8. c 9. c 10. a 11. b 12. a 13. a 14. a
15. b 16. a 17. a 18. b 19. a 20. d 21. c 22. a 23. d 24. b 25. a

ONE WORD SUBSTITUTIONS

1. A person who looks at the bright side of things - Optimist
2. A person who looks at the dark side of things - Pessimist
3. One who loves mankind - Philanthropist
4. One who hates mankind - Misanthropist
5. One who believes in existence of God - Theist
6. One who deals in/sells flowers - florist
7. One who compiles a dictionary - lexicographer
8. One who studies the evolution of mankind - Anthropologist
9. A person who is in charge of a museum or an art gallery, etc - Curator
10. A person who is new to any profession - Novice/tyro
11. A person who runs away from justice or law - fugitive
12. One who acts against religion - heretic
13. One who is excessively enthusiastic in religious matter - fanatic/bigot
14. One who is chosen to settle disputes between two parties - Arbitrator
15. One who supervises in the examination hall - invigilator
16. One who cuts the precious stones - lapidist
17. One who collects stamps as a hobby - philatelist
18. One who knows several foreign languages well - linguist
19. One who speaks many languages - polyglot
20. One who is habitual drunkard - sot / toper
21. One who hates womankind - misogynist
22. One who hates marriage - misogamist
23. One who loves others selflessly - altruist
24. One who lends money at exorbitant interest - usurer
25. One who is unable to pay his debts - insolvent (01)
bankrupt
27. One who does not take any intoxicating drinks - teetotaler
28. One who believes in one's fate - fatalist
29. One who loves and collects books - bibliophile
30. One who talks continuously - loquacious
31. One who walks during one's sleep / slumber state - somnambulist
32. One who talks during one's somniloquist - sleep / slumber state
33. One who is an expert or a critical judge of any art and craft - connoisseur
34. One who does not care for art and literature - philistine
35. A person who is indifferent to pleasure and pain - stoic
36. A person who amuses himself by flirting with women - philanderer
37. One who works for the welfare of the women - feminist
38. A person who is womanish in his habits - effeminate
39. A person who believes in sexual pleasure - hedonist
40. One who is extremely fond of one's wife - uxorious

| | |
|---|----------------|
| 41. One who is a breaker of images and traditions | - iconoclast |
| 42. One who can use left hand and right hand equally well | - ambidextrous |
| 43. A person who has come to live permanently in a foreign country | - immigrant |
| 44. A person who leaves his own country for another country to live permanently there | - emigrant |
| 45. One who is devoted to pleasure of eating and drinking | - epicure |
| 46. One who is bad in spellings | - cacographist |
| 47. One who drive a motor car | - chauffeur, |
| 48. One who cuts stones | - sculptor |
| 49. A place where dead bodies are kept for identification | - morgue |
| 50. A place where dead bodies are kept before being buried or cremated | - mortuary |
| 51. One who has a long experience one's own (profession) occupation | - veteran |
| 52. One who does a thing for pleasure and not as a profession | - amateur |
| 53. One who offers one's services | - volunteer |
| 54. An imaginary name assumed by an author for disguise | - pseudonym |
| 55. Animals which live both on land and in sea | - amphibians |
| 56. Animals which give milk | - mammals |
| 57. Animals which live in flocks | - gregarious |
| 58. Animals of a certain region | - Fauna |
| 59. Plants of a particular region | - flora |
| 60. The study of birds | - ornithology |
| 61. The study of languages | - philology |
| 62. The study or science of correct spelling | - orthography |
| 63. The study of beautiful handwriting | - paleography |
| 64. The study of coins | - numismatics |
| 65. The art of cultivating and managing gardens | - horticulture |
| 66. The art of elegant speech or writing | - rhetoric |
| 67. One who is present everywhere | - omnipresent |
| 68. One who is all powerful | - omnipotent |
| 69. One who knows everything | - omniscient |
| 70. Killing oneself intentionally | - suicide |
| 71. Killing of one person by another | - homicide |
| 72. Killing of one's own mother | - matricide |
| 73. Killing of one's own father | - patricide |
| 74. Killing an infant | - infanticide |
| 75. Killing of a king or queen | - regicide |
| 76. Deliberate extermination of a race of people | - genocide |
| 77. One who journeys frequently from place to place | - itinerant |
| 78. One who lives on animal flesh | - carnivorous |

- | | |
|--|------------------------------|
| 79. One who feeds on human flesh: | - cannibal |
| 80. One who lives on herbs/plants | - herbivorous |
| 81. One who eats everything | - omnivorous |
| 82. A collection of poems | - Anthology |
| 83. A bunch of flowers presented as a gift | - bouquet |
| 84. Government by religious principles | - theocracy |
| 85. Government by one person | - autocracy |
| 86. Government by a king or queen | - monarchy |
| 87. Government by the people of a country | - democracy |
| 88. Government by the rich | - plutocracy |
| 89. Government by the nobles | - aristocracy |
| 90. Government by the officials | - bureaucracy |
| 91. Absence of government in a country | - anarchy |
| 92. The right of self government | - autonomy |
| 93. One who does something for the sake of money | - mercenary |
| 94. One who is free from all mistakes and failures | - infallible (or) impeccable |
| 95. One who has no parents | - orphan |
| 96. A home for orphans | - orphanage |
| 97. A home for lunatics or for those who are mentally unsound | - lunatic (or) asylum |
| 98. A home for old persons | - infirmary |
| 99. Murder of one's own sister | - soricide |
| 100. Murder of one's own wife | - uxoricide |
| 101. A place where historical documents of a govt are kept | - archives |
| 102. A place or clinic where patients suffering or recovering from illness are treated | - sanatorium |
| 103. A statement which is accepted as true without proof | - axiom |
| 104. A list of matters of business to be discussed at a meeting | - agenda |
| 105. An exact copy of handwriting, printing, etc. | - facsimile |
| 106. Theft of literary ideas, words, etc. of another author | - plagiarism |
| 107. Travelling (in disguise of his name) under another's name | - incognito |
| 108. A strong desire to return home / homesickness | - nostalgia |
| 109. Able to adopt or be adapted to many different functions / activities | - versatile |
| 110. A phrase / statement written on a tombstone in memory of a dead person | - epitaph |
| 111. A student who stays away from school without permission | - truant |
| 112. A job with high salary but little responsibility | - sinecure |
| 113. A speech made without any preparation | - impromptu |
| 114. A thing kept in memory of an event / person | - souvenir |
| 115. A person's last performance, achievement, composition | - swan song |

| | |
|--|-----------------|
| 116. An imaginary world with perfect social order | - utopia |
| 117. Belief that God is everything is God | - pantheism |
| 118. Pledge given by a prisoner for temporary release not to escape | - parole |
| 119. A book that contains information on various subjects | - compendium |
| 120. A period of interval between two reigns governments | - interregnum |
| 121. General vote of the public to decide a question | - plebiscite |
| 122. The act of speaking disrespectfully about sacred things | - blasphemy |
| 123. Voluntary giving up of throne in favour of some one | - abdication |
| 124. Official formality resulting in excessive delay | - red-tapism |
| 125. A large shed in which air-craft are kept | - hangar |
| 126. A nursery where children are looked after while their parents are at work | - creche |
| 127. Sleeping rooms with a number of beds especially in a school or institution | - dormitory |
| 128. Story of a person's life written by that person | - autobiography |
| 129. Story of a person's life written by somebody else | - biography |
| 130. A sound that can be heard | - audible |
| 131. A decision which cannot be revoked. | - irrevocable |
| 132. Mark or impression that cannot be erased | - indelible |
| 133. Thing that cannot be repaired. | - irreparable |
| 134. Thing that cannot be approached | - inaccessible |
| 135. Thing that cannot be corrected or improved | - incorrigible |
| 136. That cannot be read | - illegible |
| 137. A remedy for all diseases panacea | - panacea |
| 138. A remedy for producing sleep | - narcotic |
| 139. Printed notice (in a newspaper) of person's death, often with a short account of his life | - obituary |
| 141. Medical examination of dead body in order to find out the cause of death | - post-mortem |
| 142. A place for ammunition and weapons | - arsenal |
| 143. A place for luggage at railway station | - clockroom |
| 144. A place for grains to be stored | - granary |
| 145. A place for dogs to be kept | - kennel |
| 146. A place for horses to be kept | - stable |
| 147. A place where clothes are stored | - wardrobe |
| 148. A person who considers himself to be supreme in culture and intellect | - highbrow |
| 149. A number of people listening to a lecture | - audience |
| 150. A number of mourners following a funeral procession | - cortege |
| 151. A number of policemen called to quell a riot | - posse |
| 152. A person who pays too much attention / respect to social position or wealth | - snob |

- | | | |
|--|---|---------------|
| 116. An imaginary world with perfect social order | - | utopia |
| 117. Belief that God is everything is God | | |
| 118. Pledge given by a prisoner for temporary release not to escape | - | parole |
| 119. A book that contains information on various subjects | | |
| 120. A period of interval between two reigns governments | | |
| 121. General vote of the public to decide a question | | |
| 122. The act of speaking disrespectfully about scared things | | |
| 123. Voluntary giving up of throne in favour of some one | | |
| 124. Official formality resulting in excessive delay | - | red-tapism |
| 125. A large shed in which air-craft are kept | - | hangon |
| 126. A nursery where children are looked after while their parents are at work | - | creche |
| 127. Sleeping rooms with a number of beds especially in a school or institution | - | dormitory |
| 128. Story of a person's life written by that person | - | autobiography |
| 129. Story of a persons's life written by somebody else | - | biography |
| 130. A sound that can be heard | - | audible |
| 131. A decision which cannot be revoked | - | irrevocable |
| 132. Mark or impression that cannot be erased | - | indelible |
| 133. Thing that cannot be repaired | - | irreparable |
| 134. Thing that cannot be approached | - | inaccessible |
| 135. Thing that cannot be corrected or improved | - | incorrigible |
| 136. That cannot be read | - | illegible |
| 137. A remedy for all diseases panacea | | |
| 138. A remedy for producing sleep | - | narcotic |
| 139. Printed notice (in a newspaper) of person's death, often with a short account of his life | - | obituary |
| 141. Medical examination of dead body in order to find out the cause of death | - | post-mortem |
| 142. A place for ammunition and weapons | - | arsenal |
| 143. A place for luggage at railway station | - | cloakroom |
| 144. A place for grains to be stored | - | granary |
| 145. A place for dogs to be kept | - | kennel |
| 146. A place for horses to be kept | - | stable |
| 147. A place where clothes are stored | - | wardrobe |
| 148. A person who considers himself to be supreme in culture and intellect | - | highbrow |
| 149. A number of people listening to a lecture | - | audience |
| 150. A number of mourners following a funeral procession | - | cortege |
| 151. A number of policemen called to quell a riot | - | posse |
| 152. A person who pays too much attention / respect to social position or wealth | - | snob |

- | | | |
|---|---|-----------------|
| 153. One who regards whole world as his country | - | cosmopolitan |
| 154. One who does not know reading and writing | - | illiterate |
| 155. One who is recovering one's health from illness | - | convalescent |
| 156. The practice of being married to only one person at a time | - | monogamy |
| 157. The practice of having two wives or two husbands to a time | - | bigamy |
| 158. The practice of having more than one wife at the same time | - | polygamy |
| 159. The practise of having one husband at the same time | - | polyandry |
| 160. Alliance paid to wife on legal separation | - | alimony |
| 161. That which happens every year | - | Annual. |
| 162. That which happens every second year | - | biennial |
| 163. That which happens every third year | - | triennial |
| 164. One who is out to destroy all government, law and order | - | anarchist |
| 165. A doctor dealing with children and their diseases | - | paediatrician |
| 166. A doctor trained in the treatment of mental illness | - | psychiatrist |
| 167. A doctor dealing with eyes and diseases that affect them | - | ophthalmologist |
| 168. A scientist who studies the stars and planets | - | astronomer |
| 169. A doctor dealing with nervous system and its diseases | - | neurologist |
| 170. Someone who treats medical conditions and problems with muscles by exercises and massages etc. | - | physiotherapist |
| 171. A doctor trained to give people anaesthetics | - | anaesthetist |
| 172. A doctor who treats heart diseases | - | cardiologist |
| 173. A specialist in treating medical problems of old people | - | geriatrician |
| 174. A doctor who treats medical conditions and illness affecting only women | - | gynaecologist |
| 175. Someone who takes photographs, especially as a professional | - | photographer |
| 176. A doctor trained to treat problems affecting peoples bones and muscles | - | orthopaedist |
| 177. A doctor trained to deal with the birth of children | - | obstetrician |
| 178. Cause to swell with fluid or gas | - | bloat |
| 179. Occuring before the proper time | - | premature |
| 180. Lacking quantity or quality required | - | inadequate |
| 181. Give added strength to | - | reinforce |
| 182. Drive out or expel from a position or place | - | Oust |
| 183. To break up into very small pieces | - | disintegrate |
| 184. To make someone believe something | - | convince |
| 185. Something you do to pass your time in a pleasant way | - | pastime |
| 186. A sudden burst of anger or excitement among many people | - | furor |
| 187. A strong decision | - | resolve |
| 188. Courage and determination | - | grit |
| 189. One who takes up the study of humankind | - | anthropologist |
| 190. One who compiles a dictionary | - | lexicographer |

| | | |
|---|---|--------------|
| 191. One who treats ailments of the feet | - | chiropract |
| 192. One who knows several languages | - | polyglot |
| 193. One who is an expert in matter of taste | - | connoisseur |
| 194. An organisation dedicated to a particular activity | - | club |
| 195. An organisation where members can meet | - | club |
| 196. Two or more people working together | - | team |
| 197. A group of players forming one side | - | Team |
| 198. A group of people who work on a ship or aircraft or train or project | - | crew |
| 199. On a ship or aircraft or train or project | - | crew |
| 200. A group of people who work together for a single cause | - | crew |
| 201. A no. of people or things categorized or working together | - | group |
| 202. People assembled in a place | - | gathering |
| 203. A large number of people gathered together | - | crowd |
| 204. A group of people meeting together in a place | - | assembly |
| 205. A body of people with law-making powers | - | assembly |
| 206. An organised group of criminals or rowdy young people | - | gang |
| 207. An organised group of people doing manual work | - | gang |
| 208. A small group of musicians and singers who play pop, jazz, or rock music | - | band |
| 209. A group of people with the same air or shared features | - | band |
| 210. A disorderly crowd of people | - | Mob |
| 211. A group of people organised for a joint purpose | - | association |
| 212. A number of people gathered together | - | company |
| 213. A group of actors, singers or dancers who perform together | - | company |
| 214. An organised group of people with a particular purpose | - | organisation |

PARTS OF SPEECH KEY

1. Adverb, 2. verb, 3. adverb, 4. conjunction, 5. adverb, 6. adjective, 7. Noun, 8. Pronoun, 9. Adjective, 10. Verb, 11. adverb, 12. Noun, 13. Verb, 14. Noun, 15. adverb, 16. adjective, 17. preposition, 18. verb, adjective, 19. adjective, 20. verb, 21. preposition, 22. preposition, 23. Preposition, 24. verb, 25. adjective, 26. Noun, 27. adjective, 28. adjective, 29. Pronoun, 30. verb, 31. Pronoun, 32. verb, 33. adjective, 34. adjective, 35. adjective, 36. verb, 37. Adverb, 38. Noun, 39. conjunction, 40. Interjection, 41. verb, 42. adverb, 43. verb, 44. adjective, 45. verb, 46. adverb, 47. adjective, 48. verb, 49. adverb, 50. conjunction, 51. preposition, 52. verb, 53. Noun, 54. Noun, 55. Noun, 56. Noun, 57. adjective, 58. adverb, 59. conjunction, 60. pronoun, 61. adjective, 62. adjective, 63. adverb, 64. adverb, 65. Preposition, 66. adverb, 67. adjective, 68. pronoun, 69. Noun, 70. adverb.

Multiple choice Key

1-B, 2-D, 3-C, 4-A, 5-D, 6-B, 7-A, 8-C, 9-A, 10-C, 11-A, 12-B, 13-A, 14-B, 15-C, 16-B, 17-A, 18-A, 19-D, 20-C, 21-A, 22-C, 23-B, 24-B, 25-B, 26-C, 27-A, 28-D, 29-A, 30-A

Voice Key

1. The mirror was broken by Venu 2. Latha is loved by Sitha
3. The gate has been opened by the boy 4. The wall is being built by the Mason.
5. By whom was the mirror broken? 6. Let the post be advertised
7. Is chess played by them? 8. Sita is loved by Rama
9. The tiger was killed by the hunter. 10. The play Hamlet was written by Shakespeare
11. Our cat was killed by a pack of dogs. 12. Let the door be closed.
13. Let the money be deposited in the bank. 14. The picture be put up on the wall
15. Our clothes are washed by the servant.
16. The accounts are being checked by the auditors, 17. Most of invitations have been posted,
18. The wounded man was helped, 19. Is Tamil is spoken by them, 20. The enquiry will be conducted by the High Court Judge, 21. The attendance is marked every period by the lecturer,
22. The dinner has been cooked by mother, 23. The students will be interviewed by the principal in the afternoon, 24. Why was such a letter written by his brother?, 25. Many accidents are caused by rash driving, 26. The crops had been spoiled by the bad weather, 27. Hindi is spoken all parts in India, 28. When the mail is cleared by them?, 29. Let the invitations be sent to all the parents., 30. You are requested to enter by this door., 31. American domination is hated in the world politics by Bin Land., 33. The stage was being decorated by the girls., 34. A letter is being typed by her, 35. why was so much money given to him?, 36. A lesson should be taught to the mass by you., 37. Nehru was called Chacha by the children., 38. The boy was asked to wait by the principal. 39. The young man was advised to give up smoking by the doctor., 40. I can be helped to solve the problem by you., 41. I was taught how to face an interview, 42. The workers were satisfied with the agreement., 43. English was taught to us by Mr. Kumar., 44. By whom was the snake killed. 45. He was being taken to the prison by the police, 46. You are requested to post the letter., 47. Is colour photo taken by you?., 48. Was a bus hired by them?., 49. Where is the match played by them?, 50. Why was the question risen by them 51. By whom was the news broken, 52. Let the picture be seen to me., 53. India is loved by us., 54. You will be punished by me , 55. You are requested to listen to me., 56. A present has been given to me by Rajini., 57. The old man will be looked after by the nurse., 58. Good news is expected., 59. Can this box be lifted by him?, 60. A letter was being written to his father by him., 61. The wall is being built by the man., 62. My well wishers forced me into it., 63. Have you been invited by him?, 64. Who taught you English?, 65. Promises should be kept., 66. Is his English text book being read by Sudhir., 67. By whom is the drawn on the wall., 68. When will the carpenter's work be begun by him?., 69. Impatience can not gain any thing., 70. A rupee was given to a begger.

Multiple Choice Question's Key

- 1-2, 2-1, 3-2, 4-2, 5-2, 6-3, 7-2, 8-1, 9-2, 10-2, 11-2, 12-2, 13-1, 14-1, 15-1, 16-2, 17-2, 18-2, 19-2, 20-1, 21-1, 22-1, 23-1, 24-1, 25-1, 26-1, 27-1, 28-3, 29-2, 30-1.

Question Tag Key

1-are n't I?, 2-shall we?, 3-did they?, 4-have they?, 5-won't he?, 6-does n't she?, 7-is it?
 8-will you?, 9-didn't they?, 10-are n't they?, 11-have they?, 12-are they?, 13-doesn't she?,
 14-do I?, 15-wouldn't she?, 16-can you?, 17-am I?, 18-don't I?, 19-did n't she?, 20-can't you?,
 21-did I?, 22-didn't we?, 23-is it?, 24-is n't it?, 25-won't we?, 26-wasn't she?, 27-will you?,
 28-didn't we?, 29-doesn't she?, 30-hadn't they?, 31-wouldn't I?, 32-won't they?, 33-do they?
 34-will you? 35-are n't we? 36-didn't they?, 37-cann't it?, 38-doesn't he?, 39-didn't he?, 40-
 have they?, 41-does n't he?, 42-shan't we?, 43-aren't they? 44-is n't it?, 45-does he?, 46-don't
 I?, 47-doesn't she?, 48-doesn't he?, 49-doesn't she?, 50-should he?, 51-wasn't it?, 52-will you
 ?, 53-doesn't she?, 54-don't I?, 55-is it?, 56-isn't it?, 57-are n't we?, 58-doesn't she?, 59-
 didn't I?, 60-didn't she?, 61-didn't they?, 62-didn't they?, 63-did they?, 64-don't I?, 65-isn't
 it?, 66-doesn't it?, 67-doesn't she?, 68-did I?, 69-don't we?, shall we?

Multiple choice Key

1-c, 2-a, 3-b, 4-a, 5-a, 6-b, 7-b, 8-b, 9-b, 10-b, 11-b, 12-b, 13-b (or) c, 14-a, 15-a, 16-b, 17-a, 18-a, 19-
 b, 20-b, 21-b, 22-c, 23-a, 24-b, 25-b, 26-d, 27-d, 28-c, 29-a, 30-c,

Tenses

1. are sold 2. have been discussing 3. had been sold 4. will give 5. would have passed
 6. opened 7. have been reading 8. are 9. was playing 10. am going 11. drinks 12. has joined
 13. am doing 14. will catch 15. had left 16. is called 17. blows 18. received 19. will come
 20. is 21. went 22. had left 23. drinks 24. is doing 25. was singing 26. will catch 27. is spoken
 28. is doing 29. is 30. has been sleeping 31. sits 32. are 33. stops 34. bitten
 35. hidden 36. is spoken 37. left 38. trying 39. cooks 40. is writing 41. is 42. have you been
 waiting 43. rose 44. repairing 45. had worked 46. had heard 47. rains 48. has gone
 49. am doing 50. are 51. does not taste 52. have met 53. read 54. has been wearing
 55. are 56. will leave 57. bought 58. will postpone 59. would buy 60. I would have met
 61. had left 62. won 63. sets 64. have, lost 65. am writing 66. was sleeping 67. opens
 68. have been changed 69. passed 70. were playing 71-c, 72-c, 73-b, 74-b 75-c, 76-c,
 77-b, 78-a, 79-c, 80-d, 81-c, 82-a, 83-b, 84-b, 85-c, 86-c, 87-d, 88-d, 89-b, 90-d, 91-
 a, 92-d, 93-b, 94-b, 95-c, 96-c, 97-c, 98-a, 99-d, 100-d

Direct and Indirect speech Key

1. The teacher said that we should buy that book.
2. Ashok asked me if I could give him a lift to the college
3. The principal said that he would talk to the student immediately.
4. Pushpa requested me to close the door.
5. The warden said that I should have my own key to the room.
6. The father told his son that he was lazy.
7. The coach advised the boys not to cross the line.

8. The girl said that she was not interested in science.
9. Ajay asked his friend whether he was going to college that day.]
10. The boy asked his friend who had won the match.
11. He asked her whether she would write to him the next day.
12. She told Jhon that she had been waiting for him.
13. Raghu told Ramu that he did not believe him.
14. Ajitha said that she had broken the glass.
15. Teacher told me to clean the black board.
16. I asked her why she was standing there.
17. Murthy asked Rambabu whether he could drive a car.
18. The manager asked me why I was late.
19. she said that she was going home.
20. The farmer said that he was going to home.
21. The station master says that the train will be late.
22. Ms. Sujatha told Mr. Rao that she would meet him the next day.
23. The teacher asked me what my name was.
24. He asked me whether I would come with him.
25. She wondered that I was intelligent.
26. He requested me to close the window.
27. Ramarao told me that he lived in Guduru.
28. Tilak said that freedom is his birth right.
29. Devaki told Krishna that he troubled her a lot with his mischievous deeds.
30. Lalith's fathers said that his daughter was not staying during those examination days.
31. Father advised me not to waste my time.
32. Mother asked her daughter to drink milk.
33. The teacher said that I brought that book.
34. Ashok asked me whether I could give him pen.
35. My mother said that she would take to her.
36. The police ordered me to close my shop.
37. My friend told me that I would go to the doctor.
38. Father told his son that he was working hard.
39. Girl said that she was not eating anything.
40. The teacher ordered the boys not to come late again.
41. Ajay asked my friend brother he was coming to his house.
42. The young boy asked his friend who had won the match.
43. They thanked me.
44. She worried that it was an injustice

45. The people wondered that king kong was an incredible creature.
46. They congratulation on my grand success.
47. She wondered she sang very nice.
48. They wished me on christmas.
49. The queen wondered that it was an exciting moment.
50. He pitied that I had not come.
51. She scolded that it was a shame on me.
52. He wondered that it had been very cold last night.
53. They wondered that it was an excellent idea.
54. They wondered with joy they had won the match.
55. They appreciated me that I had all done very well in the examinations.
56. She worried that she had for gotten to bring her haliticket.
57. They worried that they had lost their good old friend.
58. She scolded me that I was stupied for rejecting that officer.
59. Ravi and , "I won the match".
60. Kiran said to me, "Your father invited me"
61. Srilu said to me, "Do you love me"?
62. Mahesh said to me, "Why are asking such silly questions?"
63. She said to me, "Please give me hundred rupees."
64. She said , "How rogue you are"
65. They wondered that the Taj Mahal is very beautiful.
66. She wondered those flowers were so wonderful.
67. He wondered that it was very beautiful garden.
68. He suggested us to take him to the hospital.
69. He suggested me to allow him play music.
70. He invited to have a cup of coffee.

Multiple chioce Key

- 71-1, 72-2, 73-1, 74-3, 75- 2, 76- 4, 77- 2, 78- 4, 79- 1, 80- 3, 81- 2, 82- 4, 83- 4, 84-2,
85- 3, 86- 2, 87- 3, 88- 3, 89- 4, 90- 3, 91- 1, 92-3, 93-1, 94- 3, 95-3, 96-3, 97- 1, .
98- 3, 99- 2, 100- 2

Articles Key

- 1-a; 2-an; 3-the, a; 4-the, X, X ' 5-X, the, the; 6- an; 7-a, X; 8- X, 9- the; 10 -a, the; 11- X, the;
12-a, the; 13-X, X; 14- a; 15-X; 16-the, the; 17-X; 18-an; 19-X,a; 20- X, a; 21-the; 22-an; 23-
a; 24-the; 25-X; 26-a; 27-the; 28-a; 29-a, the; 30-the, the; 31-X, 32-X, 33-the; 34-a, X; 35-X,
the; 36-an; 37-an; 38-an; 39-the; 40- the, a; 41-a, a; 42-the;
43 - the; 44-a; 45-an; 46-the, an; 47-X; 48-an; 49-a; 50-an; 51-the, a; 52- a; 53-the, the, the;
54-the; 55-a; 56-an, the, the; 57-the; 58-the; 59- an; 60- an; 61-a; 62-an, the; 63-the;

64-the, the; 65-an, the, the; 66-the; 67-the; 68-the; 69-the; 70-the.

Multiple choice Key

1-c, 2-c, 3-a, 4-c, 5-d, 6-c, 7-a, 8-c, 9-b, 10-a, 11-a, 12-d, 13-c, 14-c, 15-c, 16-c, 17-c, 18-c, 19-d, 20-c, 21-c, 22-c, 23-c, 24-a, 25-d, 26-c, 27-d, 28-c, 29-a, 30-c;

PREPOSITIONS

1-Of; 2-for, with; 3-at; 4-in; 5-by; 6-about; 7-with; 8-on; 9-on; 10-beside; 11-with; 12-from; 13-on; 14-between; 15-during; 16-for; 17-for; 18-over; 19-across; 20-at; 21-with; 22-with; 23-since; 24-from; 25-at; 26-during; 27-among; 28-by; 29-for; 30-of; 31-in; 32-on; 33-by, with; 34-by; 35-since; 36-from; 37-by; 38-by; 39-from; 40-into; 41-in; 42-of; 43-for; 44-among; 45-on; 46-besides; 47-among; 48-of; 49-for; 50-in; 51-at; 52-among; 53-of; 54-besides; 55-during; 56-at; 57-into; 58-at; 59-of; 60-on; 61-for; 62-about; 63-after; 64-up; 65-with; 66-of; 67-with; 68-around; 69-into; 70-to

Multiple choice Key

1-b, 2-a, 3-c, 4-c, 5-b, 6-c, 7-b, 8-c, 9-a, 10-d, 11-a, 12-a, 13-a, 14-a, 15-a, 16-a, 17-c, 18-a, 19-a, 20-d, 21-b, 22-b, 23-c, 24-a, 25-d, 26-c, 27-c, 28-b, 29-c, 30-c, AZ

Degrees of comparision

1. Ooty is not healthier than Bangalore.
2. No other Island in the world is as big as Australia.
3. The Stars are not so bright as the Moon.
4. Drink is worse than any vice.
5. No other place in India is as beautiful as Kashmir.
6. Kumble is abler than many other bowlers.
7. Gold is precious than silver.
8. The lion is the most ferocious than any other animal.
9. The pen is mightier than the sword.
10. Very few metals are as useful as copper.
11. Mount Everest is the highest peak in the world.
12. I don't like him as good as you.
13. A horse does not run as fast as a deer.
14. Sangcetha is taller than any other girl in the class.
15. This is more powerful earthquake than any other that occurred.
16. Light travels faster than any thing
17. Cure is not so good as prevention.
18. Kesav is not faster swimmer than Abdulla.
19. The rose is lovelier than any other flower.
20. No other boy in the class is as clever as he.

21. Very few rivers in India are as large as the Ganges
22. Gold is not heavier than platinum.
23. Himalayas are higher than any other mountain in the world.
24. Akbar was greater than many other kings.
25. Tagore is one of the greatest Indian writers.
26. No other boy in the class is as old as James.
27. No other boy in the class is as clever as Phaktik.
28. A dead lion not so strong as alive ass.
29. This is older than any other tree in garden.
30. You can write more neatly than I.
31. Hamlet is more popular than any other Shakespeare's plays.
32. We don't know me as would as he.
33. The Indus valley civilization is older than many other civilizations in the world.
34. Poverty is the most miserable thing
35. A voyage at sea is healthier than many other things in the world.
36. He is as cunning as a fox.
37. England is one of the richest countries in the world.
38. England is richer than many other countries in the world.
39. Very few Islands in the world is as big as Sri Lanka.
40. Sri Lanka is bigger than many other Islands.
41. Hyderabad is not so hot as Madras.
42. Madras is hotter than Hyderabad.
43. Delhi is one of the biggest cities in India.
44. Madras is hotter than many other cities in India.
45. Very few places in India are as cool as Ooty.
46. Deepika is taller than Sarala.
47. Lakshmi is not so clever as Devi.
48. Ravi is as strong as Krishna.
49. He was the greatest man of his age.
50. Very few buildings are as old as this.
51. No other building in the town is as strong as this one.
52. He is not so strong as I.
53. A lion does not run as fast as a deer.
54. Gold is more precious than silver.
55. Very few of Tagore's stories are as good as the cabuliwallah.
56. Very few buildings are as beautiful as Taj Mahal.
57. Kumar is as tall as Lakshmi.
58. Rahul is cleverer than any other boy in the class.

59. He is taller than I.
60. Ravi is as bad as Suresh.
61. He is not so weak as I.
62. Coffee is more popular than tea in South India.
63. My mother is the dearest to me.
64. A wise enemy can not be so dangerous as a foolish friend.
65. The sword is not as might a pen.
66. I can not walk as fast as you.
67. I am not duller than some other boys.
68. Some ladies are atleast as beautiful as Vimala.
69. No other Moghul Emperor is has great as Akbar.
70. Some friends are atleast as helpful as Ravi.

Multiple choice Key :

- 71-1, 72-3, 73-3, 74-3, 75-1, 76-3, 77-2, 78-2, 79-2, 80-4, 81-1, 82-4, 83-2, 84-1, 85-2, 86-4, 87-3, 88-4, 89-1, 90-4, 91-1, 92-2, 93-2, 94-4, 95-2, 96-4, 97-3, 98-1, 99-1, 100-1

SIMPLE COMPOUND COMPLEX KEY

1. Hemanth has a black scooter.
2. On seeing the balloons the child was excited.
3. Teacher told the boy to study.
4. Can you tell me the departure time of Simhadri express.
5. In spite of late start Malathi was able to finish it.
6. You must exercise regularly or you can n't be fit.
7. Lakshmi was intelligent so, she made the right decision.
8. The Woman saw the thief and she started shouting.
9. It was raining, but Prathima went to college.
10. Sundhari opened her handbag and took out the papers.
11. As soon as Ramesh reached the office he sat down to work.
12. As Vasantha felt bored she watched t.v.
13. Though Tilak was tired he continued to type the letter.
14. As it was hot Mr. Reddy switched on the air condition.
15. Ramana often wears a 'T' Shirt which is red in colour.
16. Due to unwell Hema consulted a doctor.
17. Prakash was unable to walk further so, he sat down.
18. Suresh is rich so, he owns two cars.
19. Though Shameena was angry, she kept smiling.

20. As the lesson was difficult srinivas could not understand it.
21. The book on the table is mine.
22. Though she was ill, she continued to work.
23. When he saw the tiger, he started running.
24. It is cold so, he wears a coat.
25. A tiger which is dead does not roar.
26. This is the man whose car was stolen.
27. As she is rich, she can buy a camry car.
28. You must control your anger or you won't prosper.
29. The box is too heavy for me to lift.
30. A man who is spiritually strong is a powerful everywhere.
31. Though he attempted many times he failed.
32. He is not only handsome, but also intelligent.
33. He gave me useful advise as well as financial help.
34. Having the sun set the farmer went home.
35. Though she is poor I love her.
36. You must pay the fine, then you can get your scooter back.
37. Because of her laziness she failed.
38. A man who is dead, tells no lies.
39. As soon as she read the telegram she wept.
40. As he is rich he can buy two cars.
41. It is proved that the boy is brilliant.
42. He wants to be a doctor so, he has to take B.L.P.C.
43. They were tired so they took rest.
44. Hurry up or you will be late.
45. He worked hard sothat he might win the prize.
46. Being ill he stayed at home.
47. He must wear the glass otherwise he cann't see.
48. Due to ending the War the Soldier returned.
49. He is too tired to stand.
50. It is known about her honesty.
51. Tagore was not only a philosopher but also a good painter.
52. He over slept so he missed the train.
53. We must eat or we cann't live.
54. Inspite of having no good health she looks beautiful.
55. After finishing his exercise he put away his books.
56. He not only robbed the woman but also injured her.
57. The villager saw the stranger and he ran away.

58. She is very fat. She can't walk fast.
59. You must run lest you cannot catch the train.
60. There were favourable conditions the the crops failed.
61. The boy was disobedient so the teacher punished him.
62. Due to busy work he did not go out.
63. After reading the novel I returned it to the library.
64. He can neither write nor read.
65. Inspite of dull she got first class.
66. She is so dull she cannot answer the paper.
67. The box too heavy for me to lift it.
68. I play neither cricket nor football.
69. I saw neither she nor her.
70. I saw a lady who was beautiful.
71-1, 72-3, 73-4, 74-1, 75-3, 76-4, 77-1, 78-3, 79-1, 80-1, 81-3, 82-4, 83-3, 84-1,
85-2, 86-1, 87-2 or 3, 88-4, 89-1, 90-2, 91-4, 92-1, 93-3, 94-3, 95-3, 96-2, 97-2,
98-3, 99-4, 100-2.

